

## ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Обучение в соответствии с федеральным государственным стандартом третьего поколения (ФГОС — 3) предполагает разработку и внедрение новых продуктивных стратегий и технологий образовательного процесса, конечной целью которых является подготовка компетентного специалиста, высококвалифицированного профессионала, способного эффективно решать практико-ориентированные задачи.

В качестве актуального направления, требующего тщательной, грамотно спланированной стратегии, выступает развитие иноязычной коммуникативной компетенции современного специалиста любой сферы деятельности.

В Московском государственном юридическом университете имени О. Е. Кутафина (МГЮА) в качестве структурного подразделения в 1996 г. был создан Институт прокуратуры. С 2015 г. в рамках института осуществляется подготовка студентов по специальности «Правовое обеспечение национальной безопасности» (квалификация (степень) — специалист).

Согласно Федеральному государственному образовательному стандарту высшего профессионального образования в области правоохранительной деятельности, специалист по направлению подготовки (специальности) 030901 «Правовое обеспечение национальной безопасности» должен решать в том числе и задачи по обеспечению международного взаимодействия правоохранительных органов, поиску, получению, анализу и оценке информации, имеющей значение для реализации правовых норм в сфере национальной безопасности.

Требования к результатам освоения основных образовательных программ подготовки специалиста данного профиля включают способность ориентироваться в политических, социальных и экономических процессах, а также овладение навыками делового общения, профессиональной коммуникации на одном из иностранных языков.

В связи с данными требованиями, для студентов 2 курса, обучающихся по специальности «Правовое обеспечение национальной безопасности», на Кафедре английского языка Московского государственного юридического университета имени О. Е. Кутафина коллективом авторов было подготовлено настоящее учебное пособие.

Пособие посвящено, главным образом, современным глобальным проблемам мира и безопасности, внешним и внутренним угрозам национальной безопасности России, Великобритании, США и средствам их устранения.

В учебном пособии воплощен многолетний преподавательский опыт авторов, и, несмотря на тематическое наполнение, в целом не стандартное для учебников по английскому языку для юридических вузов, пособие содержит материалы, необходимые для развития всех ключевых языковых компетенций студентов.

Вместе с тем, разноплановые упражнения, кластеры, ролевые игры добавляют динамичности в учебный процесс, охватывают различные виды деятельности, которые активно вовлекают студентов в учебный процесс. Такой подход во многом обеспечивает не только эффективное решение практических, общеобразовательных, развивающих задач, но и содержит огромные возможности для дальнейшей мотивации.

Учитывая фонетические трудности некоторых особо сложных лексем, они вынесены с указанием транскрипции.

Данное пособие позволит ознакомиться с рядом новых иноязычных реалий, относящихся к национальной безопасности, уточнить уже знакомые понятия, получить более полное представление о мерах по защите мира и безопасности, применяемых в РФ, Великобритании и США.

## Chapter I

# INTERNATIONAL LAW

## Unit 1. International Law

### Lead-in

1. How can a nation state be compelled to obey international law? Give an example of a country that has violated international agreements.
2. If a private individual or a company breaks laws of any other jurisdiction, what consequences might follow?

### Vocabulary

1. public international law — международное публичное право
2. private international law — международное частное право
3. supranational law — наднациональное право
4. conflict of laws — коллизионное право
5. Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties — Венская конвенция о праве международных договоров
6. framework conventions/ outline conventions — рамочные конвенции
7. customary international law — международное обычное право
8. binding — юридически обязывающий
9. advisory standards — рекомендательные стандарты
10. supranational legal framework — наднациональная правовая основа
11. instrument — международный договор

### 1. Read the text.

In its widest sense, international law can include **public international law, private international law and supranational law**. In its narrowest meaning, the term international law is used to refer to what is commonly known as public international law. Private international law is also referred to a **conflict of laws**. Conflict of laws can also refer to conflicts between states in a federal system, such as the USA.

Public international law is the body of rules, laws or legal principles that govern the rights and duties of nation states in relation to each other. It is derived from a number of sources, including custom, legislation and treaties. Article 2 of the **Vienna Convention on the Law of Treaties** (1969) defines a treaty as “an international agreement concluded between States in a written form and governed by international law...”. These treaties may be in the form of conventions, agreements, charters, **framework conventions** or **outline conventions**. Custom, also referred to as **customary international law**, is another **binding** source of law, and originates from a pattern of state practice motivated by a sense of legal right or obligation. Laws of war were a matter of customary law before being codified in the Geneva Conventions and other treaties.

International institutions and intergovernmental organisations whose members are states have become a principal vehicle for making, applying, implementing and enforcing public international law, especially since the end of World War II. The best-known intergovernmental organisation is the United Nations, which develops new **advisory standards**, e.g. the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. Other international norms and laws have been established through international agreements such as the Geneva Conventions on the conduct of war or armed conflict, as well as by other international organisations, such as the World Health Organisation, the World Intellectual Property Organisation, the World Trade Organisation and the International Monetary Fund.

Private international law refers to the body of rights and duties of private individuals and business entities of different sovereign states. It addresses two main questions: 1) the jurisdiction in which a case may be heard, and 2) which laws from which jurisdiction(s) apply. It is distinguished from public international law because it governs conflicts between private individuals or business entities, rather than conflicts between states or other international bodies.

Supranational law, or the law of supranational organisations, refers to regional agreements where the laws of a nation state are not applicable if in conflict with a **supranational legal framework**. At present, the only example of this is the European Union, which constitutes a new legal order in international law where sovereign nations have united their authority through a system of courts and political institutions. However, the East African Community is a potential precursor to the establishment of the East African Federation, a proposed federation of its members into a single sovereign state. In 2010, the EAC launched its own common market for goods, labour, and capital within the region, with the goal of creating a common currency and eventually a full political federation. In 2013, a protocol was signed outlining their plans for launching a monetary union within 10 years.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What are the three main sources of public international law?
2. What are the two principal questions which private international law is concerned with?

3. What is meant by a supranational legal framework?

3. Complete the sentences below with the prepositions from the box.

by in on to to to to under
----------------------------

- Parties \_\_\_\_\_ a treaty are the States or the International Organisations which have consented to be bound \_\_\_\_\_ the treaty and for which the treaty is \_\_\_\_\_ force.
- By becoming a signatory \_\_\_\_\_ a convention with 172 other countries, Russia is taking an important step to facilitate anti-smoking legislation.
- \_\_\_\_\_ the Convention on the Rights of the Child, persons under the age of 18 years are entitled \_\_\_\_\_ special protection.
- International laws apply \_\_\_\_\_ the citizens of all signatory nations.
- The Council of Ministers of the East African Community is a policy organ whose decisions, directives and regulations are binding \_\_\_\_\_ Partner States.

4. The text contains several adjectives formed with prefixes, such as *international* and *intergovernmental*. Match these common prefixes (1-6) with their meanings (a-f).

1. bi-	a) many
2. inter-	b) above, beyond
3. intra-	c) two
4. multi-	d) between, among
5. non-	e) not, other than
6. supra-	f) within, inside

5. Match these words with prefixes (1-6) with their definitions (a-f).

1. interagency	a) neutral, especially towards major powers
2. non-aligned	b) involving two groups or two countries
3. non-governmental	c) without any participation or representation of a government
4. bilateral	d) within the boundaries of a state
5. multinational	e) involving several different countries
6. intrastate	f) involving two or more agencies, especially government agencies

**6. Complete the definitions of instruments below using words from the box.**

a) communications b) decisions c) directives d) recommendations and opinions e) regulations

1. \_\_\_\_\_ are views and preferences expressed by EU institutions, but they are not binding on the member states.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ are detailed instructions which are applicable throughout the EU and which are directly binding on the member states, which means that they become a part of the member state's national legal system automatically without the need for separate national legal measures.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ are EU decisions which are binding on the EU institutions and are member states, but they are only general institutions on the goal to be achieved; the way the goal is reached is left to the discretion of each member state.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ are fully binding on those to whom they are addressed (a member state, a company or an individual). They are based on a specific Treaty Article and do not require national implementing legislation.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ are published by the Commission and set out the background to a policy area. They usually indicate the Commission's intended course of action in this area.

**7. Find words and phrases in the definitions from Exercise 6 which collocate with these words.**

1. binding
2. member
3. goal
4. discretion
5. action

**Unit 2. Subjects of International Law****Lead-in**

1. What is a subject of law?
2. Can you name any subject of international law?

**Vocabulary**

1. subject of international law — субъект международного права
2. international personality — международная правосубъектность
3. to ascertain — выяснять, удостовериться
4. Non-state actors — негосударственные субъекты

5. nations fighting for independence — нации, борющиеся за независимость
6. by virtue of — посредством
7. individuals — физические лица; зд. индивиды
8. original subjects — первичные субъекты
9. state-like entities — государствовподобные образования
10. ad-hoc coalitions — ситуативные коалиции
11. derived subjects — производные субъекты
12. original personality — первичная правосубъектность
13. derived personality — производная правосубъектность
14. International Court of Justice — Международный суд
15. legal capacity — правоспособность

### 1. Read the text.

By **subjects of international law** are meant those entities which possess **international personality**. In other words, subjects of international law are those entities that have rights, duties and obligations under international law and which have capacity to possess such right, duties and obligations by bringing international claims. In past the matter was not much debatable because according to the contemporary circumstances and scope of international law only the states were qualified for international personality, but in near past along with the increasing scope of international law many other entities have been given international personality. Now the question arises whether they may be treated as subjects of international law or not. And also, if they were given the international personality then what shall be the criteria for **ascertaining** the qualification of their being the subjects of international law. So, there are different theories as regard to the above debate.

Subjects of international law, also called International legal persons, can be broadly categorized as States and **Non-state actors**. States and **nations fighting for independence**, at a conceptual level, have equal rights and duties under international law **by virtue of** the principle of sovereign equality. Others — Non-state subjects — have degrees of rights and duties that vary amongst their different categories (for example, **individuals** as opposed to international organizations), and within their own category (for example, different international organizations have different rights and duties).

The moment an entity becomes a State, it becomes an international legal person and acquires international legal personality. States are the **original subjects** of international law — i.e. international law was created to regulate relations between States. Non-state actors with international legal personality include **state-like entities**, individuals, armed groups involved in conflicts and international organizations. There is still some debate on whether international non-governmental organizations, **ad-hoc coalitions** made of States during an armed conflict (as opposed to individual States), and multinational

companies are, or should also be considered as, subjects of international law. But there is no debate regarding their status as **derived subjects**.

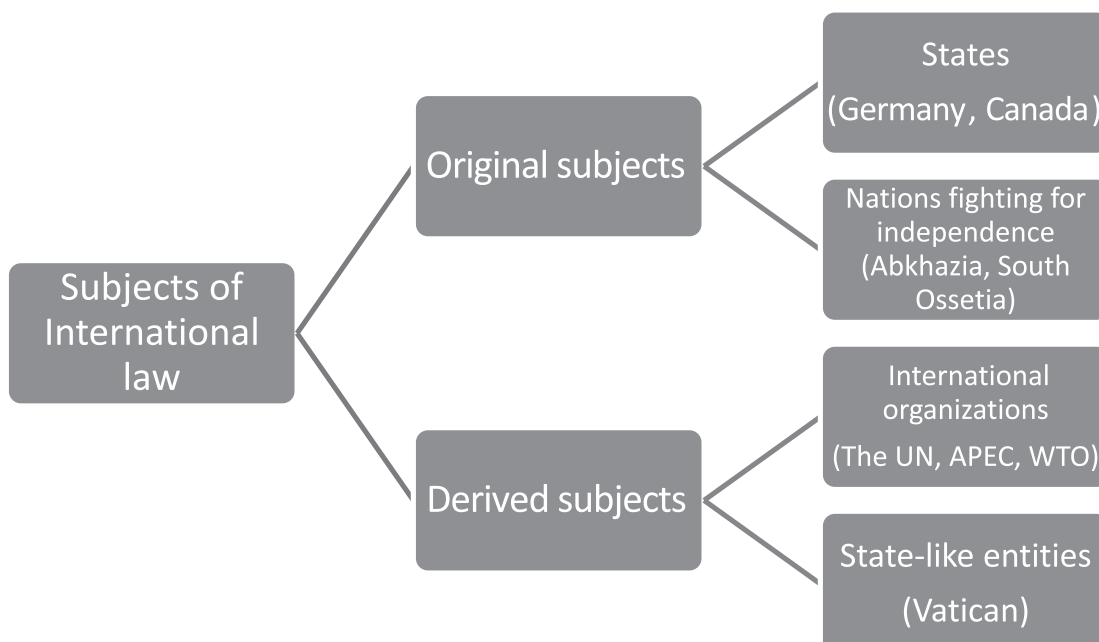
Thus, it is possible to say that States have **original personality** and Non-state actors have **derived personality**. This is because States become international legal persons the moment they are States. Other subjects derive their personality through other means — for example, for organizations, the extent of their rights and duties under international law may be described in their constitutions/charters/treaties that establish the organization.

All subjects of international law do not have the same rights, duties and capacities. For example, a diplomat has immunity before foreign courts because he is an agent of the sending State. One State can bring a claim against another State before the **International Court of Justice** to enforce the rights of that State or on behalf of individuals. An individual on his own can't bring a claim against a State before the ICJ. In other words, States have maximum international **legal capacities** and individuals have only a few.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What are subjects of international law?
2. What is another name for subjects of international law?
3. How can subjects of international law be broadly categorized?
4. When does an entity become an international legal person?
5. What entities are original subjects of international law?
6. What entities are derived subjects of international law?
7. Do all subjects of international law have the same rights, duties and capacities?

## 3. Study the scheme and retell the text.





**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. международная организация
2. принцип суверенного равенства
3. международная правосубъектность
4. спорный вопрос
5. негосударственные субъекты
6. правоспособность
7. подать иск

**5. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. Any entity which possesses international personality is an international person or a subject of international law, as distinct from a mere object of international law.
2. Individuals, ethnic minorities and indigenous peoples are considered, in certain circumstances, subjects of International Law.
3. In the context of non-international armed conflicts, not all the “parties to the conflict” are subjects of international law.
4. The Court stated in the LaGrand case that individuals are also subjects of international law.
5. It should be borne in mind, however, that the organization itself and its member States are separate subjects of international law.

**6. Translate from Russian into English.**

1. Субъект международного права — участник международных отношений, обладающий международной правосубъектностью.
2. Субъектами международного права окружающей среды являются прежде всего государства, а также международные организации.
3. Статья 3 Венской конвенции дает основание полагать, что международная организация, как и государство, является полноценным субъектом международного права.
4. Субъектами международного гуманитарного права являются суверенные государства, борющиеся за свою свободу и независимость народы и нации, а также некоторые международные межправительственные организации.
5. Правосубъектность борющейся за свободу и независимость нации включает в себя комплекс следующих основных прав: право на самостоятельное волеизъявление, право на международно-правовую защиту и помощь со стороны других субъектов международного права, право на участие в международных организациях и конференциях, право участвовать в создании норм международного права и самостоятельно выполнять принятые на себя международные обязательства.

**7. Is an individual a full-fledged subject of international law? Give your arguments for or against. Here are some tips.**

for	against
The rights and obligations of individuals or states in relation to individuals are enshrined in many international treaties	Individuals cannot participate in the creation of norms of international law
Individuals may be subject to international responsibility	An individual is not a collective entity
Individuals can apply to international judicial institutions	Individuals, being under the authority of the state, do not act on the international stage in their own name
Individuals are endowed with international legal status (migrant, refugee, stateless person)	

### Unit 3. Public International Law

#### Lead-in

1. Can the term international law refer to what is commonly known as public international law?
2. What does public international law comprise?

#### Vocabulary

1. an international actor — субъект международных отношений
2. to omit — опускать
3. vital — жизненно важный
4. assertion — утверждение, суждение
5. sophisticated — сложный, утонченный
6. human rights — права человека
7. space law — космическое право
8. international comity — международный этикет
9. to comprise — охватывать
10. legally nonbinding practice — юридически не обязывающая практика
11. courtesy — вежливость, любезность
12. foreign — иностранный, зарубежный
13. domestic law — внутренне право, (внутригосударственное право)
14. to contemplate — размышлять, рассматривать
15. to conform to the rules and principles — соответствовать нормам и принципам

16. a treaty — международный договор

17. to induce — побуждать

### 1. Read the text.

International law, also called public international law or law of nations, is the body of legal rules, norms, and standards that apply between sovereign states and other entities that are legally recognized as **international actors**. The term was created by the English philosopher Jeremy Bentham (1748–1832). According to Bentham’s classic definition, international law is a collection of rules governing relations between states.

A mark of how far international law has evolved is that this original definition **omits** individuals and international organizations — two of the most dynamic and **vital** elements of modern international law. Furthermore, it is no longer accurate to view international law as simply a collection of rules; rather, it is a rapidly developing complex of rules and influential—though not directly binding —principles, practices, and **assertions** coupled with increasingly **sophisticated** structures and processes.

In its broadest sense, international law provides normative guidelines as well as methods, mechanisms, and a common conceptual language to international actors — i.e., primarily sovereign states but also increasingly international organizations and some individuals. The range of subjects and actors directly concerned with international law has widened considerably, moving beyond the classical questions of war, peace, and diplomacy to include **human rights**, economic and trade issues, **space law**, and international organizations. Although international law is a legal order and not an ethical one, it has been influenced significantly by ethical principles and concerns, particularly in the sphere of human rights.

International law is distinct from **international comity**, which **comprises legally nonbinding practices** adopted by states for reasons of **courtesy** (e.g., the saluting of the flags of **foreign** warships at sea).

In addition, the study of international law, or public international law, is distinguished from the field of conflict of laws, or private international law, which is concerned with the rules of municipal law—as international lawyers term the **domestic law** of states—of different countries where foreign elements are involved.

International law is a distinctive part of the general structure of international relations. In **contemplating** responses to a particular international situation, states usually consider relevant international laws. Although considerable attention is invariably focused on violations of international law, states generally are careful to ensure that their actions **conform to the rules and principles** of international law, because acting otherwise would be regarded negatively by the international community. States that breach international rules suffer a decline in credibility that may cost them future relations with other states. Thus, a vio-

lation of a **treaty** by one state to its advantage may **induce** other states to breach other treaties and thereby cause harm to the original violator.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What is international law?
2. How is international law also known?
3. Who originally introduced the term “international law”?
4. What was the original definition of international law?
5. How is international law defined nowadays?
6. What does international law provide in its broadest sense?
7. What are subjects and actors of international law?
8. Do ethical principles matter in the sphere of international law?
9. Why should international law be distinguished from international comity?
10. What consequences might violation of international rules result in?

**3. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. международное публичное право
2. международное частное право
3. субъект международного права
4. субъект международных отношений
5. права человека
6. нарушение международного договора
7. коллизионное право
8. внутреннее право
9. иностранный военный корабль
10. быстро развивающийся комплекс норм
11. внимание неизбежно сосредоточено на нарушениях
12. причинять вред
13. свод юридических норм и стандартов
14. суверенное государство
15. сложные структуры и процессы

**4. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. There are two main branches of international law: public international law and private international law.
2. Private international law, also known as conflict of laws, provides a framework for dispute resolution between individuals and businesses from different jurisdictions.
3. One of the most basic questions in private international law is whether a particular court has jurisdiction over the case before it.
4. International law encompasses several areas, such as international trade, the creation and dissolution of states, use of force, armed con-

flict, human rights, refugees, crimes, environment, labor, the sea, air space, and postal services.

5. Historically, international law addressed only relations between states in certain limited areas (such as war and diplomacy) and was dependent on the sovereignty and territorial boundaries of distinct countries. But the scope and authority of international law have expanded dramatically during the era of globalization.
6. International treaties bind states to give their own citizens rights that are agreed on at a global level.

### 5. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Международное публичное право — особая правовая система, регулирующая отношения между государствами, международными организациями и некоторыми другими субъектами международных отношений.
2. Международное публичное право образует самостоятельную правовую систему, существующую параллельно с внутренним правом государств.
3. Предметом регулирования внутригосударственного права являются отношения в пределах юрисдикции одного государства.
4. В отличие от международного частного права, международное публичное право регулирует межгосударственные и иные международные правоотношения, которые выходят за границы национальной юрисдикции отдельных государств.
5. Цель регулирования международного права заключается в разрешении вопросов, требующих совместного регулирования со стороны нескольких государств или всего международного сообщества. В основном, это вопросы международного мира и безопасности, мировой экологии, определения правового статуса нейтральных территорий — космоса, Антарктики и т.п.
6. Цели регулирования внутригосударственного права ограничиваются территорией отдельного государства.

### 6. Match the names of public international law subbranches with their Russian equivalents.

1. International air law	a) Международное право охраны окружающей среды
2. International humanitarian law	b) Международные нормы в области прав человека
3. Treaty law	c) Дипломатическое право и консульское право

4. Diplomatic law and consular law	d) Право международных организаций
5. International criminal law	e) Право международных договоров
6. Law of international organizations	f) Международное гуманитарное право
7. International maritime law	g) Международное уголовное право
8. International environmental law	h) Международное морское право
9. Human rights law	i) Международное воздушное право

**7. Choose a subbranch of the public international law to make a presentation.**

## Unit 4. Private International Law

### Lead-in

1. What is the difference between public international law and private international law?
2. Give an example of a subject of the private international law.

### Vocabulary

1. to concern — касаться, заниматься, беспокоиться
2. to reach a middle ground — найти золотую середину
3. foreign judgment — решение зарубежного суда
4. to prove the applicability — доказать применимость
5. to obtain a “cross-border” notice — получить «трансграничное» уведомление

### 1. Read the text.

Private international law **concerns** relations across different legal jurisdictions between natural persons, companies, corporations and other legal entities, their legal obligations and the appropriate forum and procedure for resolving disputes between them.

On an international level, private international law can be very complex, as its purpose is **to reach a middle ground** in recognizing and implementing national laws, but at the same time, acknowledging each country’s own set of laws.

These laws — sometimes called “conflict of laws” — also have to acknowledge the laws related to business establishments, while still implementing national or foreign laws. Cases can be more complicated when

countries have multiple jurisdictions, such as in the US, where each state can be an individual jurisdiction.

In general, there are three elements involved in private international law. The first of these is jurisdiction, which determines what court system can handle a case if given authority by judges. Second is the choice of law, the process that decides which set of laws will be used in resolving the case and determining the final verdict. The third element is the **foreign judgment**, or the agreement to impose, the laws coming from one jurisdiction to another jurisdiction.

Conflict cases, or cases that will have to use the private international law, undergo a complex process. The first step allows related courts to decide which jurisdiction should handle the case, after which the cause of action, or the details that justify plaintiffs to make a case against a defendant, will undergo the second stage of characterization or classification. The process of choice of law will then determine which legal system will be used for the case. For instance, in the USA, in order for a law to be applied, attorneys should first **prove its applicability**, usually by citing a written source such as the US Constitution. Once proof of law is shown, the law can then be enforced, but the winning party should **obtain a “cross-border” notice** in order for the other party to follow the law even outside the jurisdiction.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What does private international law deal with?
2. What is the purpose of private international law?
3. What is another name for private international law?
4. What are the three elements involved in private international law?
5. What do the USA attorneys do in order to apply the law in a conflict case?

## 3. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.

1. физические лица
2. юридические лица
3. правовые обязательства
4. разрешить спор
5. применять внутренние законы
6. свод законов
7. коллизионное право
8. множественные юрисдикции
9. окончательный вердикт
10. решения зарубежных судов
11. трансграничное извещение

**4. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. It was emphasized that reference to applicable domestic law might raise difficult question of private international law.
2. In addition, relying on private international law rules for the application of the draft Convention might introduce uncertainty.
3. Traditionally, private international law conventions exclude any form of renvoi (форм обратных отсылок).
4. Such elaborate rules are not necessary in a chapter that is intended to establish certain general principles, without addressing all contract-related private international law issues.
5. The rules of private international law governing property rights in intellectual property remain fairly undeveloped.
6. The issue has to be settled in conformity with the national law applicable by virtue of the rules of private international law.

**5. Translate from Russian into English.**

1. Международное частное право — это совокупность норм норм внутригосударственного законодательства, международных договоров и обычаев, которые регулируют гражданско-правовые, трудовые и иные частноправовые отношения, осложненные иностранным элементом.
2. Субъектами международного частного права являются юридические и физические лица, а также государства и международные организации.
3. Среди источников международного частного права российские юристы выделяют межгосударственные договоры, национальные законодательства государств, Конституцию РФ, гражданский кодекс РФ (раздел 6. Международное частное право), семейный кодекс РФ, федеральные законы, судебную и арбитражную практику, в том числе практику международных коммерческих арбитражей, международные обычаи.
4. В современной юридической науке существует плюрализм мнений относительно предмета правового регулирования международного частного права.
5. В целях обособления отношений, входящих в предмет международного частного права, традиционно используется понятие «иностраннный элемент».
6. Международное частное право соотносится с международным публичным правом. Их общей целью является создание правовых условий для международного сотрудничества в различных областях.



**6. Study the scheme and provide a comparative analysis of public international law and private international law.**

Public international law	Private international law
<b>1. The main focus of regulation</b>	
Political relations, relations of power (властные отношения)	Civil law relations with a foreign element (international civil relations)
<b>2. Main subjects</b>	
States and interstate organizations	Natural and legal persons from different countries
<b>3. Main sources</b>	
International treaty and international custom	Domestic law of correspondent states
<b>4. The defense of violated rights</b>	
By subjects themselves or via interstate bodies and organizations	In national and arbitration courts, in international arbitration courts

## Unit 5. Supranational Law

### Lead-in

1. What does the supranational law deal with?
2. What is the subject matter of Geneva conventions?

### Vocabulary

1. Geneva conventions — Женевские конвенции
2. Law of the Sea — морское право
3. explicitly — открыто, ясно
4. to submit the right — заявлять о своем праве
5. European Court of Justice — Европейский суд
6. Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union — Статьи Конфедерации, Договор об образовании конфедерации тринадцати английских колоний в Северной Америке
7. to incur debts — влезть в долги, наделать долгов
8. to pool the authority — объединить власть

### 1. Read the text.

Supranational law is a form of international law, based on the limitation of the rights of sovereign nations between one another. It is distinguished from public international law, which involves the United Nations,

the **Geneva conventions**, or the **Law of the Sea**, because in supranational law nations **explicitly submit their right** to make judicial decisions to a set of common institutions.

Supranational law refers to the situation wherein nations surrender to the court their right to work out certain judicial decisions. The decisions made by a court appointed by supranational law take priority over the decisions that are made by national courts. An example of international law that follows the rules of supranational law is that which is represented by the European Union, an organization that deals with international treaties and that uses a supranational legal system. The **European Court of Justice** rules over all of the courts within the member states of the EU in accordance with European Union law.

The Articles of Confederation, formally the **Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union**, was the first supranational agreement where 13 sovereign states were unified in a common government, which later became the United States of America. The central government proved too weak to manage the growing economy as the sovereign states **incurred national debts** and independently managed their national currencies without central coordination. The supranational government was terminated, and the sovereign states were united into a unified sovereign nation-state by the United States Constitution in 1785.

European Union law was the next example of a supranational legal framework. In the EU, sovereign nations have **pooled their authority** through a system of courts and political institutions. They have the ability to enforce legal norms against and for member states and citizens, in a way that public international law does not.

Supranational law or the law of supranational organizations concerns at present regional agreements where the special distinguishing quality is that laws of nation states are held inapplicable when conflicting with a supranational legal system.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What is supranational law?
2. Why is it distinguished from public international law?
3. Do decisions under supranational law take priority over decisions under national law?
4. What is the main feature of European Court of Justice?
5. What was the first supranational agreement?
6. What does the supranational legal framework provide to the EU member states?

**3. Complete the phrases using the adjectival forms of words from the box.**

1) advise 2) bind 3) custom 4) enforce 5) government 6) intellect

1. \_\_\_\_\_ source of law
2. \_\_\_\_\_ standards
3. \_\_\_\_\_ international law
4. \_\_\_\_\_ practices
5. \_\_\_\_\_ organizations
6. \_\_\_\_\_ property rights

**4. Complete the sentences using words from the box.**

1) bilateral 2) inter-state 3) non-governmental 4) supranational

1. Finland and Sweden have concluded a \_\_\_\_\_ agreement on economic co-operation in international emergency situations.
2. A \_\_\_\_\_ organisation is a legally constituted organisation created by private persons or organisations with no participation or representation of any government.
3. The EU is a \_\_\_\_\_ organisation that creates, implements and enforces substantive policies for its members.
4. The international Court of Justice has been criticized for its failure to resolve \_\_\_\_\_ disputes.

**5. Match the halves of the following sentences to get the full concepts.**

1. A customs union is, put	a. which rights are granted to an international body by the signatory nations to the agreement.
2. A legal framework is, in	b. words, it deals with such questions as which law applies in the case at hand.
3. A charter is an agreement by	c. simply, a group of nations who wish to remove customs barriers between them.
4. "Conflict of laws" refers to the body of law dealing with disputes between private persons who live in different jurisdictions; in other	d. essence, a broad system of rules.

**6. Latin words and expressions are still relatively common in the legal language. Study some of them. Focus on their pronunciation rules. Translate the sentences from English into Russian.**

pacta sunt servanda	[ˈpaktə ˌsʊnt səˈvændə]	договоры должны соблюдаться
opinio juris	[ɒˌpiːniəʊ ˈdʒʊəriːs]	мнение права, убежденность в правоте
jus cogens	[ˌdʒʌs ˈkəʊdʒenz]	императивная норма
ab initio	[ab ɪˈniːʃiəʊ]	с начала
actus reus	[ˌaktəs ˈreɪəs]	преступное действие
bona fide(s)	[ˌbəʊnə ˈflɪdiːz], [ˌbəʊnə ˈfiːdeɪz]	честный, добросовестный
corpus delicti	[ˈkɔːpəs diˈlɪktɪ]	вещественные доказательства, состав преступления
de facto	[deɪ ˈfaktəʊ]	фактически
de jure	[diː ˈdʒʊəriː], [deɪ ˈjʊəriː]	юридически
de novo	[diː ˈnəʊvəʊ], [deɪ ˈnəʊvəʊ]	заново
ex parte	[ɛks ˈpɑːteɪ]	односторонний
ex post facto	[ˌɛks pəʊst ˈfaktəʊ]	задним числом
habeas corpus	[ˌheɪbɪəs ˈkɔːpəs]	право арестованного быть доставленным в суд для пересмотра решения об избрании меры пресечения
in personam	[ˌɪn pəːˈsɔːnəm]	в отношении конкретного лица
inter alia	[ˌɪntər ˈeɪliə], [ˌɪntər ˈaliə]	помимо всего прочего
in terrorem	[ˌɪn tər ˈrɔːrəm]	для устрашения
mens rea	[mɛnz ˈriːə]	преступный умысел
prima facie	[ˌprɪmə ˈfeɪʃi]	первоначально, при отсутствии доказательств в пользу противоположного
quid pro quo	[ˌkwɪd prəʊ ˈkwəʊ]	на взаимной основе

1. According to 'pacta sunt servanda' principle, the parties to civil law relations establish a basic agreement on compliance with the concluded agreements.
2. In international law, the 'pacta sunt servanda' principle was set in the UN Charter, the Vienna Convention on the Law of International Treaties and is known as the Principle of the 'bona fide' fulfillment of obligations under international law.
3. Opinio juris, or recognition as a rule of law, gives legitimacy to the usual rule, granting it authority and legal force.
4. To this end, as the International Court of Justice stresses, it is necessary to find out whether this or that rule of customary law exists in the opinio juris of states and make sure that this is confirmed by the practice.
5. The imperative norm or Jus cogens is a rule of law, the expression of which is made in a definite, categorical form and is not subject to change at the initiative of its addressees, in contrast to the dispositive norm.
6. In accordance with Article 53 of the Vienna Convention on the Law of International Treaties of 1969, jus cogens is a norm "that is accepted and recognized by the international community of states as a whole as a norm, deviation from which is unacceptable, and which can be changed only by a subsequent norm of general international law bearing the same character".
7. There is a prima facie case to answer, so we will proceed with the case.
8. She demands possession of the house and custody of the children inter alia.
9. The wife applied ex parte for an ouster order against her husband.
10. He is the de jure owner of the property.
11. Generally, in order to be convicted of a crime, the accused must be shown to have committed an unlawful act (*actus reus*) with a criminal state of mind (*mens rea*).
12. The respondent was not acting bona fides.

### 7. Match the expressions with their definitions.

1. ab initio	a) On the face of it, or as things seem at first
2. actus reus	b) Starting again
3. bona fide(s)	c) Among / In addition to other things
4. corpus delicti	d) A legal action or application pursued by one party only
5. de facto	e) After the event
6. de jure	f) When a threat is implied in a contract, and as a result the contract is invalid

7. ex parte	g) A legal remedy against wrongful imprisonment
8. ex post facto	h) Taken as a matter of fact, even though the legal status may not be certain
9. habeas corpus	i) Legal action against a person (for example, one party in a case claims that the other should do some act or pay damages)
10. in personam	j) A situation where the legal title is clear
11. inter alia	k) The mental state required to be guilty of committing a crime
12. in terrorem	l) An action done in return for something done or promised
13. mens rea	m) From the beginning
14. prima facie	n) An act forbidden by criminal law
15. quid pro quo	o) The real proof that a crime has been committed
16. de novo	p) In good faith

## Chapter II

# THE UNITED NATIONS ORGANIZATION

## Unit 1. History of the UN

### Lead-in

Answer the questions below using the following speech models.

In my view (in my opinion)	По-моему
Personally, I think	Я считаю
As far as I'm concerned	Что касается меня ...
According to smb.	Как считает ...
I agree (with you)	Я с Вами согласен
I doubt	Я сомневаюсь
I have my doubts about	Я не уверен (в ч-либо)
Yes, you could be right but I'm not sure (that)	Возможно, Вы правы, но Я не уверен (что) ...
I partly agree	Я согласен (в какой-то мере) ...
I agree to some extent but I'm afraid I totally disagree	В некотором плане я согласен, но ... Боюсь, что я совсем не согласен ...

1. What do you know about the United Nations Organization?
2. Do you think the UN is a governmental organization?

### Vocabulary

1. to facilitate cooperation — содействовать сотрудничеству
2. human rights — права человека
3. to achieve world peace — добиться глобального мира
4. to provide a platform for dialogue — создать платформу для диалога
5. the UN member-states — страны-члены ООН
6. the UN headquarters — штаб-квартира ООН
7. the UN General Assembly — Генеральная Ассамблея ООН
8. deliberative assembly — совещательный орган
9. the UN Security Council — Совет Безопасности ООН
10. the Economic and Social Council — Экономический и Социальный Совет (ЭКОСОС)

11. the World Health Organization (WHO) — Всемирная Организация Здравоохранения (ВОЗ)
12. the United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF — United Nations International Children's Emergency Fund) — Детский фонд ООН (ЮНИСЕФ)
13. a successor — преемник
14. Allied countries — страны-союзницы
15. to attain a post — занять пост
16. assessed and voluntary contributions — установленные и добровольные взносы
17. to espouse the idea — вдохновиться идеей
18. the UN Charter — Устав ООН
19. Westminster Central Hall — Центральный зал Вестминстерского дворца
20. to maintain peace and security — поддерживать мир и безопасность

### 1. Read the text.

The United Nations (UN) is an international organization whose stated aims are **to facilitate cooperation** in international law, international security, economic development, social progress, **human rights**, and **achieving world peace**. The UN was founded in 1945 after World War II to replace the League of Nations, to stop wars between countries, and **to provide a platform for dialogue**.

There are currently nearly 200 **member-states**, including nearly every recognized independent state in the world. From its **headquarters** on international territory in New York City, the UN and its specialized agencies decide on substantive and administrative issues in regular meetings held throughout the year. The organization is divided into administrative bodies, primarily:

- The General Assembly (the main deliberative assembly);
- The Security Council (decides certain resolutions for peace and security);
- The Economic and Social Council (assists in promoting international economic and social cooperation and development);
- The Secretariat (provides studies, information, and facilities needed by the UN);
- The International Court of Justice (the primary judicial organ).

Additional bodies deal with the governance of all other UN System agencies, such as the **World Health Organization (WHO)** and the **United Nations Children's Fund (UNICEF)**. The UN's most visible public figure is the Secretary General. The organization is financed from **assessed and voluntary contributions** from its member states, and has six official languages: Arabic, Chinese, English, French, Russian and Spanish.

The UN was founded as a **successor** to the League of Nations, which was widely considered to have been ineffective in its role as an international governing body, as it had been unable to prevent World War II. The term



“United Nations” was first used by Winston Churchill and Franklin D. Roosevelt, in the 1942 Declaration by United Nations, which united the **Allied countries** of WWII under the Atlantic Charter, and soon became a term widely used to refer to them. Declarations signed at wartime Allied conferences in 1943 **espoused the idea** of the UN. Those and later talks outlined the organization’s proposed purposes, membership, organs, and ideals in regard to peace, security, and cooperation.

On 25 April 1945, the UN Conference on International Organization began in San-Francisco, attended by 50 governments and a number of non-governmental organizations involved in drafting the **Charter of the UN**. The UN officially came into existence on 24 October 1945 upon ratification of the Charter by the five permanent members of the Security Council — France, the Republic of China, the Soviet Union, the United Kingdom and the United States — and by a majority of the other 46 signatories. The first meetings of the General Assembly, with 51 nations represented, and the Security Council, took place in **Westminster Central Hall** in London in January 1946. According to the Charter, the UN is **to maintain international peace and security**, to develop friendly relations among nations, to cooperate in solving international problems and in promoting respect for human rights.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. When was the UN founded and for what purpose?
2. When was the term “United Nations” first used and by whom?
3. What countries ratified the UN Charter?
4. What did the UN Charter set out?
5. What are the main organs of the UN?
6. When did the UN officially come into existence?
7. When and where did the first meetings of the General Assembly and the Security Council take place?
8. Who is currently the UN Secretary General?

## 3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.

To facilitate cooperation, member states, to achieve world peace, to provide a platform for a dialogue, the UN headquarters, successor, to prevent World War II, international security, to hold meetings, substantive issues, ineffective, to draft the Charter of the UN, to come into existence.

## 4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.

Международная безопасность, содействовать сотрудничеству, уважать права человека, обеспечить платформу для диалога, важные вопросы, сохранять мир во всем мире, согласно Уставу, Генеральный Секретарь ООН, вступить в должность, предотвратить войну, пре-

емник Лиги Наций, прекратить войны, штаб-квартира, Генеральная Ассамблея ООН, Совет Безопасности.

### 5. Match Russian and English equivalents.

1) Генеральный секретарь ООН	a) The Security Council
2) Генеральная Ассамблея ООН	b) the UN Charter
3) Совет Безопасности	c) the UN General Assembly
4) Штаб-квартира ООН	d) the UN Secretary-General
5) Международный суд по правам человека	e) UN member states
6) Совет по экономическим и социальным вопросам	f) The UN Headquarters
7) Государства-члены ООН	g) The Economic and Social Council
8) Устав ООН	h) The International Court of Justice

### 6. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. The United Nations is an international organization whose stated aims are ... .
2. The UN was founded in ... .to ... .
3. The UN's most visible public figure is .... .
4. The UN was founded as a successor to ... .
5. The organization is divided into administrative bodies, primarily ... .
6. The UN officially came into existence ... .
7. According to the Charter, the UN is ... .

### 7. Translate from English into Russian.

1. When states become members of the UN, they agree to accept the obligations of the UN Charter, an international treaty, which sets out basic principles of international relations.

2. According to the Charter, the UN has four purposes: to maintain international peace and security, to develop friendly relations among nations, to cooperate in solving international problems and promoting respect for human rights, and to be a centre for harmonizing the actions of nations.

3. The UN is not a world government, and it does not make laws. It does, however, provide the means to help resolve international conflicts and formulate policies on matters affecting all of us.

4. The United Nations is much more than a peacekeeper and forum for conflict resolution. Often without attracting attention, the UN is engaged in a vast array of work that touches on every aspect of people's lives around the world.

5. The UN recognizes the sovereign equality of all its members who will refrain from use or threat of force in inter-state relations. It does not interfere in matters that are within the domestic jurisdiction of any state.

## 8. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Целью ООН является поддержание мира и безопасности во всем мире, решение всех спорных вопросов путем переговоров.

2. Основными органами ООН являются: Генеральная Ассамблея, Совет Безопасности, Экономический и Социальный Совет, Международный Суд, Секретариат, каждый из которых включает в себя большое количество комитетов и подкомитетов.

3. Устав ООН был подписан 50 странами в 1945 году в Сан-Франциско, Калифорния.

4. ООН всегда руководствовалась принципом невмешательства во внутренние дела независимых государств и пыталась сдерживать конфликтующие стороны при разрешении спорных вопросов.

5. ООН выступает за осуществление международного сотрудничества в экономической, социальной, культурной и гуманитарной областях.

## Unit 2. The UN General Assembly

### Lead-in

1. What do you think about the role of the UN in the modern world?
2. According to the Russian Ambassador extraordinary and plenipotentiary Anatoly Torkunov, if the UN didn't exist, we would have to create it. Comment on it.

### Vocabulary

1. to be composed of — состоять из
2. member nations — страны-члены ООН
3. to be entitled to one vote — иметь право на один голос
4. at the request of the Security Council — по просьбе Совета Безопасности
5. at the request of a majority of the UN members — по просьбе большинства стран-членов ООН
6. any matter within the scope of the charter — любой вопрос, не противоречащий уставу
7. to be brought before the General Assembly — быть представленным на рассмотрение сессии Генеральной Ассамблеи
8. on the agenda — на повестке дня
9. to put on the agenda — включить в повестку дня
10. lack of unanimity — отсутствие единодушия (единства)
11. permanent members — постоянные члены
12. to fail to exercise its primary responsibility — оказаться не в состоянии выполнять свою первостепенную (главную) задачу
13. to be a threat to peace — быть угрозой миру

14. breach of peace — нарушение мира
15. to recommend collective measures — рекомендовать коллективные меры
16. to restore peace — восстановить мир
17. to be convened within 24 hours — быть созванным, в течение 24 часов
18. emergency special session — чрезвычайная, внеочередная сессия

### 1. Read the text.

The General Assembly **is composed of** representatives of all **member nations**. Each nation may send not more than five representatives to each session. Each nation **is entitled to one vote**.

The General Assembly meets in regular annual sessions and in special sessions when necessary. Special sessions are convoked by the Secretary General **at the request of the Security Council or of a majority of the members** of the UN.

Important matters, such as international peace and security, admitting new members, the UN budget are decided by two-thirds majority. In recent years, a special effort has been made to reach decisions through consensus, rather than by formal vote.

**Any matter within the scope of the charter may be brought before the General Assembly**, which may make recommendations on all except issues **on the agenda** of the Security Council. However, the General Assembly in November, 1950, decided that if the Security Council, because of **lack of unanimity** among its **permanent members**, **fails to exercise its primary responsibility** for maintenance of international peace and security, in any case where there appears **to be a threat to peace, breach of peace** or act of aggression, the Assembly may consider it and **recommend collective measures** including the use of armed forces to maintain or **restore peace**. In such cases, the General Assembly may **be convened within 24 hours** in an **emergency special session**.

### 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the composition of the UN General Assembly?
2. How many votes is each nation entitled to?
3. Who are special sessions convoked by?
4. At whose request are special sessions convened?
5. What matters may be brought before the General Assembly?
6. What was the decision of the General Assembly in November of 1950?
7. In what cases may the General Assembly be convened within 24 hours in an emergency special session?

### 3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.

Member nations, to be entitled to, to meet in regular annual sessions, to be convoked, at the request of, a majority of members, within the scope

of the Charter, to be brought before the General Assembly, except issues on the agenda of the Security Council, lack of unanimity, to fail to exercise its primary responsibility, maintenance of international peace and security, a breach of peace.

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

Состоять из представителей, каждая страна, на повестке дня, постоянные члены Совета Безопасности ООН, в любом случае, угроза миру, рекомендовать коллективные меры, использование вооруженных сил, сохранить или восстановить мир, в подобных случаях, чрезвычайная сессия ООН, поддержание международного мира и безопасности.

**5. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. The UN was established in 1946 by 50 countries.
2. There are currently 150 member states to the UN.
3. According to the Charter the UN has one purpose.
4. The UN is a sort of world government, which makes laws.
5. The UN has four main organs.
6. The General Assembly is a kind of Parliament of nations.
7. Decisions on important matters in the UN General Assembly are taken by one-half majority.
8. There are 5 official languages of the United Nations.

**6. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. The main organ of the United Nations and the one in which all member states are represented is the General Assembly.
2. The General Assembly meets in regular annual sessions from September to December.
3. Special (emergency) sessions can be convened at the request of the Security Council or a majority of members of the United Nations on subjects of particular concern.
4. The Assembly has the right to discuss and make recommendations on all the matters within the scope of the UN Charter.
5. The UN General Assembly can make recommendations to member states and to other UN organs with the aim of promoting international cooperation in the political, economic and social fields.
6. In case the Security Council fails to exercise its primary responsibility for maintenance of peace and security the General Assembly may recommend collective measures.
7. The General Assembly may recommend the use of armed forces in the case of a breach of peace or act of aggression.

8. All UN member states are represented in the General Assembly — a kind of parliament of nations which meets to consider the world's most pressing problems.

### 7. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Каждая страна может направить на заседание сессии Генеральной Ассамблеи не более пяти представителей.

2. Чрезвычайные сессии ООН могут быть созваны Генеральным секретарем ООН по просьбе Совета Безопасности или по решению большинства членов Генеральной Ассамблеи.

3. Любой вопрос может быть вынесен (включен) на повестку дня сессии Генеральной Ассамблеи ООН.

4. В том случае, если Совет Безопасности ООН не может выполнить свою прямую обязанность по поддержанию мира и безопасности в том или ином регионе, Генеральная Ассамблея ООН может рассмотреть этот вопрос на внеочередной сессии и рекомендовать коллективные меры.

5. Внеочередные или чрезвычайные сессии ООН могут быть созваны в течение 24 часов от начала конфликта.

## Unit 3. The UN Security Council and Specialized Agencies

### Lead-in

1. Does the UN fight against terrorism?
2. What special agencies of the UN do you know?

### Vocabulary

1. permanent members of the Security Council — постоянные члены Совета Безопасности
2. to carry out decisions — выполнять решения
3. 2-year term — 2-х летний срок
4. to be eligible for re-election — иметь право на переизбрание
5. to investigate — расследовать
6. a dispute — спор
7. to threaten peace and security — угрожать миру и безопасности
8. to handle a dispute — рассматривать спорный вопрос
9. party to a dispute — сторона-участник конфликта
10. to enforce decisions — проводить решения в жизнь
11. interruption of economic relations — прекращение (разрыв) экономических отношений
12. severance of diplomatic relations — разрыв дипломатических отношений
13. to call on smb. to do smth. — призывать к-л. к ч-либо

- 14. to furnish armed forces — сформировать вооруженные силы
- 15. to encourage — поддерживать, содействовать
- 16. to settle a dispute — урегулировать спор
- 17. protection of refugees — защита беженцев

### 1. Read the text.

The Security Council consists of 15 members, 5 with permanent seats. The remaining 10 are elected for **2-year terms** by the General Assembly, they **are not eligible for immediate re-election**.

**Permanent members** of the Council are: China, France, Russia, the United Kingdom and the United States.

The Security Council has the primary responsibility for maintaining international peace and security and members agree **to carry out its decisions**. The Council may **investigate** any **dispute** that **threatens international peace and security**. When the Security Council is **handling a dispute** or situation the General Assembly makes no recommendation unless the Council requests it.

The Security Council functions continuously, each member being represented at all times. It may change its place of meeting.

Any member of the UN may participate in its discussions and a nation not a member of the UN may appear if it is a **party to a dispute**.

The Security Council may decide **to enforce its decisions** without the use of arms. Such measures include **interruption of economic relations**, break in transportation and communications, and **severance of diplomatic relations**. If such measures fail the Council may **call on** UN members **to furnish armed forces** and assistance. The right of individual or collective self-defense is not prohibited by membership in the UN, and if a member nation is attacked it may do what is necessary, reporting this to the Security Council, which may take independent action. However, the Council **encourages** regional arrangements or agencies by means of which local **disputes can be settled** without getting as far as the Council, after the Council has approved this method.

### The Economic and Social Council

Economic and Social Council consists of twenty-seven members. The Council is concerned with financial and technical assistance to the less developed countries, the international **protection of refugees** and aid to the world's children.

### The International Court of Justice

The principal judicial organ of the United Nations is the International Court of Justice which sits at the Hague in the Netherlands. It is composed of fifteen judges who are elected by the Security Council and the General Assembly.

## The Secretariat

The administrative functions of the United Nations are carried out by the Secretariat. The secretariat consists of some 6,000 members, 3,600 of whom are at the United Nations Headquarters in New York.

The Secretary General who is appointed by the General Assembly on the recommendation of the Security Council is at the head of the Secretariat.

### 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What countries are permanent members of the UN Security Council?
2. What is the primary responsibility of the Security Council?
3. How does the Security Council function?
4. In what way can the Security Council enforce its decisions?
5. In what cases do the UN members apply to the Security Council for help?
6. What are functions of the Economic and Social Council?
7. What is the principle judicial organ of the UN? Who are its members elected by?
8. Who are the administrative functions of the UN carried out by?
9. Who is at the head of the Secretariat?
10. What body is the UN Secretary General appointed by?

### 3. Translate the following word collocations from the text.

To be eligible for re-election, primary responsibility, to investigate a dispute, a party to a dispute, to enforce a decision, to call on UN members, to furnish armed forces, to encourage arrangements, self-defence, regional arrangements, severance of diplomatic relations, to threaten international peace and security.

### 4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations

Состоять из, быть выбранным на 2-х летний срок, важнейшая обязанность, угрожать миру и безопасности, разрыв дипломатических отношений, самооборона, подвергнуться нападению, предпринять действия, основной судебный орган, поддерживать международные меры, защита беженцев, помощь детям во всем мире, быть назначенным, по рекомендации.

### 5. Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. There are 10 Security Council members.
2. The Security Council may convene from September to December.
3. The Security Council has the power to make binding decisions that member governments have agreed to carry out.
4. The Secretary General is appointed by the Secretariat.



5. The International Court of Justice sits in New York.
6. A nation not a UN member may not appear at the Security Council discussions if it is a party to a dispute.
7. When the Security Council is handling a dispute or situation the General Assembly makes recommendations.

#### 6. Translate into Russian.

1. The UN Charter gives the Security Council primary responsibility for maintaining international peace and security. The Council may convene at any time, day or night, whenever peace is threatened.
2. There are 15 Security Council members. Five of these — China, France, the Russian Federation, the UK and the USA — are permanent members. The other 10 are elected by the General Assembly for a two-year term. Decisions of the Council require nine yes votes.
3. When the Security Council is handling a dispute or situation the General Assembly makes no recommendations unless the Council requests it.
4. There is a big number of organizations and agencies working in partnership with the UN in various economic, scientific and technical fields.

#### 7. Translate into English.

1. Основной задачей Совета Безопасности является сохранение мира и безопасности во всем мире.
2. Любая страна, являющаяся членом ООН и представленная в штаб-квартире ООН, может принимать участие в заседаниях и обсуждениях в Совете Безопасности ООН.
3. Право на индивидуальную или коллективную самооборону не запрещается для стран членов ООН. В том случае, если страна член ООН подверглась нападению, она может предпринимать необходимые действия, уведомив об этом Совет Безопасности.
4. Экономический и Социальный Совет осуществляет финансовую и техническую помощь развивающимся странам, занимается вопросами защиты беженцев и помощи детям во всем мире.
5. Международный Суд состоит из 15 судей, которые избираются Советом Безопасности и Генеральной Ассамблеей ООН.

#### 8. Complete the table.

Verb	Noun	Adjective or Participle
		reliable
to resume		
	cooperation	
to promote		

	development	
		resolving
	government	
to protect		
	security	
		concerning

**9. Give negative forms of the following adjectives.**

Regular, effective, friendly, reliable, ambitious, honest, pleasant

**10. Form nouns from the following adjectives.**

Confident, optimistic, strong, reliable, ambitious, anxious, enthusiastic

**11. Study the information below. Choose one of the agencies and make a presentation.**

**Specialized agencies of the UN**

A group of organizations related to the UN by special agreements work in partnership in various economic, social, scientific and technical fields.

**These agencies are:**

International Atomic Energy Agency — IAEA — МАГАТЭ

International Labor Org. — ILO — Международная организация труда (МОТ)

Food and Agricultural Org. — FAO — Организация по вопросам продовольствия и сельского хозяйства (ФАО)

United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Org. — UNESCO — Организация по вопросам просвещения, науки и культуры (ЮНЕСКО)

World Health Org. — WHO — Всемирная организация ООН по вопросам здравоохранения (ВОЗ)

International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (or World Bank)

— Bank/IBRD — Международный банк реконструкции и развития

International Development Assn. — IDA — Международная ассоциация развития

International Finance Corp. — IFC — Международная финансовая корпорация

International Monetary Fund — IMF — Международный валютный фонд (МВФ)

International Civil Aviation Org. — ICAO — Международная организация гражданской авиации

Universal Postal Union — UPU — Всемирный почтовый союз

International Telecommunication Union — ITU— Международный телекоммуникационный союз

World Meteorological Org. — WMO — Международная метеорологическая организация

International Maritime Consultative Org. — IMCO — Международная морская организация

United Nations Industrial Development Org. — UNIDO — Организация ООН по промышленному развитию

General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade (an international commercial treaty) — GATT— Генеральное соглашение по таможенным тарифам и торговле.

## Unit 4. What the UN Does for Peace

### Lead-in

1. Can you recall any successful peace keeping operation of the UN?
2. Are you satisfied with the UN ability to guarantee peace and security in the modern world?

### Vocabulary

1. to envision — определять, представлять себе, воображать
2. to give the position greater scope — зд. предоставить лицу, занимающему пост генерального секретаря, более широкие полномочия
3. halting the spread of arms — прекращение распространения оружия
4. eventually eliminating all weapons of mass destruction — в конечном итоге ликвидировать все виды оружия массового уничтожения
5. ongoing forum — непрерывный форум
6. multilateral negotiations — многосторонние переговоры
7. Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty — Договор о нераспространении ядерного оружия
8. Comprehensive Nuclear-Test-Ban Treaty — Договор о всеобщем запрете ядерных испытаний
9. stockpiling — накапливание, создание запасов
10. to ban — запрещать
11. from the seabed and ocean floor — от дна моря и океана
12. outer space — космическое пространство
13. to outlaw landmines — признать наземные мины вне закона
14. to adhere to smth — придерживаться чего-либо
15. destructive — разрушительный
16. light weapons — стрелковое оружие
17. illicit trade — незаконная торговля

18. Vienna-based International Atomic Energy Agency — Международное агентство по атомной энергии с центром в Вене
19. safeguards agreement — соглашение о гарантиях
20. are not diverted — зд. не годятся
21. adherence — приверженность, соблюдение

### 1. Read the text.

The Secretariat is headed by the Secretary-General, who acts as the de facto spokesman and leader of the UN. **Envisioned** by Franklin D. Roosevelt as a “world moderator”, the Secretary-General can bring to the Security Council’s attention “any matter which in his opinion may threaten the maintenance of international peace and security”, **giving the position greater scope** for action on the world stage. The position has **evolved** into a dual role of an administrator of the UN organization, a diplomat addressing disputes between member states and finding consensus to global issues.

The Secretary General is appointed by the General Assembly, after being recommended by the Security Council. The selection can be vetoed by any member of the Security Council, and the General Assembly can theoretically override the Security Council’s recommendation if a majority vote is not achieved, although this has not happened so far. There are no specific criteria for the post, but over the years it has become accepted that the post shall be held for one or two terms of five years, that the post shall be appointed based on geographical rotation, and that the Secretary-General shall not originate from one of the five permanent Security Council member states.

## Disarmament

**Halting the spread of arms** and reducing and **eventually eliminating all weapons of mass destruction** are major goals of the United Nations. The UN has been an **ongoing forum** for disarmament negotiations, making recommendations and initiating studies. It supports **multilateral negotiations** in the Conference on Disarmament and in other international bodies. These negotiations have produced such agreements as the **Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty** (1968), the **Comprehensive Nuclear-Test-Ban Treaty** (1996) and the treaties establishing nuclear-free zones.

Other treaties prohibit the development, production and **stockpiling** of chemical weapons (1992) and bacteriological weapons (1972), **ban** nuclear weapons **from the seabed and ocean floor** (1971) and **outer space** (1967); and ban or restrict other types of weapons. In 1997, more than 100 nations signed the Ottawa Convention **outlawing landmines**. The UN encourages all nations **to adhere to** this and other treaties banning **destructive** weapons of war. The UN is also supporting efforts to control small arms and **light weapons**. As decided by the General Assembly, an international conference in 2001 was focused on the **illicit trade** in small arms.

The **Vienna-based International Atomic Energy Agency**, through a system of **safeguards agreements**, ensures that nuclear materials and equipment intended for peaceful uses **are not diverted** to military purposes. And in The Hague, the Organization for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons collects information on chemical facilities worldwide and conducts routine inspections to ensure **adherence** to the chemical weapons convention.

## 2. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Генерального Секретаря ООН назначает Генеральная Ассамблея по рекомендации Совета Безопасности.
2. Генеральный Секретарь ООН может привлечь внимание Совета Безопасности к любому вопросу, который, по его мнению, может угрожать международному миру и безопасности.
3. Для этой должности нет конкретных критериев, но с течением времени стало принято устанавливать для этой позиции один или два срока в пять лет, а назначение на должность производится на основе географической ротации.
4. Человек, занимающий пост Генерального Секретаря ООН, не может быть гражданином ни одной из 5-ти стран членов Совета Безопасности.
5. По решению Генеральной Ассамблеи международная конференция в 2001 году была посвящена незаконной торговле стрелковым оружием.
6. В Гааге Организация по запрещению химического оружия собирает информацию о химических объектах по всему миру и проводит регулярные инспекции для обеспечения соблюдения конвенции о химическом оружии.

## 3. Read the text and answer the questions.

### Reform

Since its founding, there have been many calls for reform of the United Nations. Some want to the UN to play a greater or more effective role in world affairs, while others want its role reduced to humanitarian work. There have also been calls for the UN Security Council's membership to be increased, for different ways of electing the UN Secretary General.

The UN has also been accused of bureaucratic inefficiency and waste. An official reform programme was begun by Kofi Annan in 1997. Reforms mentioned include changing the permanent membership of the Security Council, making the bureaucracy more transparent, accountable and efficient, making the UN more democratic.

In September 2005, the UN convened a World Summit that brought together the heads of most member states, calling the summit "a once-in-a-generation opportunity" to take bold decisions in the areas of devel-

opment, security, human rights and reform of the United Nations. Kofi Annan proposed that the summit agree to reform the UN, renewing the organisation's focus on peace, security, human rights and development, and to make it better equipped at facing 21<sup>st</sup> century issues. The result of the summit was a compromise text agreed on by world leaders, which included the creation of a Peace building Commission to help countries emerging from conflict, a Human Rights Council, and agreements to devote more resources on achieving the Millennium Development Goals.

1. What calls to reform the UN have been made?
2. What has the UN been accused of?
3. Who was an official reform programme begun by?
4. What event brought together the heads of most UN member states?
5. What was the aim of the World Summit?
6. What reform of the UN did Kofi Annan propose?
7. What was the result of the Summit?

#### **4. Translate into Russian in writing.**

The UN Charter specifically calls on the United Nations to undertake the progressive codification and development of international law. The conventions, treaties and standards resulting from this work have provided a framework for promoting international peace and security and economic and social development. States which ratify these conventions are legally bound by them.

The International law Commission prepares drafts on topics of international law which can then be incorporated into conventions and opened for ratification by States. Some of these conventions form the basis for law governing relations among States, such as the convention on diplomatic relations or the convention regulating the use of international watercourses. The Convention on the Law of the Sea seeks to ensure equitable access by all countries to the riches of the oceans, protect them from pollution and facilitate freedom of navigation and research. The Convention against Illicit Traffic in Narcotic Drugs is the key international treaty against drug trafficking.

The UN Commission on International Trade Law develops rules and guidelines designed to harmonize and facilitate laws regulating international trade. The UN has also pioneered the development of international environmental law. Agreements such as the convention to combat desertification, the convention on the ozone layer and the convention on the transborder movement of hazardous wastes are administered by the UN Environment Programme.

To combat terrorism, the UN and its specialized agencies have developed international agreements that constitute the basic legal instruments against terrorism.

### 5. Render the text into English.

После 1945 года многое в мире изменилось. Мир не стал более безопасным. На первый план вышли глобальные вызовы и угрозы безопасности и устойчивому развитию, такие как международный терроризм, распространение оружия массового уничтожения, наркотрафик, бедность, экологическая деградация.

На «Саммите-2005» в Нью Йорке все без исключения государства подтвердили свою приверженность Уставу ООН. Были приняты прорывные решения по совершенствованию под эгидой ООН единой международной стратегии в преодолении террористической угрозы.

Резолюция 1624 Совета Безопасности ООН классифицирует подстрекательство к терроризму как преступное деяние. До сих пор криминальным признавались сами теракты, действия по их организации, подготовке и финансированию, а подстрекательство к терроризму впервые классифицировано в качестве уголовного правонарушения.

Применение силы в международных отношениях возможно только на основе Устава ООН. Государства-члены ООН не будут мириться с проявлениями геноцида, массовых нарушений прав человека. В резолюции Совета Безопасности заложены положения о том, что террористические атаки на государства являются вооруженным нападением, для отражения которого страны имеют право на самооборону согласно Уставу ООН.

Адаптация ООН к новым историческим реалиям необходима. Только опираясь на широкое согласие, мы сможем выйти на дальнейшее укрепление ООН, ее авторитета.

(С. В. Лавров — Министр иностранных дел РФ)

### 6. Tell the class about the UN using the following plan.

1. History of the UN
2. The UN General Assembly
3. The Security Council
4. The UN Secretary General
5. What the UN does for peace

### 7. Express your opinion on the following issues.

1. The United Nations completely fulfils its mission today.
2. The UN peacekeeping forces are able to replace NATO or EU forces.

## Unit 5. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights

### Lead-in

1. What basic human rights do you know?
2. Are human rights respected all over the world?

### Vocabulary

1. pursuit of human rights — соблюдение прав человека
2. atrocities — злодеяния, зверства
3. to that end — для достижения этой цели
4. to take up human rights issues — рассматривать вопросы прав человека
5. enshrined in — закрепленные в
6. Universal Declaration of Human Rights — Всеобщая декларация прав человека
7. to contribute to raising consciousness — способствовать повышению сознательности
8. covenant — пакт, соглашение, договор
9. specific abuses — особые (конкретные) злоупотребления
10. to address human rights violations — реагировать на нарушение прав человека
11. high-profile positions — высокие посты, должности
12. consecutive terms — последовательные сроки
13. indigenous peoples — коренное население
14. to confront — сталкиваться, противостоять
15. shelter — убежище, укрытие
16. populace — население
17. famine — голод
18. to be afflicted by — пострадать от
19. High Commissioner for Refugees — Верховный комиссар по делам беженцев

#### 1. Read the text.

The **pursuit of human rights** was the central reason for creating the UN, World War II **atrocities** and genocide led to a ready consensus that the new organization must work to prevent any similar tragedies in the future. An early objective was creating a legal framework for considering and acting on complaints about human rights violations. The UN Charter obliges all member nations to promote “universal respect for, and observance of, “human rights” and to take “joint and separate action” **to that end**. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights, though not legally binding, was adopted by the General Assembly in 1948. The Assembly regularly **takes up human rights issues**.

The UN and its agencies are implementing the principles **enshrined in the Universal Declaration of Human Rights**. A case in point is support by the UN for countries in transition to democracy, technical assistance in providing free and fair elections, improving judicial structures, drafting constitutions, training human rights officials. The UN has helped run elections in countries with little



democratic history, including recently in Afghanistan and East Timor. The UN is also a forum to support the right of women to participate fully in the political, economic, and social life of their countries. The UN **contributes to raising consciousness** of the concept of human rights through its **covenants** and its attention to **specific abuses** through its General Assembly, Security Council resolutions, or International Court of Justice rulings.

The purpose of the United Nations Human Rights Council, established in 2006, is **to address human rights violations**. The Council is the successor to the United Nations Commission on Human Rights, which was often criticised for the **high-profile positions** it gave to member states that did not guarantee the human rights of their own citizens. The council has 47 members distributed by region, each serve a three-year term, and may not serve three **consecutive terms**. A candidate to the body must be approved by a majority of the General Assembly.

The rights of some 370 million **indigenous peoples** around the world is also a focus for the UN, with the Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples being approved by the General Assembly in 2007. The declaration outlines the individual and collective rights to culture, language, education, identity, employment and health, thereby addressing post-colonial issues which have **confronted** indigenous peoples for centuries. The declaration aims to maintain, strengthen and encourage the growth of indigenous institutions, cultures and traditions. It also prohibits discrimination against indigenous peoples and promotes their active participation in matters which concern their past, present and future.

In conjunction with other organizations such as the Red Cross, the UN provides food, drinking water, **shelter** and other humanitarian services to **populaces** suffering from **famine**, displaced by war, or **afflicted by** other disasters. Major humanitarian branches of the UN are World Food Programme (which helps feed more than 100 million people a year in 80 countries), the office of the **High Commissioner for Refugees** with projects in over 116 countries, as well as peacekeeping projects in over 24 countries.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What was the central reason for creating the UN?
2. When was the Universal Declaration of Human rights adopted?
3. What principles enshrined in the Declaration are being implemented by the UN and its agencies?
4. What is the purpose of the United Nations Human Rights Council?
5. What does the Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples outline?
6. What does the Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples prohibit?

### 3. Match the word combinations from the text with their Russian equivalents.

1. The United Nations Human Rights Council	a) верховенство права
2. The United Nations Commission on Human Rights	b) Декларация о правах коренного населения
3. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights	c) Совет ООН по правам человека
4. The Declaration on the Rights of Indigenous Peoples	d) Красный Крест
5. The Red Cross	e) Всемирная Продовольственная Программа
6. World Food Programme	f) Верховный комиссар ООН по вопросам беженцев
7. The High Commissioner for Refugees	g) Комиссия ООН по правам человека
8. The Rule of law	h) Всеобщая декларация прав человека

### 4. Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights was adopted by the Security Council in 1945.
2. The UN Charter obliges all member nations to promote respect for and observance of human rights.
3. The UN does not support the rights of women.
4. The UN Human Rights Council was established in 2000.
5. The UN Commission on Human Rights was criticized for not taking up human rights issues regularly.
6. The Declaration of Human Rights of Indigenous Peoples does not promote the active participation in matters which concern their life

### 5. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Декларация определяет основные права человека. В ней провозглашаются цели и принципы, она не носит обязательного характера и имеет характер морального обязательства.

2. Многие страны включают положения Всеобщей декларации прав человека в свои конституции и базовое законодательство.

3. Декларация состоит из преамбулы и 30 статей. Она была принята и провозглашена резолюцией 317А Генеральной Ассамблеи ООН от 10.12.1948 г.

4. Всеобщая декларация прав человека — это образец справедливого отношения к человеку для всех стран и народов и призыв ко всем государствам мира признать эти права и обеспечить их для своих граждан.

5. Конституция государства и другие законы не могут противоречить Декларации прав человека.

6. Всеобщая декларация прав человека действует в большинстве стран мира. Главным в ней стал принцип, согласно которому права личности важнее, чем права государства.

**6. Study the articles of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights (see Text 1 of Appendix II). Decide what articles of the Declaration are violated in the following situations.**

1. Children between the age of 5 and 11 have to go to school, but their parents must pay for it.
2. A man has his house broken into and his television stolen. He goes to the police, but they tell him to go away because they have more important things to do.
3. Archie White, a magistrate, has his car stolen. The police arrest and charge the man they think is responsible. The next day the man is taken to court for an initial hearing. The chairman of the justices (the head magistrate) in the courtroom is Archie White. He tells the members of the public that they have to leave the courtroom.
4. Staff employed by Kaput Computers have to start work at 7 in the morning and work until 7 in the evening, with only a half hour break for lunch. They work from Monday to Saturday, and do not get paid leave.
5. A couple wants to have a baby. The government says that the country is overpopulated and tells them that they cannot have a baby yet.
6. A new government tells all public servants that they have to become a member of their political party. Anyone who refuse will lose their job.
7. John Doe is arrested because the police think he has killed someone. Before his trial has begun, a popular newspaper publishes an article about him (complete with photographs of his arrest) with the headline “Vicious murderer John Doe caught!”
8. Two friends, one white and one black, have been threatened with violence. They go to the police to ask for protection. The police agree to help the white man, but not the black man.
9. A journalist writes a newspaper article explaining why he opposes his country’s foreign policy. He is told by the government that he has become persona non-grata, he must leave the country immediately and never return.

10. A woman who lives in a capital city wants to visit her sick father, who lives 200 km away. She is told that she cannot leave the city to visit him.
11. A poor man murders someone and is sent to prison. A rich man commits a murder in similar circumstances but is allowed to go free.
12. A robber is sent to prison for 5 years. While he is in prison, the government confiscates all his belongings, and then destroys his house.
13. A man travels to another country where he asks to stay because he is frightened of remaining in his home country. He is immediately sent back to the country he came from.
14. The Republic of Istanata has never given women the right to vote.
15. At a party, a woman tells a group of friends that she thinks the government of her country is corrupt and incompetent. The next day she is arrested and never seen again.
16. A newspaper editor dislikes a famous popular actress, he publishes an article about her. The article describes the actress as 'ugly, stupid and unable to act.'
17. A group of about 200 people hold a meeting in a public building to discuss their government's policies. The police arrive and arrest them all.
18. The government intercepts, opens and reads one of their key opponent's letters and other mail.
19. A famous political author writes a book criticizing the police. She then leaves her home to go on a tour to promote her book. While she is away, the police start harassing her husband and children.
20. A husband and wife get divorced. The law in their country says that in any divorce case the man automatically gets custody of the children.
21. A woman joins a trade union. The company she works for discovers this and immediately dismisses her.
22. A man loses his job and cannot find work. His country does not offer financial support for people who are out of work.
23. A 17-year-old boy murders someone a few days before his 18th birthday. He is arrested, and six months later the case goes to court. His country has the death penalty for murder if the murderer is 18 or over. The judge sentences him to death and he is executed.
24. A policeman does not like the look of a young man sitting on a park bench, so arrests him, takes him to the police station and puts him in a police cell.
25. The police suspect that a man is a member of a terrorist organization. They hit him, deprive him of food, water and sleep, and burn him with cigarettes until he confesses.
26. A poor man borrows money from a wealthy factory owner. He is unable to pay the money back. The factory owner takes the man's 12-year-old son and makes him work in the factory to pay off the debt.

27. A new government closes all the churches, temples, mosques and synagogues in its country, and forbids anyone from attending services there.
28. A family want to take a holiday abroad and apply for passports. They are told that they cannot have passports and cannot go abroad.
29. Mr. Smith and Ms. Jones do exactly the same job for the same company. They have the same qualifications and the same experience. Mr. Smith receives \$35000 a year, and Ms. Jones receives \$28000 a year.

### 7. Read and retell the text.

#### International Court of Justice

The International Court of Justice (ICI), located in the Hague, Netherlands, is the primary judicial organ of the United Nations. Established in 1945 by the United Nations Charter, the Court began its work in 1946 as the successor to the Permanent Court of International Justice. The Statute of the International Court of Justice, similar to that of its predecessor, is the main constitutional document constituting and regulating the Court.

It is based in the Peace Palace in the Hague, Netherlands, sharing the building with the Hague Academy of International Law, a private centre for the study of international law. Several of the Court's current judges are either alumni or former faculty members of the Academy. Its purpose is to adjudicate disputes among states. The court has cases related to war crimes, illegal state interference and ethnic cleansing, among others, and continues to hear cases.

A related court, the International Criminal Court (ICC), began operating in 2002 through international discussions initiated by the General Assembly. It is the first permanent international court charged with trying those who commit the most serious crimes under international law, including war crimes and genocide. The ICC is functionally independent of the UN in terms of personnel and financing, but some meetings of the ICC governing body, the Assembly of States Parties to the Rome Statute, are held at the UN. There is a "relationship agreement" between the ICC and the UN that governs how the two institutions regard each other legally.

### 8. Translate into English.

1. ООН проводит целенаправленную политику по повышению роли Международного Суда и обеспечению правосудия и верховенства закона в международных отношениях.
2. Международный суд – это главный судебный орган ООН, и его задача состоит в том, чтобы разрешать споры между государствами, руководствуясь верховенством права.

3. Господство права — это уровень взаимодействия государств на мировой арене, когда все возникающие споры регулируются Международным Судом.
4. Международный Суд как главный судебный орган ООН содействует мирному разрешению международных споров, помогая снять напряженность между государствами и развивать их взаимоотношения на основе права и всестороннего сотрудничества

**9. Make a presentation on one of the following topics.**

1. Recent decisions of the UN Security Council and the way they are implemented.
2. Urgent issues associated with the UN.
3. Attempts at reforming the UN.
4. The way Russia (the USA, the UK, etc.) participates in the work of the UN.
5. UN-related current events.

## **Chapter III**

# **NATIONAL SECURITY STRATEGY OF THE RUSSIAN FEDERATION**

## **Unit 1. Major Points of Russia's National Security Strategy**

### **Lead-in**

1. What does the term “national security” mean?
2. Read the definitions of national security below and decide which of them is the most comprehensive and precise.
  - a) National security means the protection or the safety of a country's secrets and its citizens.
  - b) National security objectively means the absence of threats to acquired values and subjectively, the absence of fear that such values will be attacked.
  - c) National security is an appropriate and aggressive blend of political resilience and maturity, human resources, economic structure and capacity, technological competence, industrial base and availability of natural resources and finally the military might.
  - d) National security then is the ability to preserve the nation's physical integrity and territory; to maintain its economic relations with the rest of the world on reasonable terms; to preserve its nature, institution, and governance from disruption from outside; and to control its borders.
  - e) National security is best described as a capacity to control those domestic and foreign conditions that the public opinion of a given community believes necessary to enjoy its own self-determination or autonomy, prosperity and wellbeing.

### **Vocabulary**

1. to acknowledge — признавать
2. strengthening — укрепление
3. to prompt — побуждать
4. counteraction — противодействие

5. to strive — стремиться
6. to pursue a policy of constrain — проводить политику сдерживания
7. to envisage — предусматривать
8. territorial integrity — территориальная целостность
9. economic competitiveness — конкурентоспособность в экономической сфере
10. food security — продовольственная безопасность
11. polycentric world order — полицентрический мировой порядок
12. uneven — неравномерный
13. NATO (North Atlantic Treaty Organization) — НАТО (Североатлантический Союз)
14. offensive weapons — наступательные виды оружия
15. to weaken — ослаблять
16. indivisible — неделимый
17. to endow — предоставлять
18. to reveal — показывать, обнаруживать
19. instigation of “color revolutions” — подстрекательство к «цветным революциям»
20. NGOs (non-governmental organizations) — неправительственные организации
21. overthrowing legitimate political authorities — свержение легитимных политических властей
22. new “hot spots” — новые “горячие” точки
23. proliferation and use of chemical weapons — распространение и использование химического оружия
24. conventional weapons — обычные виды оружия
25. anti-constitutional coup d’etat — антиконституционный государственный переворот
26. schism — раскол
27. pursuit — стремление

**1. Read the text and identify a) the national strategic priorities and b) main problems Russia faces in strengthening its national security.**

On the very last day of 2015, the President of the Russian Federation signed Russia’s National Security Strategy for 2016, updating the existing strategic planning document, which established the country’s national interests and strategic national priorities and home and foreign policy goals, targets and measures directed at strengthening national security and ensuring the country’s stable long-term development until 2020.

The National Security Strategy until 2020, which was approved by the president in 2009, was a rather short list of priorities and apparently needed an update due to the changing environment Russia has found itself in.



Here are the major points.

1. The document **acknowledges** that the **strengthening** of Russia, its independent foreign and internal policy **prompts** the US and its allies to initiate **counteraction**, as they are **striving** to maintain their dominant position in the world. Thus, they **pursue a policy of constrain** of Russia, which **envisages** political, economic, military and information pressure. Therefore, Russia's national priority is consolidating its position as one of the leading world powers. The country's long-term national interests are: consolidating the Russian Federation's status as one of the leading world powers, whose actions are aimed at ensuring strategic stability and mutually beneficial partnerships in the context of a multi-polar world.

When it comes to national priorities, it emphasizes strengthening the country's protection of its constitutional system, sovereignty and **territorial integrity**, strengthening the national consensus, raising the quality of life, preserving and developing culture, improving **economic competitiveness**, and other principles of national security. Strategic tasks include ensuring **food security** through "ensuring Russia's food independence". In addition, the document calls for the accelerated development of Russia's agriculture, increasing the effectiveness of government support for agribusiness, preventing the uncontrolled traffic of GMO foods and also training highly prepared specialists for the agricultural sector.

2. The process of forming a new **polycentric world order** is accompanied by a rise in global and regional instability. Conflicts are escalating due to the **uneven** global development and the growing differences between various countries' levels of well-being, the struggle over resources and market access and control over trade routes. Competition between states is being extended to values and societal development models, human, technological, and scientific potential.

The struggle for influence in the international arena involves the whole range of political, financial/economic, and information instruments. The potential of secret services is being utilized more actively.

3. The document acknowledges that the role of force continues to dominate in the international relationship. The strive to increase and modernize the **offensive weapons** only **weakens** the global security system and the system of international treaties and agreements on arms control.

The principles of equal and **indivisible** security are not being observed in the Euro-Atlantic, Eurasian and Asia-Pacific regions.

Expanding the force potential of NATO and **endowing** it with global functions led to the violation of international legal norms, the block's military activation, its continued expansion, and the approach of its military infrastructure to Russian borders.

The growth of migration from Africa and the Middle East to Europe has **revealed** the bankruptcy of the regional system of security in the Euro-Atlantic region that was built on the basis of NATO and the EU.

The **instigation of “color revolutions”** is one of the main threats to Russia’s security. The regions neighboring Russia are characterized by growing militarization and arms race.

The most important threats to Russia’s state are “the activity of radical societal groups and organizations which are using nationalist and extremist religious ideology, of foreign and international NGOs and financial and economic organizations, as well as private individuals, aimed at undermining the unity and territorial integrity of the Russian Federation, destabilizing the political and social situation inside the country through inspiring ‘color revolutions’ and destroying traditional Russian spiritual and moral values.”

The document notes that the practice of **overthrowing legitimate political authorities**, provoking internal instability and conflict, is becoming more widespread.

In addition to the still-existing areas of instability in the Middle and Far East, in Africa, South Asia, and the Korean Peninsula, **new “hot spots”** have appeared and the territory not controlled by any government authority has expanded.

4. The document states that the US is expanding its network of military-biological laboratories on the territory of countries neighboring Russia. The world still faces a high risk of **proliferation and use of chemical weapons**, and also the uncertainty as to which foreign countries have biological weaponry or the means to develop and produce it.

There is also the danger that the number of nuclear weapons states will increase. Politically unstable countries run a high risk of seeing **conventional weapons** fall into terrorist hands, and the “physical protection of dangerous objects and materials” is in a critical state.

US and EU support of **the anti-constitutional coup d’etat** in Ukraine led to a deep **schism** in the Ukrainian society and an armed conflict.

The document notes that the West’s effort to counter the integration processes and to create “hot spots” in the Eurasian region is having a negative influence on Russia’s **pursuit** to defend its national interests.

## 2. Match the sections of the text (1-4) with their titles (A-D).

- A. Forming a new polycentric world order
- B. Russia in the modern world
- C. The US military-biological lab network
- D. Role of force, relations with NATO and block approach

## 3. Answer the following questions.

1. What kind of document is the Strategy of 2015?
2. What are Russia’s long-term national interests?
3. How is it possible to ensure food security?
4. What does the document call for?

5. Why are conflicts escalating?
6. What is the significance of force for the state security?

**4. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. to establish national interests
2. the country's stable long-term development
3. changing environment
4. to strive to maintain the dominant position in the world
5. ensuring Russia's food independence
6. to escalate conflicts
7. to dominate in the international relationship
8. undermining the unity and territorial integrity
10. physical protection of dangerous objects and materials

**5. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. суверенитет и территориальная целостность
2. предусматривать внешнеполитическое давление
3. обеспечить взаимовыгодное партнерство
4. укрепление национального согласия
5. ускоренное развитие
6. региональная нестабильность
7. ослабить глобальную систему безопасности
8. нарушение международно-правовых норм
9. подстрекательство к совершению "цветных" революций
10. свержение законных правительств

**6. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. The Strategy is a key strategic planning document that establishes the national interests and strategic national priorities of the Russian Federation, and home and foreign policy goals, targets and measures directed at strengthening national security and ensuring the country's stable short-term development.

2. Thus they confront a policy of constrain of Russia, which envisages exerting political, economic, military and information pressure.

3. Therefore, Russia's national priority is consolidating its position as one of the leading world powers.

4. The process of forming a new polycentric world order is accompanied by a fall in global and regional instability.

5. The still-evident block approach to resolving international problems is not facilitating their response to a whole range of challenges and threats.

**7. Match adjectives and nouns to form word combinations from the text. Translate them into Russian.**

1. strategic	a. powers
2. economic	b. partnership
3. foreign	c. development
4. leading	d. authorities
5. beneficial	e. priorities
6. accelerated	f. treaties
7. growing	g. competitiveness
8. offensive	h. policy
9. legitimate	i. differences
10. international	j. weapons

**8. Fill in the gaps with the words from the box. List the most dangerous risks for Russia.**

a) self-government	f) strengthening
b) weakens	g) imbalance
c) foreign currency	h) socio-economic policy
d) attempts	i) stabilizing
e) exchange rate	j) influence
	k) sovereign debt

### Crisis Risk

In view of the global economic \_\_1\_\_, there is a high risk of financial/economic crisis re-occurrence. “Against the background of structural imbalances in the global economy and the financial system, the growth of \_\_2\_\_, and energy market volatility, the risk of a repeated major financial and economic crisis remains high,” the document states. “The growing \_\_3\_\_ of political factors on economic processes, as well as individual countries’ \_\_4\_\_ to use economic methods, financial, trade, investment, and technology policies to achieve their geopolitical objectives \_\_5\_\_ the resilience of the international economic system,” the Strategy emphasizes. The document calls for \_\_6\_\_ the financial system, ensuring a stable ruble \_\_7\_\_, and reducing interest rates.

The Strategy also implies the state will conduct \_\_8\_\_. “In order to counteract the threats to economic security, government agencies and local \_\_9\_\_ entities in collaboration with civil society institutions will implement the state socio-economic policy which includes: strengthening the financial system, ensuring its sovereignty, \_\_10\_\_ ruble exchange rate,

optimizing \_\_11\_\_ regulation and monitoring, reducing interest rates ...” the document states.

### 9. Assemble English paragraphs according to their Russian versions.

а) Для предотвращения угроз национальной безопасности необходимо обеспечить социальную стабильность, этническое и конфессиональное согласие, повысить мобилизационный потенциал и рост национальной экономики, поднять качество работы органов государственной власти и сформировать действенные механизмы взаимодействия с гражданским обществом в целях реализации гражданами Российской Федерации права на жизнь, безопасность, труд, жилье, здоровье и здоровый образ жизни, на доступное образование и культурное развитие.

Increase the mobilization potential and growth of the national economy; in order to realize the right of every Russian citizen to life, security, work, housing, health and a healthy way of life, accessible education and cultural development; for the prevention of threats to national security; as well as improve the quality of work performed by state bodies and formulate effective mechanisms for their interaction with civil society; it's essential to guarantee social stability, ethnic and denominational harmony.

б) В условиях глобализации процессов мирового развития, международных, политических и экономических отношений, формирующих новые угрозы и риски для развития личности, общества и государства, Россия в качестве гаранта благополучного национального развития переходит к новой государственной политике в области национальной безопасности.

As a guarantee of successful national development; as well as of international political and economic relations; Russia is transitioning to a new state national security policy; in the context of the globalization processes of world development; creating new threats and risks to the development of the individual society, and the state.

## Unit 2. Threats to Russia's National Security

### Lead-in

1. How can you characterize the current political situation?
2. Do you think Russian intelligence services and Russian government take sufficient measures to ensure citizens' security?

### Vocabulary

1. decile coefficient — децильный коэффициент
2. growth of consumer prices — рост цен на потребительские товары
3. fiscal support — финансовая поддержка

4. disruption of normal functioning of state bodies — нарушение нормального функционирования государственных органов
5. destruction of military or industrial sites — уничтожение военных и промышленных объектов
6. long-term concept for the comprehensive development — долгосрочная концепция всестороннего развития
7. improvement of law-enforcement organs and special services — усовершенствование деятельности правоохранительных органов и спецслужб

### 1. Read the text.

**A.** On the 31<sup>st</sup> of December 2015 President Vladimir Putin signed a decree adopting the new Russian Federation National Security Strategy. The corresponding document was placed on the official legal information portal. The new edition of the Strategy prepared by the RF Security Council includes means of fighting against radicalism and terrorism.

**B.** The main indicators of the state of national security are designated in order to evaluate the level of national security, and include: the level of unemployment, the **decile coefficient** (the correlation between the incomes of the top and bottom 10% of the population), the rate of **growth of consumer prices**, the level of the internal and external state debt as a percentage of GDP, the level of **fiscal support** for health, culture, education and science as a percentage of GDP, the level of annual renewal of armaments, military and specialist equipment, and the level of military and engineering-technical staff supply.

**C.** The main threats to the national security in the sphere of state and public security are as follows:

- investigative or other activity by the special services and organizations of foreign countries, and likewise by individual persons, directed at causing harm to the security of the Russian Federation;
- the activity of terrorist organizations, groups and individuals, directed at violent changes to the constitutional system of the Russian Federation, the disruption of normal functioning of state bodies (including violent action against governmental, political and social actors), the destruction of military or industrial sites, enterprises and institutions providing for vital social activities, and intimidation of the population, including by means of nuclear and chemical weapons or dangerous radioactive, chemical and biological substances;
- the extremist activity of nationalist, religious, ethnic or other organizations and structures, directed at destroying the unity and territorial integrity of the Russian Federation, destabilization of the internal political and social situation in the country;
- the activity of transnational criminal organizations and groupings, connected to illegal trafficking of narcotic and psychotropic substances, weapons, ammunition and explosive substances;

- the persistent growth of criminal acts directed against the individual, property, state power, public and economic security, and likewise acts connected to corruption.

**D.** The main threats to the border-related interests and security of the Russian Federation are the presence and escalation of armed conflicts near its state borders.

Security threats to borders include the activity of international terrorist and extremist organizations which base their emissaries and terrorist means in Russia and organize sabotage on Russian territory, and likewise the increased activity of transnational criminal groupings engaged in the illegal transfer across the Russian border of narcotic and psychotropic substances, goods and cargo, water and biological resources, other material and cultural valuables, and in the organization of channels for illegal migration.

A negative effect on the reliable defense and protection of Russia's state borders is exerted by the insufficient level of development of border infrastructure and of technological equipment for border-related bodies.

**E.** In order to ensure state and public security:

- the structures and activity of federal organs of executive power are being improved, a National Anticorruption Plan is being implemented, a system of discovery and response to the global threats and crises of modernity is being developed, including international and national terrorism, political and religious extremism, nationalism and ethnic separatism;
- mechanisms for the forecasting and neutralization of social and interethnic conflicts are being created;
- a long-term concept for the comprehensive development and improvement of law-enforcement organs and special services is being formulated, social guarantees for their employees are being strengthened, scientific-technical support for law enforcement activity is being improved, promising specialist means, and technologies are being adopted, a system of professional staff training is being developed in the area of state and public security;
- a regime of secure functioning of the enterprises, organizations and institutions belonging to the country's military-industrial, nuclear, chemical and nuclear energy complexes, and likewise of essential support systems for the life of the population;
- the social responsibility of bodies providing state and public security is being increased.

## **2. Match the paragraphs (A-E) with their titles (1-5).**

- 1) State and public security threats
- 2) Measures that are to be taken to ensure state and public security
- 3) Introduction
- 4) Security threats to the RF borders
- 5) The main indicators of the state of national security

**3. Answer the following questions.**

1. Why is it necessary to update national security strategy?
2. What are the main indicators of national security?
3. Identify the main threats to national security of the Russian Federation.
4. How can state and public security be ensured?

**4. Match the verbs with nouns and adjectives to make collocations. Translate them into Russian.**

1. to improve	a. the unity and territorial integrity
2. to sign	b. harm
3. to destroy	c. the level of national security
4. to adopt	d. the social responsibility
5. to protect	e. the system of professional cadre training
6. to evaluate	f. scientific-technical support
7. to strengthen	g. a decree
8. to implement	h. state and public security
9. to increase	i. a plan
10. to ensure	j. the Strategy
11. to develop	k. social guarantees
12. to cause	l. Russia's state borders

**5. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. валовый внутренний продукт
2. уровень безработицы
3. финансовая поддержка
4. уровень роста потребительских цен
5. децильный коэффициент (соотношение между доходами 10% населения с максимальными и минимальными доходами)
6. уровень ежегодного обновления вооружения, военной и специальной техники
7. уровень обеспеченности военными и инженерно-техническими кадрами
8. уровень государственного внешнего и внутреннего долга в процентном соотношении от ВВП

**6. Translate from English into Russian in writing.**

The condition of the national economy and incomplete nature of the system and structure of the authorities of state and society, social and political polarization of society and criminalization of social relations, the growth of organized crime and terrorism, and a deterioration in intercommunal and international relations are all creating a broad range of internal and external threats to the national security of Russia.



The fundamental threats in the international sphere are brought about by the following factors: the desire of some states and international associations to diminish the role of existing mechanisms for ensuring international security, above all the United Nations and the OSCE; strengthening of military-political blocs and alliances, above all NATO's eastward expansion; possible emergence of foreign military bases and major military presences in the immediate proximity of Russian borders; proliferation of mass destruction weapons and their delivery vehicles; weakening of integrational processes in the Commonwealth of Independent States; outbreak and escalation of conflicts near the state borders of the Russian Federation and the external borders of CIS member states.

**7. Study the table and analyze internal and external threats to Russia's national security. Which of them are the most intense? Report to the class.**

Threats to Russia's national security	
Internal	External
* attempts to forcefully change the constitutional order and violate the territorial integrity of Russia	* deployment of armed forces and assets near the borders of the Russian Federation and its allies
* planning, preparation and implementation of actions to disrupt the functioning of public authorities and administration, attacks on government, economic and military facilities, critical and information infrastructure	* attempts to forcibly change the constitutional order and violate the territorial integrity of Russia
* creation, arming, training of illegal armed groups and their activities	* interference by foreign states in the internal affairs of the Russian Federation
* illegal distribution of weapons, ammunition and explosives in the territory of the Russian Federation	* building-up troop groups near the borders of the Russian Federation and violation of the existing balance of forces
* large-scale organized crime activities that threaten political stability in some regions of the Russian Federation	* armed provocations, including attacks on Russian military facilities located in the territory of foreign countries, as well as facilities and structures at the State border of the Russian Federation and borders of its allies
* activities of separatist and radical religious national movements	* actions that impede Russia's access to strategically important transport communications
	* discrimination, non-observance of the rights, freedoms and legitimate interests of citizens of the Russian Federation in some foreign countries

## Unit 3. Threats to Russia's National Security in the Cultural Sphere

### Lead-in

1. What threats to the national security does the Russian Federation face in the cultural sphere?
2. What countermeasures can be taken to reduce these threats?

### Vocabulary

1. stimulation of creative self-realization within the population — стимулирование творческого развития граждан
2. improving systems of cultural enlightenment — расширение культурно-просветительской деятельности
3. organization of leisure activities — создание условий для организации досуга
4. extracurricular artistic education — внешкольное образование в творческой сфере
5. marginalized groups — маргинальные группы людей
6. unlawful infringements against cultural objects — противоправные посягательства на объекты культуры
7. permissiveness and violence — вседозволенность и насилие
8. intolerance — нетерпимость
9. cultural ties — культурные связи
10. to be served by — обеспечиваться за счет чего-либо
11. preserving and developing indigenous cultures — сохранение и развитие самобытной культуры
12. improving the material and technical basis of cultural and leisure establishments — совершенствование материально-технической базы для культурных и досуговых учреждений
13. acknowledging the primary role of culture in the rebirth and preservation of cultural and moral values — признание первостепенной роли культуры в приумножении и сохранении традиционных культурных и нравственных ценностей
14. reinforcing the spiritual unity — укрепление духовного единства
15. creating a system of spiritual and patriotic education — создание системы духовно-нравственного и патриотического воспитания

### 1. Read the text.

Strategic objectives ensuring national security in the cultural sphere are as follows:

- broadening access of large sections of the population to the best examples of national and foreign culture and art by creating modern territorially distributed information banks;

- creating conditions for the stimulation of creative self-realization within the population, by improving systems of cultural enlightenment, the organization of leisure activities and mass extracurricular artistic education;
- assisting the development of the cultural potential of Russia's regions and supporting regional cultural initiatives.

The main threats to national security in the cultural sphere are the dominance of production of mass culture oriented towards the spiritual needs of **marginalized groups**, and likewise **unlawful infringements against cultural objects**.

Negative influences on the state of national security in the cultural sphere are intensified by attempts to revise perspectives on Russia's history, its role and place in world history; and by the propagandizing of a lifestyle based on **permissiveness and violence**, or racial, national and religious **intolerance**.

In order to counteract threats in the cultural sphere, the forces of national security together with civil society institutions ensure the effectiveness of state regulation intended to support and develop national cultures, tolerance and self-respect, and likewise the development of international (in the sense of interethnic) and interregional **cultural ties**.

The strengthening of national security in the cultural sphere **will be served by preserving and developing indigenous cultures** within Russia's multinational population, and the citizenry's spiritual values; by **improving the material and technical basis of cultural and leisure establishments**; by reflecting the system of training of staff and providing for their social welfare; by supporting the production and distribution of domestic cinematography; developing cultural tourism; establishing government contracts for the creation of cinematographic and printed works, television and radio programmes and internet resources; and likewise by using Russia's cultural potential in the service of multilateral international cooperation.

In the medium and long term, the resolution of national security challenges in the cultural sphere is achieved by **acknowledging the primary role of culture in the rebirth and preservation of cultural and moral values**, by **reinforcing the spiritual unity** of the multinational population of the Russian Federation and the international image of Russia as a country with a very rich traditional and dynamically developing contemporary culture, by **creating a system of spiritual and patriotic education** for Russian citizens.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What are strategic objectives ensuring national security in the cultural sphere?
2. What are the main threats to national security in the cultural sphere?
3. What is done in order to counteract threats in the cultural sphere?

4. In what way will the strengthening of national security in the cultural sphere be served?

5. How is the resolution of national security challenges in the cultural sphere achieved?

**3. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. расовая, национальная и религиозная нетерпимость
2. обеспечение общественного благосостояния
3. многостороннее международное сотрудничество
4. вседозволенность и насилие
5. укрепление единства многонационального народа Российской Федерации
6. формирование государственного заказа на создание кинематографической и печатной продукции
7. внешкольное творческое образование
8. противостоять угрозам в культурной сфере

**4. Classify the adjectives from the text according to the suffixes. Use them in the sentences of your own.**

—al

—ic

—ous

**5. Find antonyms to the following words in the text.**

Uneducated, foreign, ancient, secular, danger, separation, minor, illiteracy, legal, material.

**6. Translate from Russian into English.**

Государственная политика в сфере обеспечения национальной безопасности и социально-экономического развития Российской Федерации способствует реализации стратегических национальных приоритетов и эффективной защите национальных интересов. В настоящее время создана устойчивая основа для дальнейшего наращивания экономического, политического, военного и духовного потенциалов Российской Федерации, повышения ее роли в формирующемся полицентричном мире.

Реализация настоящей Стратегии национальной безопасности призвана способствовать развитию национальной экономики, улучшению качества жизни граждан, укреплению политической стабильности в обществе, обеспечению обороны страны, государственной и общественной безопасности, повышению конкурентоспособности и международного престижа Российской Федерации.

**7. Make a presentation on recent cultural achievements of our country.**

## Unit 4. Threats to Russia's National Security in the Sphere of Health Care and National Health

### Lead-in

1. What are the possible threats to the national security of Russia in the area of healthcare and national health?
2. What countermeasures can be taken to reduce these threats?

### Vocabulary

1. appearance of large-scale epidemics and pandemics — возникновение крупномасштабных эпидемий и пандемий
2. accessibility of psychoactive and psychotropic substances — доступность психоактивных и психотропных веществ
3. low effectiveness of the medical insurance system — низкоэффективная деятельность системы медицинского страхования
4. incomplete formation of a normative legal basis — не полностью сформированная нормативно-правовая база
5. increasing accessibility and implementing guarantees of medical assistance for the general population — обеспечение доступности медицинской помощи и реализация гарантий ее оказания населению
6. preventative orientation of healthcare — профилактическая направленность здравоохранения
7. using promising information and telecommunications technologies — использование достоверной информации и средств телекоммуникации
8. to counteract threats — противодействовать угрозам
9. uniform approaches to the diagnosis, treatment and rehabilitation of patients — единые комплексные подходы к постановке диагноза, лечению болезней и реабилитации пациентов

### 1. Read the text.

Strategic national security goals in the area of healthcare and health of the nation are as follows:

- increasing life expectancy, decrease reducing disability and mortality;
- improving disease prevention and the provision of timely, qualified primary healthcare and high-technology medical aid assistance;
- improving standards of medical assistance, and likewise of the quality, effectiveness and safety of medicines.

One of the main threats to national security in terms of healthcare and national health is the **appearance of large-scale epidemics and pandemics**, the mass spread of HIV infection, tuberculosis, drug addiction and alcoholism, and the increased **accessibility of psychoactive and psychotropic substances**.

A direct negative effect on national security in the domain of healthcare and national health is exerted by the **low effectiveness of the medical insurance system** and the low quality of healthcare specialist training and retraining;

the insufficient level of social warranty guarantees and wages for medical workers and insufficient financing for the system of high-technology medical assistance; the **incomplete formation of a normative legal basis** for healthcare oriented at **increasing accessibility and implementing guarantees of medical assistance for the general population**.

The state policy of the Russian Federation relating to the healthcare and national health is geared at preventive medicine and also at preventing the spread of socially dangerous illnesses.

The main directions of national security policy in the sphere of healthcare and national health of the Russian Federation are determined in the medium term by the intensification of the **preventative orientation of healthcare**, focusing on preserving human health, and preserving the institution of the family, motherhood, fatherhood and childhood, as the foundations of social vitality.

The strengthening of national security in the area of healthcare and national health will be supported by enhancing the quality and accessibility of medical services, by **using promising information and telecommunications technologies**, by means of state support for promising pharmaceutical, biotechnological and nanotechnological research, and likewise by modernizing economic mechanisms involved in the functioning of healthcare and developing the material and technical base of state and municipal healthcare systems, taking regional particularities into consideration.

In order to **counteract threats** to healthcare and national health, the forces of national security in cooperation with civil society institutions ensure the effectiveness of state regulation in the area of standardization, licensing, and certification of medical services, in the accreditation of medical and pharmaceutical establishments, in the provision of state guarantees for receiving medical assistance and modernizing the system of obligatory medical insurance, and in the definition of uniform criteria evaluating the work of centres for treatment and prevention at the level of municipal formations and subjects of the Russian Federation.

The resolution of problems of national security in the sphere of healthcare in the medium and long term is achieved by the following means:

- formulating national programmes (projects) for the treatment of socially significant diseases (oncological, cardiac-arterial, diabetic and phtisiological [respiratory] illnesses, drug addiction, alcoholism), alongside the development of uniform approaches to the diagnosis, treatment and rehabilitation of patients;
- developing an administrative system supervise overseeing the quality and accessibility of medical assistance, and the training of healthcare specialists;
- providing for the qualitative transformation of the structure of infections and for the liquidation of the preconditions of epidemics, including epidemics caused by particularly dangerous infectious pathogens, by developing and implementing promising technologies and national programmes of state support for disease prevention.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What are the national security goals in the area of healthcare and health of the nation?
2. What is the main threat to the national security in the healthcare sphere?
3. Why does the insufficient wages for medical workers effect negatively the national security?
4. What are the main directions of national security policy in the sphere of national health?
5. How is it possible to strengthen the RF national security in the area of healthcare and national health?
6. What is done nowadays in Russia to counteract threats to healthcare and health of the nation?

**3. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. увеличение продолжительность жизни
2. быть направленным на профилактическую медицину
3. снижение уровня инвалидности и смертности населения
4. сохранение здоровья человека
5. предотвращение распространения опасных болезней
6. в области здравоохранения и здоровья нации
7. совершенствование качества и доступности медицинских услуг
8. в среднесрочной и долгосрочной перспективе

**4. Choose a), b) or c) to make up word combinations from the text.**

1. strategic	a) purposes b) targets c) goals
2. medical	a) care b) aid assistance
3. national	a) security b) defense c) protection
4.a normative legal	a) foundation b) basis base
5. state	a) support b) maintaining c) maintenance
6. drug	a) use b) addiction c) prevention

**5. Find in the text synonyms to the following words and word combinations.**

Compulsory, to intensify, aid, persistence, danger, to define, up-to-date, to realize, important, to strike a blow against, maintenance, problem solving.

**6. Complete the table with the correct forms.**

Verb	Abstract noun	Attribute/Participle
		assessable
	security	
to prevent		
to assist		
	insurance	
		preserving
to direct		
	identification	
		developing
to found		
		administrative
	provision	
		strengthening
to counteract		
		promising
to oblige		
	certification	

**7. Discuss with your partner(s) possible ways to overcome the difficulties in the sphere of health care. Report to the class.****Unit 5. Nuclear Deterrence****Lead-in**

1. Is it reasonable to reduce nuclear arsenals or is it always necessary for a state to have nuclear power?
2. Do you know what a hybrid war is?

**Vocabulary**

1. strategic deterrence — стратегическое сдерживание, ядерное устрашение
2. assigned combat readiness — заданная степень готовности к боевому применению



3. Armed Forces of the Russian Federation — Вооруженные Силы РФ
4. to reduce nuclear arsenals — сократить ядерный арсенал
5. critical infrastructure — объекты инфраструктуры
6. spread of terrorism, extremism, inter-religious and inter-ethnic enmity — распространение терроризма, экстремизма, межрелигиозной и межэтнической вражды
7. overthrowing legitimate regimes — свержение законных правительств
8. hybrid war — гибридная война
9. policy of double standards — политика двойных стандартов
10. in the realm of fighting terrorism — в сфере борьбы с терроризмом
11. irresponsible actions — безответственные действия
12. proliferation of weapons — распространение оружия
13. drug trafficking — незаконный оборот наркотиков

**1. Read the following excerpts from an article about Russian National Security Strategy.**

“**Strategic deterrence** and the prevention of international military conflicts is accomplished through supporting the nuclear deterrent potential at a sufficient level, and the **assigned combat readiness** of the **Armed Forces of the Russian Federation** and other armed formations.” At the same time, Russia is ready for further discussion on **reducing nuclear arsenals**. “In order to preserve strategic stability, Russia is ready for further discussion on reducing nuclear arsenals on the basis of bilateral agreements and multilateral formats.”

The RF Security Council Secretary earlier said that the Strategy included the ways of preventing the spread of radical ideology and its propaganda in mass media and emphasized the importance of increasing the level of protection of **critical infrastructure**, key individuals, society, and the state as a whole against terrorist threats. According to him, the document openly states that **spread of terrorism, extremism, inter-religious and inter-ethnic enmity** was facilitated by the practice of **overthrowing legitimate regimes** using the “color revolution” and “**hybrid war**” methods.

“The appearance and consolidation of the influence by the terrorist organization which names itself the Islamic State is the result of the **policy of double standards** which is pursued by some countries **in the realm of fighting terrorism**,” the Secretary emphasized. “The result of such **irresponsible actions** was the prolonged instability in Afghanistan, Iraq, Libya, the war in Syria, widespread **proliferation of weapons**, organized crime, **drug trafficking**, and systematic violations of rights and freedoms of millions of people”.

## 2. Match English word combinations from the text with their Russian equivalents.

1) strategic deterrence	a) сократить ядерный арсенал
2) policy of double standards	b) гибридная война
3) irresponsible actions	c) распространение межэтнической вражды
4) drug trafficking	d) стратегическое сдерживание
5) overthrowing legitimate regimes	e) заданная степень готовности к боевому применению
1) spread of inter-ethnic enmity	a) незаконный оборот наркотиков
2) to reduce nuclear arsenals	b) безответственные действия
3) assigned combat readiness	c) политика двойных стандартов
4) hybrid war	d) свержение законных правительств

## 3. Translate from English into Russian.

1. The threat to humanity as a whole from nuclear weapons has led many to oppose them since their development.

2. The nuclear deterrence and Mutually Assured Destruction did prevent nuclear war between the USA and USSR, until the collapse of the latter.

3. Since the end of the Cold War, the nature of the nuclear threat has changed dramatically. The greatest nuclear fear today is that nuclear weapons find their way into the hands of terrorists or 'rogue states', either through autonomous programmes of development or technology passed on.

4. A policy of deterrence is useless against terrorists and is less useful against 'rogue states' such as Iran and North Korea, both of which are believed to possess nuclear weapons, because their motivations are not easily understood.

5. Although some nuclear-weapon States and members of NATO have sought to further reduce the role of nuclear weapons in their security policies, a number of States remain committed to the doctrine of nuclear deterrence based on the contemplated first use of nuclear weapons.

6. The military doctrine of nuclear deterrence was a prime obstacle to meaningful progress on nuclear disarmament and was being used to justify the modernization of existing stockpiles of nuclear weapons.

## 4. Render the text from Russian into English.

Идея разработки новой редакции политики России в области ядерного сдерживания нацелена на предупреждение конфликтов и применения ядерного оружия, и посылает четкий сигнал потенциальным

противникам на этот счет, считают опрошенные РИА Новости американские эксперты.

Предложение по новой редакции «Основ политики Российской Федерации в области ядерного сдерживания» содержится в проекте рекомендаций, принятых 21.11.2018.

Президент В. Путин немногим ранее отмечал, что в концепции РФ по использованию ядерного оружия нет превентивного удара, и подобные виды вооружений могут быть использованы только в случае ответного удара. При этом он подчеркнул, что «агрессор должен знать, что возмездие неизбежно, что он будет уничтожен».

«В основе всего этого лежит сдерживание: наличие надежного плана применения ядерного оружия при определенных условиях означает не то, что Россия намерена применять его, а то, что она посылает сигнал противникам и потенциальным противникам о том, что определенные действия с их стороны приведут Россию к применению ядерного оружия. Цель состоит в том, чтобы эти действия в итоге не были предприняты, а противник был остановлен, и России не пришлось бы реагировать (с помощью ядерного оружия)», — считает Директор программ России и Евразии Центра стратегических и международных исследований в Вашингтоне Ольга Оликер.

РИА новости, 21.11.2018.

### **5. Read the following excerpt from an article and comment on the journalist's opinion.**

The only way to make sure nuclear weapons are not used is to make sure there are no such weapons.

There is no evidence, for example, that the Soviet leadership ever contemplated trying to conquer western Europe, much less that it was restrained by the West's nuclear arsenal. Post facto arguments — especially negative ones — might be the currency of pundits, but are impossible to prove, and offer no solid ground for evaluating a counterfactual claim, conjecturing why something has not happened.

In colloquial terms, if a dog does not bark in the night, can we say with certainty that no one walked by the house? Deterrence enthusiasts are like the woman who sprayed perfume on her lawn every morning. When a perplexed neighbour asked about this strange behaviour, she replied: 'I do it to keep the elephants away.' The neighbour protested: 'But there aren't any elephants within 10,000 miles of here,' whereupon the perfume-sprayer replied: 'You see, it works!'

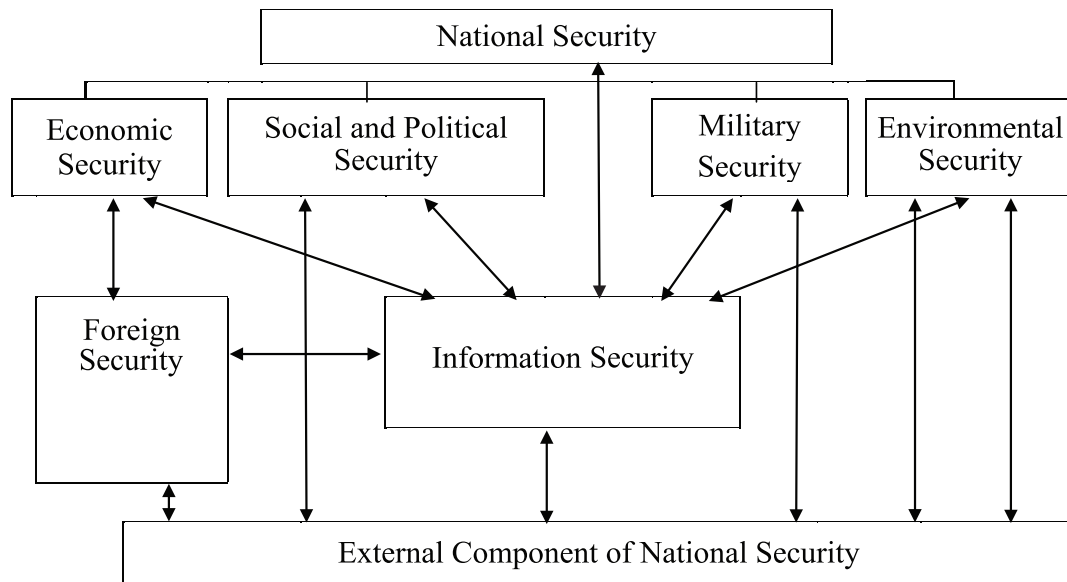
We should not congratulate our leaders, or deterrence theory, much less nuclear weapons, for keeping the peace.

What we can say is that, as of this morning, those with the power to exterminate life have not done so. But this is not altogether comforting,

and history is no more reassuring. The duration of ‘nuclear peace’, from the Second World War to the end of the Cold War, lasted less than five decades.

David P. Barash  
The Guardian, 14 Jan 2018

**6. Study the scheme and describe the core of a National Security system.**



## **Chapter IV**

# **NATIONAL SECURITY AGENCIES OF RUSSIA**

## **Unit 1. Federal Security Service (FSB)**

### **Lead-in**

1. What agencies provide national security of the Russian Federation?
2. Would you like to serve in an intelligence agency?

### **Vocabulary**

1. Federal Security Service (FSB) — Федеральная служба безопасности (ФСБ)
2. counter-intelligence — контрразведка
3. Foreign Intelligence Service (SVR) — Служба Внешней Разведки (СВР)
4. Commonwealth of Independent States (CIS) — Содружество Независимых государств (СНГ)
5. Directorate — Управление
6. Main Intelligence Directorate (GRU) — Главное Разведывательное Управление (ГРУ)
7. Main Directorate of the General Staff of the Russian Armed Forces (GU) — Главное Управление Генерального Штаба Вооруженных Сил Российской Федерации (ГУ)
8. Committee of State Security (KGB) — Комитет Государственной Безопасности (КГБ)
9. surveillance — наблюдение, слежка
10. immediate predecessor — непосредственный предшественник
11. Federal Counterintelligence Service (FSK) — Федеральная Служба Контрразведки (ФСК)
12. Border Guard Service — Пограничная Служба
13. Federal Agency of Government Communication and Information (FAPSI) — Федеральное Агентство Правительственной Связи и Информации (ФАПСИ)
14. State Guards (FSO) — Федеральная Служба Охраны
15. enhanced need — повышенная потребность

16. infighting — внутренняя борьба
17. overlapping — пересекающиеся
18. nonproliferation sphere — нераспространение
19. below the nationwide level — ниже общенационального уровня

### 1. Read the text.

The intelligence agencies of Russia unofficially often referred to as Special services include:

- **Federal Security Service (FSB)**, an agency responsible for **counter-intelligence** and other aspects of state security as well as intelligence-gathering in some countries, primarily those of the CIS; reports directly to the president of Russia.
- **Foreign Intelligence Service (SVR)**, an agency concerned with collection of intelligence outside **the Commonwealth of Independent States**, reports directly to the president of Russia.
- **Main Intelligence Directorate (GRU)**, since 2010 officially the **Main Directorate of the General Staff of the Russian Armed Forces (GU)**, an intelligence service of the Russian Armed Forces.

The Federal Security Service of the Russian Federation (FSB) is the principal security agency of Russia and the main successor agency to the USSR's **Committee of State Security (KGB)**. Its main responsibilities are within the country and include counter-intelligence, internal and border security, counter-terrorism, and **surveillance** as well as investigating some other types of grave crimes and federal law violations. It is headquartered in Lubyanka Square, Moscow. According to the 1995 Federal Law "On the Federal Security Service", the managing of the FSB is executed by the president of Russia, who appoints its Director.

The **immediate predecessor** of the FSB was the **Federal Counterintelligence Service (FSK)** of Russia, itself a successor to the KGB. In 2003, the FSB's responsibilities were widened by incorporating the previously independent **Border Guard Service** and a major part of the abolished **Federal Agency of Government Communication and Information (FAPSI)**. The three major structural successor components of the former KGB that remain administratively independent of the FSB are the Foreign Intelligence Service (SVR), the **State Guards (FSO)**, and the Main Directorate of Special Programs of the President of the Russian Federation.

Under Russian federal law, the FSB is a military service but its commissioned officers do not usually wear military uniforms.

The FSB is mainly responsible for the internal security of the Russian state, counterintelligence, and the fight against organized crime, terrorism, and drug smuggling. However, the FSB's FAPSI conducts electronic surveillance abroad.

Under Article 32 of the Federal Constitutional Law “On the Government of the Russian Federation”, the FSB reports directly to the Russian president, its Director is a permanent member of the Security Council of Russia presided over by the president and chairman of the National Anti-terrorism Committee of Russia.

Internal structure of the agency was last reformed by a presidential decree signed on 17 June 2000. In the resulting structure, the FSB was to have a director, a first deputy director and 9 other deputy directors, including one possible state secretary and the chiefs of 6 departments.

In 2003, the agency’s responsibilities were considerably widened. The Border Guard Service of Russia, with its staff of 210,000, was integrated to the FSB via a decree signed on 11 March 2003. In addition, The Federal Agency of Government Communication and Information (FAPSI) was abolished and the FSB was granted a major part of its functions, while other parts went to the Ministry of Defense.

Among the reasons for this strengthening of the FSB were **enhanced need** for security after increased terror attacks against Russian civilians, the need to end the permanent **infighting** between the FSB, FAPSI and the Border Guards due to their **overlapping** functions and the need for more efficient response to migration, drug trafficking and illegal arms trading.

On 28 June 2004 in a speech to high-ranking FSB officers, Putin emphasized three major tasks of the agency: neutralizing foreign espionage, safeguarding economic and financial security of the country and combating organized crime.

By 2008 it had the following 9 divisions:

1. Counter-Espionage
2. Service for Defense of Constitutional Order and Fight against Terrorism
3. Border Service
4. Economic Security Service
5. Current Information and International Links
6. Organizational and Personnel Service
7. Monitoring Department
8. Scientific and Technical Service
9. Organizational Security Service

The FSB is engaged in the development of Russia’s export control strategy. Its primary role in the **nonproliferation sphere** is to collect information to prevent the illegal export of the controlled nuclear technology and materials.

**Below the nationwide level**, the FSB has regional offices in the federal subjects of Russia. It also has administrations in the armed forces and other military institutions. Sub-departments exist for areas such as aviation, special training centers, forensic expertise, military medicine, etc.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. Are the main responsibilities of the FSB within or outside the country? What do they include?
2. Who appoints the FSB Director?
3. What organization was the immediate predecessor of the FSB?
4. What agencies did the FSB comprise in 2003?
5. Do FSB officers usually wear uniform?
6. What is the FSB mainly responsible for?
7. When was the Border Guard Service of Russia integrated into FSB?
8. What were the reasons for strengthening the FSB in 2003?
9. What are the three major tasks of the agency according to V. Putin?
10. What are current FSB divisions?
11. What is the FSB's primary role in the nonproliferation sphere?
12. What are the FSB sub-departments responsible for?

**3. Match the names of main FSB departments with their Russian equivalents.**

1. Counterintelligence Service	a) Служба Экономической Безопасности
2. Information Security Center	b) Аппарат Национального антитеррористического комитета (НАК)
3. Internal Security Directorate	c) Служба по защите конституционного строя и борьбе с терроризмом (2-я служба)
4. Special Purpose Forces	d) Служба оперативной информации и международных связей (СОИМС)
5. Scientific and Engineering Service	e) Служба контрразведки
6. Department for Activity Provision	f) Управление собственной безопасности (УСБ)
7. Organizational and Personnel Service	g) Пограничная Служба
8. Investigation Directorate	h) Научно-техническая Служба
9. Service for Protection of the Constitutional System and the Fight against Terrorism	i) Управление военной контрразведки
10. Economic Security Service	j) Организационно-кадровая служба



11. Border Guard Service	к) Контрольная служба
12. Military Counterintelligence Directorate	л) Центр информационной безопасности (ЦИБ)
13. Directorate for the registration and archives	м) Центр Специального Назначения
14. The apparatus of the National Antiterrorist Committee	н) Служба обеспечения деятельности (СОД)
15. Operational Information and International Relations Service	о) Следственное управление (СУ)
16. Control Service	р) Управление регистрации и архивных фондов (УРАФ)

#### 4. Translate from English into Russian in writing.

Alexander Nikitin is a Russian former submarine officer and nuclear safety inspector turned environmentalist. In 1996 he was accused of espionage for revealing the perils of decaying nuclear submarines, and in 2000 he became the first Russian to be completely acquitted of a charge of treason in the Soviet or post-Soviet era. Nikitin, who worked with the Bellona Foundation, was accused of espionage. He published material exposing hazards posed by the Russian Navy's nuclear fleet. He was acquitted after spending several years in prison (his case was sent for re-investigation 13 times while he remained in prison).

#### 5. Translate from Russian into English.

Телефон доверия (helpline) ФСБ России является средством прямой связи граждан с органами федеральной службы безопасности, используемым для сообщения информации (в том числе анонимно):

о подготавливаемых, совершаемых или совершенных противоправных деяниях, дознание и предварительное следствие по которым отнесены законодательством Российской Федерации к ведению органов федеральной службы, о лицах, их подготавливающих, совершающих или совершивших;

о событиях или действиях, создающих угрозу национальной безопасности, а также по другим вопросам, рассмотрение которых отнесено к компетенции органов федеральной службы безопасности.

Для ФСБ России важна любая информация, которая поможет выявить и пресечь деятельность иностранных спецслужб, предотвратить террористические акты, выявить преступления коррупционной направленности, обеспечить безопасность государства и его граждан.

**6. Make a presentation on one of the following topics.**

1. The origin of the FSB
2. The FSB evolution through ages
3. Tasks and purposes of the FSB

For more information see Appendix II, Texts 2 and 3.

## **Unit 2. The Foreign Intelligence Service of the Russian Federation (SVR)**

### **Lead-in**

1. What is the work of SVR?
2. What do you know about Zaslou (formerly Vypel) special operation group?

### **Vocabulary**

1. First Chief Directorate of the KGB — Первое Главное Управление КГБ
2. analysis and dissemination of intelligence — анализ и доклад разведывательной информации
3. Foreign Department (INO) — Иностраный Отдел (ИНО)
4. State Political Directorate (GPU) — Главное Политическое Управление
5. defector — перебежчик
6. emigre/ émigré — эмигрант
7. The Law on Foreign Intelligence — Закон о внешней разведке
8. to conduct intelligence — осуществлять разведку
9. to stipulate — обуславливать, предусматривать
10. overseas — за рубежом
11. electronic surveillance — наблюдение с помощью электроники
12. Directorate S Operations Department — Оперативный Отдел Управления «С» (Нелегальная разведка)
13. Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) — Центральное Разведывательное Управление (ЦРУ)

### **1. Read the text.**

The Foreign Intelligence Service of the Russian Federation is Russia's external intelligence agency, mainly for civilian affairs. The SVR succeeded the **First Chief Directorate (PGU) of the KGB** in December 1991.

Unlike the Russian Federal Security Service (FSB), the SVR is tasked with intelligence and espionage activities outside the Russian Federation. It works together with the Russian Main Intelligence Directorate (GRU). The SVR is also authorized to negotiate anti-terrorist cooperation and intel-

ligence-sharing arrangements with foreign intelligence agencies and provides **analysis and dissemination of intelligence** to the Russian president. Any information pertaining to specific identities of staff employees (officers) of the SVR is legally classified as state secret and from September 2018, same applies to non-staff personnel, i.e. informers and recruited agents.

The SVR is the official foreign-operations successor to many prior Soviet-era foreign intelligence agencies, ranging from the original “foreign department” of the Cheka under Vladimir Lenin, to the OGPU and NKVD of the Stalinist era, followed by the First Chief Directorate of the KGB.

Officially, the SVR dates its own beginnings to the founding of the Special Section of the Cheka on 20 December 1920. The head of the Cheka, Felix Dzerzhinsky, created the **Foreign Department (INO)** to improve the collection as well as the dissemination of foreign intelligence. On 6 February 1922, the Foreign Department of the Cheka became part of a renamed organization, the **State Political Directorate**, or GPU. The Foreign Department was placed in charge of intelligence activities overseas, including collection of important intelligence from foreign countries and the liquidation of **defectors, emigres**, and other assorted “enemies of the people”.

**The Law on Foreign Intelligence** was written by the SVR leadership itself and adopted in August 1992. This law provided conditions for “penetration by checkists of all levels of the government and economy”, since it **stipulated** that “career personnel may occupy positions in ministries, departments, establishments, enterprises and organizations in accordance with the requirements of this law without compromising their association with foreign intelligence agencies”.

A new Law on Foreign Intelligence was passed by the State Duma and the Federation Council in late 1995 and signed into effect by the then-President Boris Yeltsin on 10 January 1996. The law authorizes the SVR to carry out the following:

1. **Conduct intelligence;**
2. Implement active measures to ensure Russia’s security;
3. Conduct military, strategic, economic, scientific and technological espionage;
4. Protect employees of Russian institutions overseas and their families;
5. Provide personal security for Russian government officials and their families;
6. Conduct joint operations with foreign security services;
7. Conduct electronic surveillance in foreign countries.

The President of the Russian Federation can personally issue any secret orders to the SVR without consulting the houses of the Federal Assembly: the State Duma and the Federation Council. The SVR Director is a permanent member of the Security Council of Russia and the Defense Council.

Within the **Directorate S Operations Department**, there is the elite Special Operations Group (Spetsnaz) called Zaslou, formerly Vympel.

The SVR sends to the Russian president daily intelligence digests, similar to the President's Daily Brief produced by the United States **Central Intelligence Agency**. However, unlike in the US, the SVR recommends to the president which policy options are preferable.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What kind of organ is the Foreign Intelligence Service of the Russian Federation?
2. What directorate did the SVR succeed in 1991?
3. What is the SVR tasked with?
4. What is the origin of the SVR?
5. When was the Law on Foreign Intelligence adopted?
6. What were its main objectives?
7. What are the powers of the SVR under the Law on Foreign Intelligence of 1996?

## 3. Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. The SVR succeeded the First Chief Directorate (PGU) of the KGB in 1985.
2. The SVR is tasked with intelligence and espionage activities within the Russian Federation borders.
3. The SVR is also authorized to negotiate anti-terrorist cooperation and intelligence-sharing arrangements with foreign intelligence agencies.
4. NKVD was an intelligence agency headed by Vladimir Lenin.
5. The SVR dates its own beginnings to the founding of the Special Section of the Cheka on 20 December 1920.
6. The Law on Foreign Intelligence was written by the SVR leadership.
7. The President of the Russian Federation can't personally issue any secret orders to the SVR without consulting the houses of the Federal Assembly.
8. The elite Special Operations Group (Spetsnaz) is called Typhoon.

## 4. Match English word combinations from the text with their Russian equivalents.

1. Foreign Intelligence Service	a) враги народа
2. civilian affairs	b) закон был подписан
3. intelligence and espionage activities	c) постоянный член Совета Федерации

4. to negotiate anti-terrorist cooperation	d) осуществлять разведку
5. intelligence-sharing arrangements	e) Совет безопасности
6. dissemination of intelligence	f) заниматься шпионажем
7. state secret	g) обеспечивать личную безопасность
8. informer	h) совместная операция
9. collection of important intelligence from foreign countries	i) электронная разведка
10. liquidation of defectors	j) издавать секретные указы
11. enemies of the people	k) Служба внешней разведки
12. the law was signed into effect	l) спецназ
13. to conduct intelligence	m) предпочтительный
14. to conduct espionage	n) вопросы, связанные с гражданским населением
15. to provide personal security	o) разведывательная и шпионская деятельность
16. joint operation	p) обсуждать совместную борьбу против терроризма
17. electronic surveillance	q) механизмы (способы) обмена разведывательными данными
18. to issue secret orders	r) доклад разведанных
19. permanent member of the Security Council	s) государственная тайна
20. Defense Council	t) информатор
21. Special Operations Group	u) сбор важных разведанных за рубежом
22. preferable	v) ликвидация перебежчиков

### 5. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Служба внешней разведки Российской Федерации является Федеральной службой, органом исполнительной власти России, руководство деятельностью которого осуществляет не Председатель Правительства Российской Федерации, а непосредственно Президент Российской Федерации.

2. СВР является составной частью сил обеспечения безопасности и призвана защищать безопасность личности, общества и государства от внешних угроз.

3. Академия внешней разведки — это высшее специальное учебное заведение, осуществляющее подготовку и повышение квалификации офицеров СВР России и других специальных служб, научно-педагогических кадров, ведущее научно-исследовательскую и методическую работу по профильной тематике.

4. Полномочия СВР России определены статьей 6 Федерального закона «О внешней разведке».

5. На Веб-сайте СВР утверждается, что профессия разведчика — одна из древнейших на Земле, и даже в Библии и Коране можно найти немало упоминаний о различного рода тайных операциях, проводившихся со специальной целью.

6. Разведывательная информация предоставляется Президенту Российской Федерации, палатам Федерального Собрания, Правительству Российской Федерации и определяемым Президентом РФ федеральным органам исполнительной и судебной власти, предприятиям, учреждениям и организациям.

7. Сведения о лицах, оказывающих конфиденциальное содействие СВР, составляют государственную тайну. Они не подлежат рассекречиванию (declassification) в связи с истечением максимально допустимого срока засекречивания сведений (classifying information), составляющих государственную тайну.

**6. Translate the list of the SVR structural units. What do you think each of them does?**

**Перечень структурных подразделений СВР России:**

- Аппарат Директора
- Протокольный отдел
- Академия СВР (АВР)
- Бюро по связям с общественностью и СМИ (Пресс-бюро)
- Оперативные отделы
- Управление анализа и информации
- Управление внешней контрразведки
- Управление информатики
- Управление НТР
- Управление опертехники
- Управление экономической разведки
- Служба эксплуатации и обеспечения

## Unit 3. The Main Intelligence Directorate (GRU)

### Lead-in

1. What is the activity line of the GRU?
2. What satellite imagery capabilities do you consider the most impressive?

### Vocabulary

1. Chief of the General Staff — начальник генерального штаба
2. Expedition for Secret Affairs — Экспедиция секретных дел
3. Predecessor — предшественник
4. SIGINT (signals intelligence) — радиоэлектронная разведка
5. Soviet-bloc countries — страны Восточного блока (просоветских стран Центральной и Восточной Европы во главе с СССР)
6. Great Purge — великая чистка, большой террор
7. military attache — военный атташе
8. imagery reconnaissance (IMINT) — видовая разведка (сбор разведывательной информации на основе анализа большого количества изображений, полученных фотографической, оптико-электронной или радиолокационной аппаратурой)
9. satellite imagery capabilities — возможности спутниковых снимков

### 1. Read the text.

The Main Directorate of the General Staff of the Armed Forces of the Russian Federation, abbreviated G. U., formerly the Main Intelligence Directorate and still commonly known by its previous abbreviation GRU, is the foreign military intelligence agency. Unlike Russia's other security and intelligence agencies, such as the SVR, the FSB, and the FSO, whose heads report directly to the president of Russia, Director of the GRU is subordinate to the Russian military command, i.e. the minister of Defense and the **Chief of the General Staff**. Until 2010, the GRU combined a military intelligence service and special forces. The Directorate is reputedly Russia's largest foreign intelligence agency.

The first Russian body for military intelligence was established in 1810 by the War minister Michael Andreas Barclay de Tolly who suggested creating a permanent body for the Strategic military intelligence. In January 1810, the **Expedition for Secret Affairs** under the War Ministry was formed. Two years later it was renamed into Special Bureau. Over the past centuries the Directorate has been renamed and reorganized many times.

Its first **predecessor** in Soviet Russia was created on October 21, 1918 under the sponsorship of Leon Trotsky, who was then the civilian leader of the Red Army. The GRU was given the task of handling all military intelligence,

particularly collecting intelligence of military or political significance from sources outside the Soviet Union. These are still its responsibilities. The GRU operated residencies all over the world, along with the **SIGINT (signals intelligence)** station in Lourdes, Cuba, and throughout the former **Soviet-bloc countries**, especially in Lithuania, Latvia, and Estonia.

The first head of the GRU was Janis Karlovich Berzin, a Latvian Communist and former member of the Cheka, who remained in the post until 28 November 1937, when he was arrested and subsequently liquidated during Joseph Stalin's **Great Purge**.

The GRU has always been an important part of Russia's intelligence services, especially since it was never split up, unlike the KGB. In 2010, the official name of the unit was changed from "GRU" to the "Main Directorate of the Russian General Chief of Staff (GU)" but GRU continued to be commonly used in media.

The GRU gathers human intelligence through **military attaches** and foreign agents. It also maintains significant signals intelligence (SIGINT) and **imagery reconnaissance (IMINT)** and **satellite imagery capabilities**. Soviet GRU Space Intelligence Directorate had put more than 130 SIGINT satellites into orbit. SIGINT network employed about 350,000 specialists.

Special Forces of the Main Directorate include commonly known Spetsnaz GRU formed in 1949 and still operating nowadays.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. How is the Main Directorate of the General Staff of the Armed Forces of the Russian Federation also named?
2. Who is the Director of the GRU subordinate to?
3. Is the GRU Russia's largest foreign intelligence agency?
4. When was it established?
5. What are the main responsibilities of the GRU?
6. Who was the first head of the GRU?
7. When was the Spetsnaz of GRU formed?

## 3. Translate the sentences from Russian into English in writing.

1. В 2011–2015 гг. была проведена реорганизация военной разведки.
2. Одной из главных функций Главного управления является предоставление данных космической, радиоэлектронной и агентурной разведки высшему руководству России.
3. Главное управление использует для поиска секретной информации высокотехнологичные кибер-методы съема данных.
4. Президент России признал успешной и результативной деятельность военной спецслужбы по поиску и сбору оперативной информации о новых и секретных вооружениях и военной технике, разработанной в других государствах.



5. Одна из целей ГРУ — обеспечение условий для успешной реализации политики Российской Федерации в сфере обороны и государственной безопасности.

#### **4. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. The West has accused Russia's military intelligence agency (GRU) of running what it described as a global hacking campaign, targeting institutions from sports anti-doping bodies to a nuclear power company and the chemical weapons watchdog.
2. Russia's military intelligence service is commonly known by the Russian acronym GRU, which stands for the Main Intelligence Directorate. Its name was formally changed in 2010 to the Main Directorate (or just GU) of the general staff, but its old acronym — GRU — is still more widely used.
3. The GRU's main aim is the supply of military intelligence to the Russian president and government. Additional aims include ensuring Russia's military, economic and technological security.
4. The GRU answers directly to the chief of the general staff and the Russian defense minister, each of whom are thought to have access to Russia's portable nuclear briefcase.
5. The GRU is seen as a major Russian cyber player. It plays an increasingly important role in Russia's development of Information Warfare (both defensive and offensive), according to the Western assessment.
6. The GRU also has a considerable special forces unit. They are the elite of the Russian military.
7. "I don't like rankings but the GRU is in the top levels of this business," Onno Eichelsheim, director of the Netherlands Defence Intelligence and Security Service, told Reuters.
8. The United States sanctioned GRU officers for cyber attempts to interfere in the 2016 presidential election. Russia denied meddling in the election.
9. Britain said two GRU officers attempted to murder former GRU double agent Sergei Skripal with Novichok. Russia denied any involvement.
10. The public was given a rare chance to see parts of the GRU's Moscow headquarters when Putin visited it in 2006. He was shown taking part in shooting practice.

#### **5. Role-play**

##### **National Security of the Russian Federation and the role of special services**

Choose a host. Conduct the press conference. Participants of the conference are FSB, SVR and GRU representatives, Russian and foreign jour-

nalists. The press conference is devoted to their activity in providing national security of the Russian Federation.

### Use the following phrases

#### **Introducing and starting a meeting**

I'd like to start by formally welcoming Mr....

OK, if we could start by looking at the first item on the agenda.

Shall we make a start?

I think we're all here, so let's get going.

#### **Closing a point**

So that deals with the question of ...

OK, let's leave it there.

#### **Introducing the next point**

I'm very conscious of time, so I want to move on to the next item on the agenda. Right, so, moving on. The next item is ...

OK, let's move on to the next point. /Shall we go on to look at... now?

#### **Allowing someone to comment**

Mr.../Ms..., perhaps you could give a brief report on this.

Perhaps I could bring in Mr... at this point.

Would you like to add anything?

Can you give us an update on ... ?

#### **Referring to a document**

You'll see that I've highlighted some of the items which concern me most. Now, you've got a detailed report in front of you, which I hope you've all had a chance to look through.

If you could just look at points one and four in particular.

#### **Asking for clarification**

Is that correct?

I wonder if you could just clarify what you mean by ... ?

Could you give me some specific information?/Could you be more specific?

What exactly do you mean by ...?

Can you just run that by me again? Basically what you're saying is ...

So, if I understand you correctly, .../And, correct me if I'm wrong, ...

I just wanted to check .../Did you say ...?

#### **Giving clarification**

I hope everything is now clear.

Exactly / That's right.

Not exactly.  
It's hard to say.

**Responding to clarification**

Many thanks for the information.  
Everything is now clear.

**Expressing appreciation**

I just wanted to thank you for your hard work.  
I'd like to say it's been a pleasure working with you.  
I really appreciate what you've done.  
It was an honor to have you involved.  
You've helped the project go really smoothly.

**Expressing disapproval**

To be honest, I didn't think much of it.  
In fact, I thought it was pretty weak.

**Acknowledging appreciation**

Thank you, that's very kind of you.  
No problem. /My pleasure. /Don't mention it/.

**Closing a meeting**

Unless anyone has any other business ... I think we can bring things to a close.

I think that's all.

To sum up, we've sorted out the problem of ..., we've ...

Can we just recap what we've decided?

Have I missed anything?

Thank you all for your contributions. /Thank you all for coming.

I think it's been a very useful meeting.

## **Chapter V**

# **NATIONAL SECURITY STRATEGY OF THE UK**

## **Unit 1. Major Points of the UK National Security Strategy**

### **Lead-in**

1. What do you know about the UK national security strategy?
2. What are current threats to the UK national security from your point of view?

### **Vocabulary**

1. to bring down the deficit — снизить дефицит
2. it is back in balance — баланс восстановлен
3. to stick to our long-term economic plan — придерживаться нашего плана развития экономики
4. vital — жизненно важный
5. ISIL= ISIS (Islamic State of Iraq and the Levant/ Syria) — ИГИЛ (Исламское государство Ирака и Леванта/Сирии). Последнее «S» в английской аббревиатуре не от Сирии, а от арабского ash-Sham, что и означает «Левант». Левант — общее название стран восточной части Средиземного моря (Сирия, Ливан, Израиль, Иордания, Египет, Турция и др.), в более узком смысле — Сирии, Палестины и Ливана
6. hard-earned by taxpayers — с трудом заработанные налогоплательщиками
7. to meet the NATO target — отвечать задачам НАТО
8. GDP (Gross Domestic Product) — ВВП (Валовый Внутренний Продукт)
9. GNI (Gross National Income) — Валовый Национальный Доход
10. security and intelligence agencies — органы безопасности и спецслужбы
11. engagement is not an optional extra — договоренность не является дополнительным действием
12. arteries of global commerce to remain free flowing — торговые пути остаются открытыми
13. with global reach and global influence — международное распространение и влияние

14. conventional defenses — обычная защита
15. state-based threats — угрозы на уровне государства

**1. Read an abstract from the foreword to the UK National Security Strategy of 2015 by the prime-minister David Cameron. Decide what the UK National Security depends on.**

Our national security depends on our economic security, and vice versa. So the first step in our National Security Strategy to ensure our economy is, and remains, strong. Over the last five years we have taken the difficult decisions needed **to bring down our deficit** and restore our economy to strength. In 2010, the total black hole in the defense budget alone was bigger than the entire defense budget in that year. Now **it is back in balance**. By **sticking to our long-term economic plan**, Britain has become the fastest growing major advanced economy in the world for the last two years. Our renewed economic security means we can afford to invest further in our national security. This is **vital** at a time when the threats to our country are growing. From the rise of **ISIL** and greater instability in the Middle East, to the crisis in Ukraine, the threat of cyber-attacks and the risk of pandemics, the world is more dangerous and uncertain today than five years ago. So, while every government must choose how to spend the money it has available, every penny of which is **hard-earned by taxpayers**, this Government has taken a clear decision to invest in our security and safeguard our prosperity. As a result, the United Kingdom is the only major country in the world today which is simultaneously going **to meet the NATO target** of spending 2% of our **GDP** on defence and the UN target of spending 0.7% of our **GNI** on development, while also increasing investment in our **security and intelligence agencies** and in counter-terrorism.

In ensuring our national security, we will also protect our economic security. As a trading nation with the world's fifth biggest economy, we depend on stability and order in the world. With 5 million British nationals living overseas and our prosperity depending on trade around the world, **engagement is not an optional extra**, it is fundamental to the success of our nation. We need the sea lanes to stay open and the **arteries of global commerce to remain free flowing**. So this document sets out our National Security Strategy for the coming five years, and how we will implement it. It presents a clear vision for a secure and prosperous United Kingdom, **with global reach and global influence**. At its heart is an understanding that we cannot choose between **conventional defenses** against **state-based threats** and the need to counter threats.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What are the vital threats to the UK national security according to David Cameron?
2. How was the defense budget described in 2015?

3. What must the UK government do for the prosperity of Great Britain?
4. Why does the UK need sea lanes?

**3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. to restore the economy to strength
2. total black hole
3. the fastest growing major advanced economy
4. intelligence agencies
5. GNI (Gross National Income)
6. conventional defenses
7. to take difficult decisions

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. снизить дефицит
2. оборонный бюджет
3. придерживаться долгосрочного плана развития экономики
4. риск эпидемии
5. ИГИЛ
6. морские пути
7. по сути

**5. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. The National Security Strategy of the United Kingdom sets out the risks that UK faces and how the government of that day will address such risks.

2. The UK government's first National Security Strategy, "The National Security Strategy of the United Kingdom: Security in an interdependent world", was released by the Cabinet Office in March 2008 under the Labour Party-led Government.

3. The 2008 Paper was updated in 2009, under the heading "Security for the Next Generation".

4. The UK government's second National Security Strategy was published in October 2010 under the Conservative-Liberal Democrat Government. It is titled "A Strong Britain in an Age of Uncertainty". It outlines threats for the United Kingdom, and defences against these threats. It emphasises the risks posed by terrorism, cyberwarfare, international military crises, and natural disasters.

5. The National Security Strategy 2010 was updated in 2011 as the Security Strategy promised an "annual report of progress on implementation". The annual progress report was eventually published in December 2011 and it focused on the Government implementation of the The Strategic Defence and Security Review.

6. However, the Joint Committee criticised the 2011 Update for being “almost unrelentingly positive”. It noted that the report contained no details on areas where there have been delays or problems, even where there has been very high profile, and that it contained no lessons learned, not even those already set out in other government papers.

7. In December 2012 the British Government published the 2012 update titled Annual report on the National Security Strategy and Strategic Defence and Security Review. The 2012 Update was over twice as long as the 2011 version and covered a much wider range of topics than the 2011 report.

8. The Joint Committee on the National Security Strategy published a press release in which the Chair of the Committee said:

“We welcome this year’s Annual report on the National Security Strategy and Strategic Defence and Security Review which is much broader and more wide-ranging than last year’s report. However, we regret the fact that it is not yet as complete, transparent, and strategic as it could be. We hope the Government will take the opportunity in next year’s report to focus more on the strategic aspects of events; for example, this year’s report ignores the strategic impact of the Eurozone crisis. It also glosses over other problems the Government has encountered this year”.

9. The UK presented its third NSS in November 2015 under the Conservative-led government. It combined it with its Strategic Defence and Security Review to form a single policy white paper. It is titled “A Secure and Prosperous United Kingdom”.

**6. Write a short essay on the following topic: “How might the UK policy change after Brexit?”**

## **Unit 2. The UK Priorities in the National Security**

### **Lead-in**

1. Is military power a guarantee of the national security?
2. Does the UK safety and security depend on collaboration with its allies or just on its own efforts?

### **Vocabulary**

1. over the course of this Parliament — в данном составе парламента
2. to tackle terrorism — бороться с терроризмом
3. to meet the priorities — соответствовать приоритетам
4. to harness all the tools of national power — использовать все инструменты государственной власти
5. two additional Typhoon squadrons — две дополнительные эскадрильи “Тайфун”
6. F35 Lightning combat aircraft — истребитель F35 Lightning

7. aircraft carriers — авианосцы
8. to protect nuclear deterrent — защищать политику ядерного сдерживания
9. to hunt down hostile submarines — следить за подводными лодками противника
10. to enhance our maritime search and rescue — совершенствовать наши операции по поиску и спасению на море
11. to deploy rapidly and sustain them in the field — в кратчайшие сроки перебрасывать войска в состоянии боеготовности в район развёртывания
12. expeditionary force — экспедиционные силы
13. to prevent and disrupt plots — предотвращать и раскрывать заговоры
14. Sub-Saharan Africa — Центральная Африка
15. to promote our interests and project our influence overseas — обеспечивать наши интересы и усиливать наше влияние за рубежом
16. refocusing our aid budget to support fragile and broken states and regions — переориентирование нашего вспомогательного бюджета на поддержку ослабленных государств и регионов
17. Britain not only meets our obligations to the poorest — Британия не только выполняет свои обязательства перед беднейшими странами
18. to impinge on our security at home — влиять на нашу внутреннюю безопасность
19. agility of response — быстрота реакции
20. to work hand in glove with our allies — работать в тесном контакте с нашими союзниками
21. to underpin our security — укрепить нашу безопасность
22. to put one's life on the line — рисковать жизнью

**1. Read the text. Identify three measures to meet the priorities outlined by the UK Prime Minister David Cameron.**

So, **over the course of this Parliament** our priorities are to deter state-based threats, **tackle terrorism**, remain a world leader in cyber security and ensure we have the capability to respond rapidly to crises as they emerge.

**To meet these priorities**, we will continue **to harness all the tools of national power** available to us, coordinated through the National Security Council, to deliver a 'full-spectrum approach'.

First, over the last five years we have reconfigured Britain's Armed Forces so they are able to deal with modern and evolving threats. Where necessary, we will be ready to use force. We will ensure that our Armed Forces continue to remain world-leading. We will establish **two additional Typhoon squadrons** and an additional squadron of **F35 Lightning combat aircraft** to operate from our new **aircraft carriers**. We will buy nine new Maritime Patrol Aircraft, based in Scotland, **to protect our nuclear deterrent, hunt down hostile submarines** and **enhance our maritime search and rescue**. We will create two new



Strike Brigades, forces of up to 5,000 personnel fully equipped **to deploy rapidly and sustain themselves in the field**. By 2025, we will have a highly capable **expeditionary force** of around 50,000, up from the 30,000 we committed to in 2010. We will double our investment in our Special Forces' equipment. In the longer term we will also increase the size of the Royal Navy's frigate fleet.

Second, we will do more to ensure our security and intelligence agencies have the resources and information they need to **prevent and disrupt plots** against this country at every stage. So, we will invest an additional £2.5 billion, including employing over 1,900 additional staff and strengthening our network of counter-terrorism experts in the Middle East, North Africa, South Asia and **Sub-Saharan Africa**. We will also increase our investment in counter-terrorism police and more than double our spending on aviation security around the world.

Third, we will use our outstanding Diplomatic Service **to promote our interests and project our influence overseas**. We will use our formidable development budget and our soft power to promote British values and to tackle the causes of the security threats we face, not just their consequences. This includes **refocusing our aid budget to support fragile and broken states and regions** to prevent conflict — and, crucially, to promote the golden thread of conditions that drive prosperity all across the world: the rule of law, good governance and the growth of democracy. These interventions are not just right morally — they are firmly in our national interest. Our substantial aid budget means that **Britain not only meets our obligations to the poorest** in the world but can now respond rapidly and decisively to emerging crises overseas which **impinge on our security at home** — and with this speed and **agility of response** comes greater influence in the world.

Fourth, Britain's safety and security depends not just on our own efforts, but on **working hand in glove with our allies** to deal with the common threats that face us all, from terrorism to climate change. When confronted by danger, we are stronger together. So, we will play our full part in the alliances which **underpin our security** and amplify our national power. We will work with our allies in Europe and around the world — as well as seizing opportunities to reach out to emerging powers.

History teaches us that no government can predict the future. We have no way of knowing precisely what course events will take over the next five years: we must expect the unexpected. But we can make sure that we have the versatility and the means to respond to new risks and threats to our security as they arise.

Our Armed Forces, our police and our security and intelligence agencies **put their lives on the line** every day. Their service is an inspiration to us all and they are the pride of our nation. Through this National Security Strategy and Strategic Defence and Security Review we will back them and use our hard-earned economic strength to support our Armed Forces, and to give those in our police and our security and intelligence agencies who fight terrorism the resources they need to help keep our country safe.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What steps must the UK's government take to ensure national security and Strategic Defense?

2. What forces are described in the text?

3. What is the role of the UK's Diplomatic Service?

4. What does the substantial aid budget mean?

**3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. nuclear deterrent

2. to underpin

3. to deter state-based threats

4. a "full-spectrum approach"

5. to reconfigure armed forces

6. to disrupt plots

7. the rule of law

8. to meet obligations

9. agility of response

10. to seize opportunities

11. to have versatility

12. intelligence agencies

**4. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. Over the last five years the UK has ruined Britain's armed forces.

2. The UK will double its investment in the Special Forces' equipment.

3. In the longer term the UK will also increase the size of the Royal Navy's frigate fleet.

4. The UK will invest an additional £1.5 billion including employing over 1,900 additional staff and strengthening the network of counter-terrorism experts.

5. The substantial aid budget means that Britain only meets the obligations to the poorest in the world.

**5. Match the words to form word combinations from the text. Use them in the sentences of your own.**

1. to protect	a. priorities
2. to face	b. the insurance policy
3. to promote	c. the interests
4. to enhance	d. the approach
5. to meet	e. our security
6. to deliver	f. the maritime search
7. to maintain	g. nuclear deterrent
8. to ensure	h. threats

**6. Match the words from the text with their definitions. Find these word combinations in the text and translate them into Russian.**

1. to deter	a) to come out of smth; to become known
2. to tackle	b) to say or do smth as a reaction to smth that has been said or done
3. to emerge	c) to interrupt smth and prevent it from continuing by creating a problem
4. to enhance	d) to make someone decide not to do smth; to put off
5. to disrupt	e) to improve smth or to make it more attractive or more valuable
6. to respond	f) to attack a person or place, to try to hurt or damage them using physical violence

**7. Provide a short overview of the current National Security Strategy of the UK. Write an essay (not less than 10-15 sentences).**

### Unit 3. Growing Threats to the UK Security

#### Lead-in

1. Do you know who is currently the Prime Minister of the UK?
2. What is the role of the UK National Security Council?

#### Vocabulary

1. an adversary — противник
2. to put in place — задействовать, реализовывать
3. to disrupt — разрушать, подрывать
4. resilience — сопротивляемость
5. hazard — опасность
6. cross-government efforts — межправительственные усилия
7. the Home Office — Министерство внутренних дел
8. Foreign and Commonwealth Office — Министерство иностранных дел и по вопросам Содружества
9. at source — в зародыше
10. a lever — рычаг
11. a constituent part — составная часть

**1. Read one more abstract from the UK National Security Strategy 2015.**

National Security Objective 1 is to protect our people — at home, in our Overseas Territories and abroad, and to protect our territory, economic security, infrastructure and way of life.

In particular, we will invest in our Armed Forces and security and intelligence agencies; deter potential **adversaries**, including with our nuclear deterrent; combat extremism and terrorism at home and overseas; **put in place** tough

and innovative cyber security measures; strengthen our ability to **disrupt** serious and organised crime; and increase our **resilience** against threats and **hazards**.

This is an integrated, **cross-government effort**, at home and overseas. For example, our domestic work is led by the **Home Office**, but also involves a wide range of other government and law enforcement agencies. Our security and intelligence agencies work closely together, and with law enforcement, military, industry and international partners, to protect our national security. Our diplomatic work led by the **Foreign and Commonwealth Office (FCO)** builds effective, long-term partnerships overseas, which enable us better to disrupt threats to the UK and tackle them **at source**.

We will tackle all threats to the UK, our people and our interests. The UK will remain resilient to, and a hostile environment for, those who intend us harm, whether they are state-based or non-state actors such as terrorists and criminals, and we will coordinate all **levers** of national power so that the sum of our efforts is greater than the **constituent parts**.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the first objective of the UK National Security according to the 2015 UK National Security?
2. What investments were planned in the national security context?
3. Why is it considered to be an integrated, cross-government effort?

## 3. Match the adjectives with their synonyms. Use these word combinations in the sentences of your own.

1. global	a. important
2. direct	b. essential
3. prosperous	c. basic
4. remote	d. secure
5. vital	e. universal
6. fundamental	f. distant
7. safe	g. immediate
8. major	h. wealthy

## 4. Fill in the gaps in David Cameron's statement on the Strategic Defense and Security Review (23 November 2015) with the word combinations from the box. Translate the sentences into Russian.

1) Respond rapidly, 2) to defeat the evil of ISIL, 3) carried out the worst terrorist attacks, 4) safeguard our prosperity, 5) sets out a clear vision, 6) to counter threats, 7) to harness all the tools of national power, 8) have been foiled by our security services, 9) to deliver a 'full-spectrum approach'

1. This morning I was in Paris with President Hollande discussing how we can work together ... .

2. It has already taken the lives of British hostages and ... against British people since 7/7 on the beaches of Tunisia to say nothing of the seven terrorist plots right here in Britain that ... over the past year.

3. So while every Government must choose how to spend the money it has available every penny of which is hard-earned by taxpayers this Government has taken a clear decision to invest in our security and ... .

4. So the strategy which I am presenting to the House today ... for a secure and prosperous United Kingdom, with global reach and global influence.

5. At its heart is an understanding that we cannot choose between conventional defenses against state-based threats and the need ... that do not recognize national borders.

6. So over the course of this Parliament our priorities are to deter state-based threats to tackle terrorism to remain a world leader in cyber security and ensure we have the capability ... to crises as they emerge.

7. And to meet these priorities we will continue ... available to us, coordinated through the National Security Council, ... .

### 5. Match English military terms mentioned in the UK National Security Strategy with their Russian equivalents.

1. headquarters	a. судно береговой охраны
2. nuclear deterrent	b. морская авиация
3. ally	c. подводный ракетоносец
4. ballistic missile submarine	d. поиск и спасение на море
5. maritime aircraft	e. штаб-квартира
6. offshore patrol vessel	f. союзник
7. maritime search and rescue	g. ВМС Великобритании
8. Royal Navy	h. противолодочный корабль
9. anti-submarine warfare frigate	i. ядерные средства устрашения

### 6. Complete the table with the correct forms.

Noun	Adjective	Adverb
capability		
		unanimously
willingness		
	comprehensive	
		rapidly
	additional	
security		
	ultimate	
	hostile	
	total	

For more information see Appendix II, Texts 4, 5.

## Unit 4. Authorities Providing National Security in the UK Lead-in

1. What agencies providing the UK national security do you know?
2. What is the role of the Home Office and the Foreign Office?

### Vocabulary

1. the Prime Minister's Office (PMO) — Канцелярия премьер-министра Великобритании
2. the Cabinet Office — Секретариат кабинета министров Великобритании
3. the Ministry of Defense (MoD) — Министерство обороны Великобритании
4. the Chancellor of the Exchequer — министр финансов Великобритании
5. the Department for International Development (DFID) — Министерство международного развития Великобритании

### 1. Read the text.

The UK does not have a formal National Security Council (NSC) but has a network of committees around the Prime Minister and cabinet ministers that serve this function. These committees are serviced by the official staff in the Cabinet Office and Prime Minister's Office.

Given the absence of a written constitution in the United Kingdom, the legal basis for the various institutions and actors involved in national security strategy is precedent, authority from Parliament and civil service codes of conduct. National Security has never been defined in the UK legislation. Instead, indications of an “accepted” definition of national security may be extracted from a variety of published policy and strategy documents, legislation, Parliamentary Committee reports.

The main threats to the country, broadly speaking, are terrorism, espionage, the impact of weak states on global stability, and the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction (WMD). For the UK, the focus of national security is on the integration of prevention and contingency (planning) strategies involving all instruments at the Government's disposal against threats, whether malicious or naturally-occurring, at the national and international levels. Structure of Security decision-making is decentralized among different departments. Of key importance is the role of the Prime Minister (PM) and the **Prime Minister's Office (PMO)**, the **Cabinet Office** (which is responsible for policy coordination, promoting standards, building capacity and managing the Cabinet itself), the **Foreign and Commonwealth Office (FCO)**, the **Ministry of Defense (MoD)**, the **Home Office (HO)** and the **Chancellor of the Exchequer**. The **Department for International Development (DFID)** also plays a role in certain aspects of international security policy.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. Does the UK have a formal National Security Council?
2. What is the legal basis for the various institutions and actors involved in the UK national security strategy?
3. Where may the definition of British national security be found in?
4. What are the main threats to the British national security?
5. What is the focus of National Security for the UK?
6. What are key authorities responsible for the UK national security?

**3. Match the following abbreviations with their Russian equivalents.**

1. PMO	a) Министерство международного развития
2. DFID	b) Министерство внутренних дел
3. WMD	c) Министерство обороны
4. FCO	d) Министерство иностранных дел
5. MoD	e) Канцелярия премьер-министра
6. HO	f) Оружие массового поражения

**4. Render the text in English.**

Совет национальной безопасности Великобритании — орган кабинета министров, которому поручено курирование всех вопросов, связанных с национальной безопасностью, включая координацию разведывательной и оборонной стратегии. Круг полномочий Совета национальной безопасности включает рассмотрение вопросов, касающихся национальной безопасности, внешней политики, обороны, международных отношений и международного развития, энергетической и ресурсной обеспеченности.

Совет национальной безопасности Великобритании был создан 12 мая 2010 года премьер-министром Дэвидом Кэмероном. Предполагалось, что Совет будет координировать ответные действия на угрозы, с которыми сталкивается Великобритания, и объединять на высшем уровне работу соответствующих правительственных структур в сфере национальной безопасности.

**5. Match the types of national security with their definitions.**

1. Political security	a) It is the condition of having stable income or other resources to support a standard of living now and in the foreseeable future.
2. Environmental security	b) It is the protection of information systems from theft or damage to the hardware, the software, and to the information on them, as well as from disruption or misdirection of the services they provide.

3. Military security	c) It concerns a support inventory biotic or abiotic, renewable or expendable, for sustaining life at a heightened level of well-being.
4. Economic security	d) It implies the capability of a nation-state to defend itself, and/or deter military aggression. Alternatively, it implies the capability of a nation-state to enforce its policy choices by use of military force.
5. Cyber-security	e) It is about the stability of the social order. Closely allied to military security and societal security, it specifically addresses threats to sovereignty.
6. Security of energy and natural resources	f) It examines threats posed by environmental events and trends to individuals, communities or nations.

### 6. Role play.

Organize a conference between representatives of British authorities providing national security. Choose a chairperson. During the conference discuss powers and responsibilities of the present bodies.

## Unit 5. British Foreign and Domestic Intelligence Agencies MI6, MI5

### Lead-in

1. What do you know about British special agencies?
2. What film about the UK intelligence agencies impressed you most?

### Secret Intelligence Service (MI6)

### Vocabulary

1. the Secret Intelligence Service (SIS, MI6) — служба внешней разведки Великобритании
2. human intelligence (HUMINT) — разведывательная информация, получаемая от агентов, агентурная разведка
3. the Foreign Secretary — министр иностранных дел
4. the Secret Service Bureau — Разведуправление
5. on a statutory footing — на статутной основе
6. Government Communications Headquarters — Штаб правительственной связи Великобритании
7. controversy — полемика, споры
8. SAS (Special Air Service) — Специальная разведывательно-диверсионная воздушно-десантная служба (входит в структуру армии)



## 1. Read the text.

The **Secret Intelligence Service (SIS)**, commonly known as MI6, is the foreign intelligence service of the government of the United Kingdom, tasked mainly with the covert overseas collection and analysis of **human intelligence (HUMINT)** in support of the UK's national security. SIS is a member of the country's intelligence community and its Chief is accountable to the country's **Foreign Secretary**.

Formed in 1909 as a section of the **Secret Service Bureau** specializing in foreign intelligence, the section experienced dramatic growth during World War I and officially adopted its current name around 1920. The name MI6 (meaning Military Intelligence, Section 6) originated as a flag of convenience during World War II, when SIS was known by many names; it is still commonly used today. The existence of SIS was not officially acknowledged until 1994. That year the Intelligence Services Act 1994 (ISA) was introduced to Parliament, to place the organization **on a statutory footing** for the first time; it provides the legal basis for its operations.

Its first director was Captain Sir Mansfield George Smith-Cumming, who often dropped the Smith in routine communication. He typically signed correspondence with his initial C in green ink. This usage evolved as a code name, and has been adhered to by all subsequent directors of SIS when signing documents to retain anonymity.

The stated priority roles of SIS are counter-terrorism, counter-proliferation, providing intelligence in support of cyber security, and supporting stability overseas to disrupt terrorism and other criminal activities. Unlike its main sister agencies, the Security Service (MI5) and **Government Communications Headquarters (GCHQ)**, SIS works exclusively in foreign intelligence gathering; the ISA allows it to carry out operations only against persons outside the British Islands. Some of SIS's actions since the 2000s have attracted significant **controversy**, such as its alleged acts of torture.

Since 1995, SIS has been headquartered in the SIS Building in London, on the south bank of the River Thames.

## 2. Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. The Secret Intelligence Service (SIS) is commonly known as MI6.
2. SIS is the domestic intelligence service of the government of the United Kingdom.
3. SIS's Chief is accountable to the country's Home Secretary.
4. MI6 was founded in 1945.
5. SIS's first director was Captain Sir Mansfield George Smith-Cumming.
6. SIS works exclusively in foreign intelligence gathering.

7. Intelligence Services Act 1994 allows MI6 to carry out operations only against persons outside the British Islands.
8. The Secret Intelligence Service's headquarters is located in Greenwich.

### 3. Translate the text into English in writing.

Закон «О разведывательных службах» был принят парламентом Великобритании в 1994 г. В нем впервые дано определение разведывательной деятельности как «добывание и распространение информации о деятельности и намерениях иностранцев за пределами Великобритании, а также проведение специальных операций в интересах национальной безопасности».

На протяжении всей истории работа в английской разведке считалась престижной и привлекала к себе выходцев из аристократических и знатных семейств. Обычно персонал разведки набирается из кадров МИД, Вооруженных сил, полиции, десантников SAS, а также из числа выпускников университетов (преимущественно Кембриджского и Оксфордского). Принято считать, что кадровый состав СИС состоит из «джентльменов, которые элегантно нарушают законы и права человека», и авантюристов в духе легендарного Томаса Лоуренса или Сиднея Рейли, которые занимались разведкой еще в начале столетия. Это были профессионалы, относящиеся к редкой категории «независимых оперативников».

### The Security Service (MI 5)

#### Vocabulary

1. the Security Service — служба безопасности
2. Defence Intelligence (DI) — военная разведка
3. the Joint Intelligence Committee — Объединенный комитет разведывательных служб
4. the Home Secretary — министр внутренних дел
5. the Cabinet — кабинет министров
6. at the grade of — в ранге
7. the British Civil Service — Британская государственная служба
8. to liaise — действовать согласованно
9. the Intelligence and Security Committee of Members of Parliament — Комитет членов Парламента по вопросам разведки и безопасности
10. the Interception of Communications Commissioner — Уполномоченный по перехвату коммуникаций
11. the Intelligence Services Commissioner — Уполномоченный по спецслужбам
12. the Official Secrets Act — Закон о государственной тайне

#### 4. Read the text.

**The Security Service**, also MI5 (Military Intelligence, Section 5), is the United Kingdom's domestic counter-intelligence and security agency and is part of its intelligence machinery alongside the Secret Intelligence Service (MI6), Government Communications Headquarters (GCHQ) and **Defence Intelligence (DI)**. MI5 is directed by the **Joint Intelligence Committee (JIC)**, and the service is bound by the Security Service Act 1989. The service is directed to protect British parliamentary democracy and economic interests, and counter terrorism and espionage within the UK.

Together with MI6 Service, the Security Service is derived from the Secret Service Bureau, founded in 1909 and concentrating originally on the activities of the Imperial German government as a joint initiative of the Admiralty and the War Office.

**The Security Service** comes under the authority of the **Home Secretary** within the **Cabinet**. The service is headed by a Director General **at the grade of** a Permanent Secretary of the **British Civil Service** who is directly supported by an internal security organization, secretariat, legal advisory branch and information services branch. The Deputy DG is responsible for the operational activity of the service, being responsible for four branches: international counter-terrorism, National Security Advice Centre (counter proliferation and counter espionage), Irish and domestic counter-terrorism and technical and surveillance operations.

The service is directed by the **Joint Intelligence Committee** for intelligence operational priorities. It **liaises** with SIS, GCHQ, DIS, and a number of other bodies within the British government and industrial base. It is overseen by the **Intelligence and Security Committee of Members of Parliament**, who are directly appointed by the Prime Minister, by the **Interception of Communications Commissioner**, and by the **Intelligence Services Commissioner**. Judicial oversight of the service's conduct is exercised by the Investigatory Powers Tribunal.

Operations of the service are required to be proportionate and compliant with British legislation including the Regulation of Investigatory Powers Act 2000, the Data Protection Act 1998, and various other items of legislation. Information held by the service is exempt from disclosure under section 23 of the Freedom of Information Act 2000.

All employees of the service are bound by the **Official Secrets Act**. In certain circumstances employees can be authorized to carry out activity, which would otherwise be criminal, within the UK.

MI5 was based at Leconfield House (1945–1976) and 140 Gower Street (1976–1994, since demolished) before moving to Thames House in 1994.

**5. Translate the following sentences from the MI5 official web-site into Russian in writing.**

1. MI5 currently employs around 4,000 people. Around 40% of staff are women, just over half are under 40 years old, 8% are from black or ethnic minority backgrounds and 3% have a disability.

2. Staff roles cover a number of areas including investigations, translation, data analysis, technology, surveillance, communications, information management, protective security, administration, building services and catering.

3. MI5's headquarters are at Thames House, a Grade II listed building situated only a few hundred yards from the Houses of Parliament in London. We also have several regional offices and a headquarters in Northern Ireland.

4. MI5 has countered terrorist threats to UK interests, both at home and overseas, since the 1960s and the threat has developed significantly since then.

5. Our techniques and the way we work with other agencies both at home and abroad have to keep pace with the terrorists' capabilities.

6. The threat of espionage (spying) did not end with the collapse of Soviet communism in the early 1990s. Espionage against UK interests still continues and is potentially very damaging.

7. A wide range of hostile actors use cyber to target the UK. They include foreign states, criminals, "hacktivist" groups and terrorists.

8. Foreign states are generally equipped to conduct the most damaging cyber espionage and computer network attacks.

9. WMD encompasses nuclear, biological and chemical weapons. The UK has obligations under a number of international treaties, conventions and export control regimes such as the Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty, the Chemical and Biological Weapons Conventions and the Missile Technology Control Regime. Since 1992, MI5 has played a part in countering this threat.

10. MI5 works within a strict framework of legislation and oversight to ensure our investigative powers are only used where it is necessary and proportionate to do so.

**6. Match the names of the following Intelligence Community Agencies with their Russian equivalents.**

1. JIC	a) Министерство внутренних дел
2. SIS	b) Штаб правительственной связи
3. DIS	c) Министерство обороны
4. SAS	d) Объединенный комитет разведывательных служб
5. MoD	e) Королевские военно-воздушные силы

6. Home Secretariat	f) Специальная разведывательно-диверсионная воздушно-десантная служба
7. GCHQ	g) Служба внешней разведки (MI-6)
8. Royal Air Force	h) Служба военной разведки

**7. Work in groups of four. Study the structure of the UK Joint Intelligence Committee. Choose one subdivision to make a presentation.**



## **Chapter VI**

# **NATIONAL SECURITY STRATEGY OF THE USA**

## **Unit 1. Major Points of the US National Security Strategy**

### **Lead-in**

1. What do you know about the US National Security Strategy?
2. How do you think it differs from that of the RF and the UK?

### **Vocabulary**

1. opportunities for America abound — у Америки много возможностей
2. strong and sustainable leadership — прочные и устойчивые лидирующие позиции
3. to defeat potential adversaries — уничтожить потенциальных противников
4. strengthening an unrivaled alliance system — укрепление совершенной системы альянса союзнических отношений
5. underpinned by our enduring partnership — основанная на нашем долгосрочном партнерстве
6. to stop the progress of Iran's nuclear program and roll it back — прекратить действие Иранской ядерной программы и свернуть ее
7. to spur greater agriculture — развивать сельское хозяйство
8. to take concerted action — предпринимать согласованные действия
9. shortage of challenges — недостаток возможностей
10. affiliated groups — связанные с ними группы
11. to incubate and spawn infectious disease — являться источником и распространять инфекционные заболевания
12. illicit weapons — незаконный оборот оружия
13. to destabilize refugee flows — увеличивать потоки беженцев
14. endemic corruption — повальная коррупция
15. disruptive — подрывной
16. the steadfastness — стойкость

## 1. Read the following abstract from the US National Security Strategy of 2015.

In a young century, **opportunities for America abound**, but risks to our security remain. This new National Security Strategy positions the United States to safeguard our national interests through **strong and sustainable leadership**. It sets out the principles and priorities to guide the use of American power and influence in the world. It advances a model of American leadership rooted in the foundation of America's economic and technological strength and the values of the American people. It redoubles our commitment to allies and partners and welcomes the constructive contributions of responsible rising powers. It signals our resolve and readiness to deter and, if necessary, **defeat potential adversaries**. It affirms America's leadership role within a rules-based international order that works best through empowered citizens, responsible states, and effective regional and international organizations. And it serves as a compass for how this Administration, in partnership with the Congress, will lead the world through a shifting security landscape toward a more durable peace and a new prosperity.

This strategy builds on the progress of the last 6 years, in which our active leadership has helped the world recover from a global economic crisis and respond to an array of emerging challenges. Our progress includes **strengthening an unrivaled alliance system, underpinned by our enduring partnership** with Europe, while investing in nascent multilateral forums like the G-20 and East Asia Summit. We brought most of our troops home after more than a decade of honorable service in two wars while adapting our counterterrorism strategy for an evolving terrorist threat. We led a multinational coalition to support the Afghan government to take responsibility for the security of their country, while supporting Afghanistan's first peaceful, democratic transition of power. The United States led the international response to natural disasters, including the earthquake in Haiti, the earthquake and tsunami in Japan, and the typhoon in the Philippines to save lives, prevent greater damage, and support efforts to rebuild. We led international efforts to stop the proliferation of nuclear weapons, including by building an unprecedented international sanctions regime to hold Iran responsible for failing to meet its international obligations, while pursuing a diplomatic effort that has already **stopped the progress of Iran's nuclear program and rolled it back** in key respects. We are rebalancing toward Asia and the Pacific while seeking new opportunities for partnership and investment in Africa and the Americas, where we **have spurred greater agriculture** and energy-related investments than ever before. And at home and abroad, we **are taking concerted action** to confront the dangers posed by climate change and to strengthen our energy security.

Still, there is no **shortage of challenges** that demand continued American leadership. The potential proliferation of weapons of mass destruction, particularly nuclear weapons, poses a grave risk. Even as we have decimated

al-Qa'ida's core leadership, more diffuse networks of al-Qa'ida, ISIL, and **affiliated groups** threaten U.S. citizens, interests, allies, and partners. Violent extremists exploit upheaval across the Middle East and North Africa. Fragile and conflict-affected states **incubate and spawn infectious disease, illicit weapons** and drug smugglers, and **destabilizing refugee flows**. Too often, failures in governance and **endemic corruption** hold back the potential of rising regions. The danger of **disruptive** cyber-attack is growing, and the risk of another global economic slowdown remains. The international community's ability to respond effectively to these and other risks is helped or hindered by the behaviors of major powers. Where progress has been most profound, it is due to the **steadfastness** of our allies and the cooperation of other emerging powers.

## 2. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.

1. abound	a. распространение ядерного оружия
2. sustainable leadership	b. стихийное бедствие
3. commitment	с. сворачивать (гонку вооружений)
4. adversaries	d. опустошать, истреблять
5. durable peace	e. противостоять угрозам
6. an array of emerging challenges	f. распространенные сети
7. natural disaster	g. эпидемический
8. proliferation of nuclear weapons	h. длительный мир
9. to roll back	i. враги
10. to confront the dangers	j. быть в большом количестве
11. to decimate	к. прочность, устойчивость
12. diffuse networks	l. устойчивое лидерство
13. upheaval	м. ряд (совокупность) возникающих проблем
14. endemic	п. обязательство
15. steadfastness	о. переворот

## 3. Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. This new National Security Strategy positions the United States to ensure their national interest through strong sustainable leadership.

2. It redoubles their commitment to allies and partners and welcomes the constructive contributions of responsible rising powers.

3. Their progress excludes strengthening an unrivaled alliance system, underpinned by our enduring partnership with Europe, while investing in nascent multilateral forums like the G-20 and East Asia Summit.



4. They led national efforts to stop the proliferation of nuclear weapons, including by building an unprecedented international sanctions regime.
5. And at home they are taking concerted action to confront the dangers posed by climate change and strengthen our energy security.

**4. Work in pairs. Ask your partner not less than 3 questions on the following text. Answer your partner's questions.**

### **The US National Security Strategy**

Around the world, there are historic transitions underway that will unfold over decades. This strategy positions America to influence their trajectories, seize the opportunities they create, and manage the risks they present. Five recent transitions, in particular, have significantly changed the security landscape, including since our last strategy in 2010.

First, power among states is more dynamic. The increasing use of the G-20 on global economic matters reflects an evolution in economic power, as does the rise of Asia, Latin America, and Africa. As the balance of economic power changes, so do expectations about influence over international affairs. Shifting power dynamics create both opportunities and risks for cooperation, as some states have been more willing than others to assume responsibilities commensurate with their greater economic capacity.

Second, power is shifting below and beyond the nation-state. Governments once able to operate with few checks and balances are increasingly expected to be more accountable to sub-state and non-state actors — from mayors of mega-cities and leaders in private industry to a more empowered civil society. They are also contending with citizens enabled by technology, youth as a majority in many societies, and a growing global middle class with higher expectations for governance and economic opportunity. While largely positive, these trends can foster violent non-state actors and foment instability — especially in fragile states where governance is weak or has broken down — or invite backlash by authoritarian regimes determined to preserve the power of the state.

Third, the increasing interdependence of the global economy and rapid pace of technological change are linking individuals, groups, and governments in unprecedented ways. This enables and incentivizes new forms of cooperation to establish dynamic security networks, expand international trade and investment, and transform global communications. It also creates shared vulnerabilities, as interconnected systems and sectors are susceptible to the threats of climate change, malicious cyber activity, pandemic diseases, and transnational terrorism and crime.

Fourth, a struggle for power is underway among and within many states of the Middle East and North Africa. This is a generational struggle in the aftermath of the 2003 Iraq war and 2011 Arab uprisings, which

will redefine the region as well as relationships among communities and between citizens and their governments. This process will continue to be combustible, especially in societies where religious extremists take root, or rulers reject democratic reforms, exploit their economies, and crush civil society.

Fifth, the global energy market has changed dramatically. The United States is now the world's largest natural gas and oil producer. Our dependence on foreign oil is at a 20-year low — and declining — and we are leading a new clean energy economy. While production in the Middle East and elsewhere remains vitally important for the global market, increased U. S. production is helping keep markets well-supplied and prices conducive to economic growth. On the other hand, energy security concerns have been exacerbated by European dependence on Russian natural gas and the willingness of Russia to use energy for political ends. At the same time, developing countries now consume more energy than developed ones, which is altering energy flows and changing consumer relationships.

Today's strategic environment is fluid. Just as the United States helped shape the course of events in the last century, so must we influence their trajectory today by evolving the way we exercise American leadership. This strategy outlines priorities based on a realistic assessment of the risks to our enduring national interests and the opportunities for advancing them. This strategy eschews orienting our entire foreign policy around a single threat or region. It establishes instead a diversified and balanced set of priorities appropriate for the world's leading global power with interests in every part of an increasingly interconnected world.

**5. Complete the sentences according to the text.**

1. Five recent transitions, in particular, have significantly changed the security landscape, ...
2. As the balance of economic power changes, ...
3. The increasing interdependence of the global economy and rapid pace of technological change ...
4. In particular, India's potential, China's rise, and Russia's aggression ...
5. A struggle for power is underway ...
6. This strategy eschews orienting our entire ...

**6. Make a plan of the text. Retell the text according to the plan.**

**7. Write an essay on the main aspects of the US National Security Strategy (10–12 sentences).**

For more information see Appendix II, Text 6.

## Unit 2. National Security Council (NSC)

### Lead-in

1. Could you name bodies ensuring national security in the USA?
2. What do you know about internal or external threats to the US national security?

### Vocabulary

1. The US National Security Council (NSC) — Совет Национальной Безопасности США
2. proliferation of WMD — распространение оружия массового поражения
3. to reconcile diplomatic and military commitments and requirements — согласовывать дипломатические и военные обязательства и требования
4. the Secretary of State — Госсекретарь
5. the Secretary of Defense — министр обороны
6. the Secretary of Treasury — министр финансов
7. the National Security Advisor — советник по национальной безопасности
8. the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff — председатель Объединенного комитета начальников штабов
9. on an ad hoc basis — на временной основе
10. homeland security — национальная безопасность
11. three discernible levels — три ярко выраженных уровня
12. the Subcommittee on National Security, Emerging Threats and International Relations — подкомитет по национальной безопасности, угрозам и международным отношениям
13. to replicate — точно копировать
14. to overcome clashes — преодолеть конфликты
15. the Government Accountability Office (GAO) — Счетная палата
16. Directorate of Emergency Preparedness and Response (EP&R) — Управление по обеспечению готовности и мерам реагирования в чрезвычайных ситуациях
17. the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA) — Федеральное агентство по управлению чрезвычайными ситуациями
18. the Strategic National Stockpile — национальный стратегический запас
19. the National Disaster Medical System — федеральная система медицинского обеспечения при стихийных бедствиях
20. Department of Energy's Nuclear Incident Response Team — Отдел реагирования на ядерные инциденты Министерства энергетики

21. Department of Justice's Domestic Emergency Support Team — Департамент внутренних чрезвычайных ситуаций Министерства юстиции

22. the FBI's National Domestic Preparedness office — Отдел национальной внутренней готовности ФБР

23. vibrant 'think tank' community — живой «мозговой центр»

24. to fluctuate — колебаться

25. SSR (Security Sector Reform) — реформа сектора безопасности

26. DoD (Department of Defense) — министерство обороны

**1. Work in 3 groups. Read Parts I, II, III. Each group describes powers and responsibilities of the bodies ensuring national security in the USA.**

**Part I. The US National Security Council (NSC)** was established in 1947 to co-ordinate responses to threats to national security. Today, the main threats include the development and **proliferation of WMD**; the threat to peace from terrorism; the use of missiles against the US; and natural disasters. The NSC co-ordinates national security policy and advises the President, although it does not have an implementation role.

The NSC was created as part of the National Security Act of 1947 as an integral part of the national security decision-making system. Specifically, its role is to manage and co-ordinate foreign and defense policies, and **to reconcile diplomatic and military commitments and requirements**. It is a forum in which new policies are initiated and shaped — it seeks to ensure that the President has adequate information on which to make his decisions and that policies, once decided upon, are implemented. Located in the Office of the President, the NSC is under the chairmanship of the President; its statutory members include the **Secretaries of State, Defense, and the Treasury**, the Vice-President, the Assistant to the President for National Security Affairs (also known as the **National Security Advisor**), the **Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff**, the Director of Central Intelligence, and the Secretaries of State and Defense.

The Secretary of State has primary responsibility for foreign policy and the Secretary of Defense oversees decision-making in relation to US defense policy; the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff acts as military advisor to the Council, while the Director of Central Intelligence is its intelligence advisor. Other individuals — such as the President's Chief of Staff — participate **on an ad hoc basis**. The National Security Advisor plays two roles in the decision-making process: both as the President's adviser on national security matters and as the senior government official responsible for managing senior-level discussions of national security issues. In these tasks, the Advisor is supported by the NSC staff, comprised of civil servants lent out by other agencies, political appointees, and other personnel.

The NSC structure ensures that most issues are regulated at lower levels of the bureaucracy and that only those issues that require Presidential attention on decision-making reach the President himself. Each President has set up his own structure for national security decision-making, which reflec-

ted his own management style and interests. Many Presidents have initially sought to reduce the size of the NSC and the staff. But most concluded that they needed a sizeable NSC staff to coordinate policy.

While the exact role of the NSC has largely depended on the President in office, there are certain features that remain consistent. For instance, the NSC exists to advise the President on the integration of domestic, foreign and military policies relating to national security. It also serves as a forum for discussion for the President, advisers and cabinet officials; and from which to coordinate executive departments and agencies in policy development and implementation. More recently, the NSC has been responsible for restructuring governmental bodies involved in national security, including setting up new **homeland security** structures and reforming the intelligence services.

There are three **discernible levels** at which national security policy is considered within the NSC. First, that of the Principals Committee, the most senior interagency forum; second, the Deputies Committee, which is a senior sub-Cabinet interagency forum which prescribes and reviews the work of interagency groups, while ensuring that NSC issues have been properly analyzed and prepared for discussion; and, finally, policy co-ordination committees which represent a day-to-day forum for interagency co-ordination of national security policy while providing policy analysis for the senior committees.

**Part II. The NSC Subcommittee on National Security, Emerging Threats and International Relations** is one of the most active subcommittees. It focuses on terrorism and has now assumed oversight responsibility for the Department of Homeland Security (DHS). Since then, the structure of the NSC has been **replicated** in the creation of the Homeland Security Council and the White House Office of Homeland Security. Like the NSC, the Office of Homeland Security has three layers (Principals Committee, Deputies Committee, and Policy Coordination Committees with responsibilities for specific areas).

The main difference is that while the NSC has statutory responsibility for co-ordinating national security issues, the Homeland Security Council lacks this. Its role is, therefore, to improve efficiency and information-sharing on this crucial family of national security issues, and to advise the President on those issues. Thus, **to overcome clashes**, the Office of Homeland Security serves, in part, as a mechanism to co-ordinate the activities of the DHS, the DoD and the State Department. As DHS was being stood-up and the various agencies that now comprise it merged under its umbrella, this role was particularly important. The intent was that once DHS was stood up, the Office and Council would retain a crucial role in co-ordinating its work with that of other agencies and in continuing to advise the President.

The US Congress has oversight of national security issues. The Subcommittee on National Security, Emerging Threats and International Relations has now assumed oversight responsibility for the newly-created Department of Homeland Security (DHS). **The Government Accountability Office (GAO)** supports Congress in overseeing federal programs and operations to ensure accountability to the American people.

The Deputy National security advisor is responsible for crisis management on the part of the NSC. Since the establishment of DHS, its **Directorate of Emergency Preparedness and Response (EP&R)** is responsible for overseeing domestic disaster preparedness training and co-ordinating government disaster relief. It is responsible for co-ordinating first-line responders and overseeing the federal government's national response and recovery strategy. To achieve this, DHS is consolidating:

- the **Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)**, which has a long and solid track record of supporting communities after natural disasters and emergency situations;
- the **Strategic National Stockpile** and the **National Disaster Medical System** (of the Department of Health and Human Services);
- the **Department of Energy's Nuclear Incident Response Team**;
- the **Department of Justice's Domestic Emergency Support Teams**; and
- the **FBI's National Domestic Preparedness office** under EP&R authority.

**Part III. Staff members.** The United States enjoys a **vibrant 'think tank' community** comprising thousands of highly trained and experienced professionals (from academia, government, and elsewhere), engaged in discussions on national security issues. While some groups represent particular political leanings, others are independent.

The NSC is stipulated as a statutory body in US legislation and is sanctioned by an Act of Congress. Such legislative safeguards support the NSC role as the advisory body to the President and the co-ordinating body for national security policy as a whole. Nonetheless, it is important to remember that principle NSC staff is appointed by the President — this is not an independent institution.

Staff members are a mix of government personnel (civil service, military, foreign service) with political appointees in the most senior roles. As the NSC staff is comprised differently under various national security advisors, the staff may be selected and run to favor independence, loyalty, or some combination of the two, based on the desire of the President and National Security Advisor at that time. Indeed, the functioning of the NSC changes with each new President and **fluctuates** depending on interpersonal relationships between the President, his principal advisers and department heads.

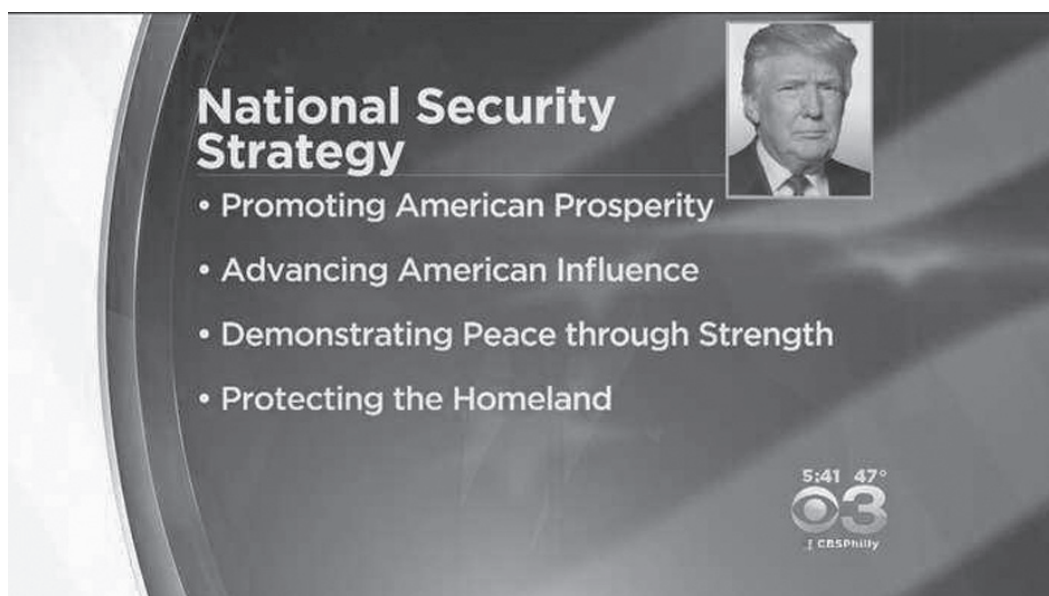
It is worth noting that — over the last few years — many of the previous efforts of various US Government entities have started to come together to formalize the US's role in providing **SSR** and related activities to countries overseas emerging from conflict. This was recently formalized with the establishment of the Office of the Coordinator for Reconstruction and Stabilization in the Department of State. A variety of federal departments and agencies — such as State, **DoD**, the US Agency for International Development (USAID), Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), Department of the Treasury (DoTr), Department of Justice (DoJ), and the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) — will provide personnel with which to staff the office.

2. Title each part of the text.

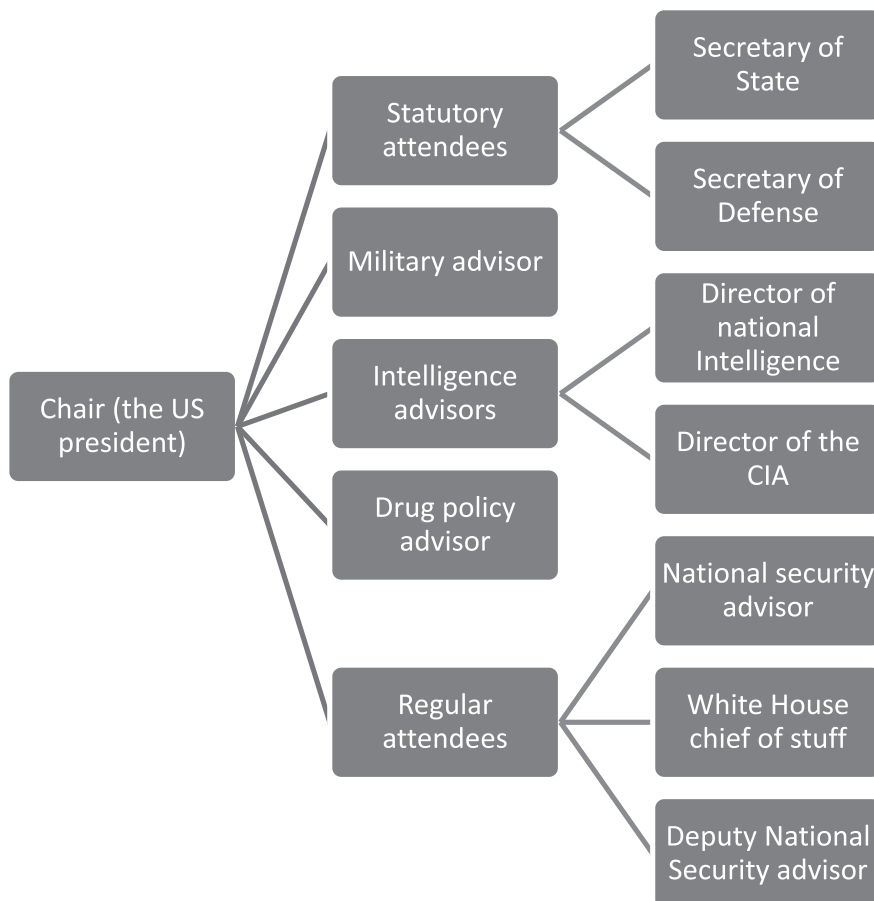
3. Match the names of the US national security agencies with their Russian equivalents.

1. The Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA)	a) Министерство финансов
2. The Department of Homeland Security (DHS)	b) Центральное Разведывательное Управление (ЦРУ)
3. Department of the Treasury (DoTr)	с) Агентство по международному развитию
4. The US National Security Council (NSC)	d) Управление по готовности к чрезвычайным ситуациям и реагированию
5. The US Agency for International Development (USAID)	e) Министерство внутренней безопасности
6. National Security Agency	f) Федеральное агентство по ликвидации чрезвычайных ситуаций США
7. Central Intelligence Agency (CIA)	g) Министерство юстиции
8. Department of Justice (DoJ)	h) Совет Национальной Безопасности США
9. Directorate of Emergency Preparedness and Response (EP&R)	i) Агентство национальной безопасности (АНБ)

4. Comment on the way the US president Trump unveils basic National Security Strategy principles.



### 5. Study the scheme and describe the US National Security Council structure.



### 6. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Совет национальной безопасности США — консультативный орган при президенте США для решения наиболее важных вопросов национальной безопасности и внешней политики, и координации действий всех основных ведомств, связанных с указанными вопросами.

2. Совет национальной безопасности был создан в 1947 году законом о национальной безопасности.

3. Бывший президент США Никсон, внесший ряд изменений в структуру и стиль работы СНБ, отметил в одном из своих внешнеполитических посланий, что главная обязанность этого органа состоит в том, чтобы представлять президенту страны информацию и ее анализ, предлагать и обосновывать свою позицию.

4. В настоящее время постоянными членами СНБ являются: президент, вице-президент, государственный секретарь, министр обороны. Кроме них, в СНБ входят в качестве консультантов директор ЦРУ и директор национальных разведслужб США.

5. Характер и повестка дня заседаний СНБ в значительной мере зависят от международной обстановки и той информации, которую военно-политическое руководство получает от разведывательных органов.



## Unit 3. Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI)

### Lead-in

1. What is the main function of the FBI?
2. What Russian agency corresponds to the FBI?

### Vocabulary

1. the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) — Федеральное Бюро Расследований (ФБР)
2. the U.S. Intelligence Community — Разведывательное сообщество США
3. a field office — оперативный штаб (a field agent — оперативный сотрудник)
4. concurrently — при этом, параллельно
5. Legal Attache (LEGAT) — атташе по правовым вопросам
6. unilateral operations — боевые действия одного рода войск
7. host countries — страна пребывания (войск)
8. major-crime — особо тяжкие преступления
9. the Hostage Rescue Team — отдел по освобождению заложников
10. SWAT (Special Weapons and Tactics Team) — спецназ, СОБР
11. the Computer Analysis and Response Team — отдел по компьютерному анализу и реагированию
12. tribal — племенной, этнический

### 1. Read the text.

**The Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI)** is the domestic intelligence and security service of the United States, and its principal federal law enforcement agency. Operating under the jurisdiction of the United States Department of Justice, the FBI is also a member of the **U.S. Intelligence Community** and reports to both the Attorney General and the Director of National Intelligence. A leading U.S. counter-terrorism, counterintelligence, and criminal investigative organization, the FBI has jurisdiction over violations of more than 200 categories of federal crimes.

Although many of the FBI's functions are unique, its activities in support of national security are comparable to those of the British MI5 and the Russian FSB. Unlike the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), which has no law enforcement authority and is focused on intelligence collection abroad, the FBI is primarily a domestic agency, maintaining 56 **field offices** in major cities throughout the United States, and more than 400 resident agencies in lesser cities and areas across the nation. At an FBI field office, a senior-level FBI officer **concurrently** serves as the representative of the Director of National Intelligence.

Despite its domestic focus, the FBI also maintains a significant international footprint, operating 60 **Legal Attache (LEGAT)** offices and 15 sub-offices in U.S. embassies and consulates across the globe. These foreign offices exist primarily

for the purpose of coordination with foreign security services and do not usually conduct **unilateral operations** in the **host countries**. The FBI can and does at times carry out secret activities overseas, just as the CIA has a limited domestic function; these activities generally require coordination across government agencies.

The FBI was established in 1908 as the Bureau of Investigation, the BOI or BI for short. Its name was changed to the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) in 1935. The FBI headquarters is the J. Edgar Hoover Building, located in Washington, D.C. J. Edgar Hoover, appointed by President Calvin Coolidge in 1924, was by far the longest-serving director, serving until his death in 1972.

There are also special FBI teams. Thus, in 1982, the FBI formed an elite unit to help with problems that might arise at the 1984 Summer Olympics to be held in Los Angeles, particularly terrorism and **major-crime**. This was a result of the 1972 Summer Olympics in Munich, Germany, when terrorists murdered the Israeli athletes. Named the **Hostage Rescue Team**, or HRT, it acts as the FBI lead for a national **SWAT** team in related procedures and all counter-terrorism cases. Also formed in 1984 was the **Computer Analysis and Response Team**, or CART.

eGuardian is the name of an FBI system, launched in January 2009, to share tips about possible terror threats with local police agencies. The program aims to get law enforcement at all levels sharing data quickly about suspicious activity and people. eGuardian enables near real-time sharing and tracking of terror information and suspicious activities with local, state, **tribal**, and federal agencies.

The FBI publishes some reports for both law enforcement personnel as well as regular citizens covering topics including law enforcement, terrorism, cybercrime, white-collar crime, violent crime, and statistics.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the FBI?
2. Is the FBI a member of the U. S. Intelligence Community?
3. What is the FBI jurisdiction?
4. What are the analogues of the FBI in Russia and Great Britain?
5. Is the FBI a domestic agency or is it focused on intelligence collection abroad?
6. When was the FBI established?
7. Where is the FBI headquartered?
8. Who is J. Edgar Hoover?
9. What are special FBI teams?
10. What is eGuardian?
11. What are the FBI reports' topics?

## 3. Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. The FBI is the principal federal law enforcement agency of the USA.
2. The FBI operates under the jurisdiction of the United States Department of Justice.

3. The FBI is a leading U.S. organization only in relation to the counter-terrorism.
4. There are 30 LEGAT offices and 10 sub-offices in U.S. embassies and consulates across the globe.
5. The name of the organization was changed from BOI or BI to the FBI in 1935.
6. J. Edgar Hoover died in 1972.
7. The Computer Analysis and Response Team was formed in 1979.
8. eGuardian aims to get law enforcement at all levels sharing data quickly about suspicious activity and people.

#### 4. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.

1. the U.S. Intelligence Community	a) Министерство юстиции США
2. the United States Department of Justice	b) особо тяжкие преступления
3. field office	c) спецназ
4. major-crime	d) иностранная разведка
5. embassy	e) штаб-квартира
6. headquarters	f) заложник
7. hostage	g) оперативный штаб
8. SWAT	h) Разведывательное сообщество США
9. foreign security services	i) посольство

#### 5. Translate the text from the FBI official web-site into Russian.

On July 26, 2018, the FBI celebrated 110 years of public service. Much has changed since the FBI was established, but many critical attributes remain the same. The Bureau now operates in a digital world where crime not only crosses state lines, but also international borders, in the blink of an eye. Our best traditions have not changed, however—our rigorous adherence to the Constitution and the rule of law, and the guiding principles in our motto of *Fidelity, Bravery, Integrity*.

“Today, we mark a milestone in our history. Every day of every year, the men and women of the FBI come to work to protect the American people and uphold the Constitution—and after 110 years, the FBI is still giving 110 percent,” said FBI Director Christopher Wray. “I want to thank all our employees, past and present, for their dedication to the FBI and our mission. We will continue to do the work the American people expect of us—protecting our country and our citizens from terrorism, espionage, cyber-attacks, and major criminal threats—and we will continue to do it as they deserve, in accordance with our fundamental tenets of fidelity, bravery, and integrity.”

The FBI was established on July 26, 1908, by Attorney General Charles J. Bonaparte with just 34 special agents and was officially named the Federal Bureau of Investigation in 1935. Since then, the FBI has grown to nearly 37,000 employees, including more than 13,500 special agents and more than

22,800 professional staff employees in 56 field offices, more than 400 resident agencies, and 90 legal attaché offices and sub-offices worldwide.

### 6. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Для обеспечения внутренней безопасности ФБР постоянно противодействует различным радикально настроенным организациям и лицам, целью которых является нанесение максимального ущерба стране на национальном и международном уровне, подрыв ее авторитета.

2. Именно в связи с деятельностью по обеспечению национальной безопасности ФБР занимается контрразведкой.

3. Одна из основных сфер деятельности ФБР—это борьба с уголовными преступлениями. Данная функция была передана ФБР, так как американская полиция может расследовать преступления, совершенные только на территории штата. Все преступления, которые совершаются на территории нескольких штатов, относятся к юрисдикции ФБР.

4. Существует ряд преступлений, которые непосредственно относятся к категории федеральных и подлежат передаче ФБР: похищение людей, покушение на президента, покушение на высших должностных лиц США, незаконный оборот наркотиков, использование взрывных устройств.

5. Директор ФБР назначается только президентом США. Сейчас срок его пребывания в данной должности ограничен 10 годами. Этот порядок был введен после смерти Джона Эдгара Гувера, который занимал пост главы ФБР в течение 48 лет подряд.

## Unit 4. Central Intelligence Agency (CIA)

### Lead-in

1. What do you know about the CIA?
2. Who is the current Head of the Central Intelligence Agency?

### Vocabulary

1. the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA) — Центральное Разведывательное Управление (ЦРУ)
2. policymakers — политическое руководство страны
3. to disseminate — распространять, распределять
4. to morph — трансформироваться
5. to dissect — разбирать по частям
6. to dismantle — демонтировать, ликвидировать
7. loosely — в общих чертах
8. a sprawling set of buildings — беспорядочный набор зданий
9. the Intelligence Reform and Terrorism Prevention Act — закон о реформировании разведки и предотвращении терроризма
10. to abolish — отменять, упразднить

11. the emerging trends of an ever-changing global landscape — тенденции, возникающие в постоянно меняющейся картине мира

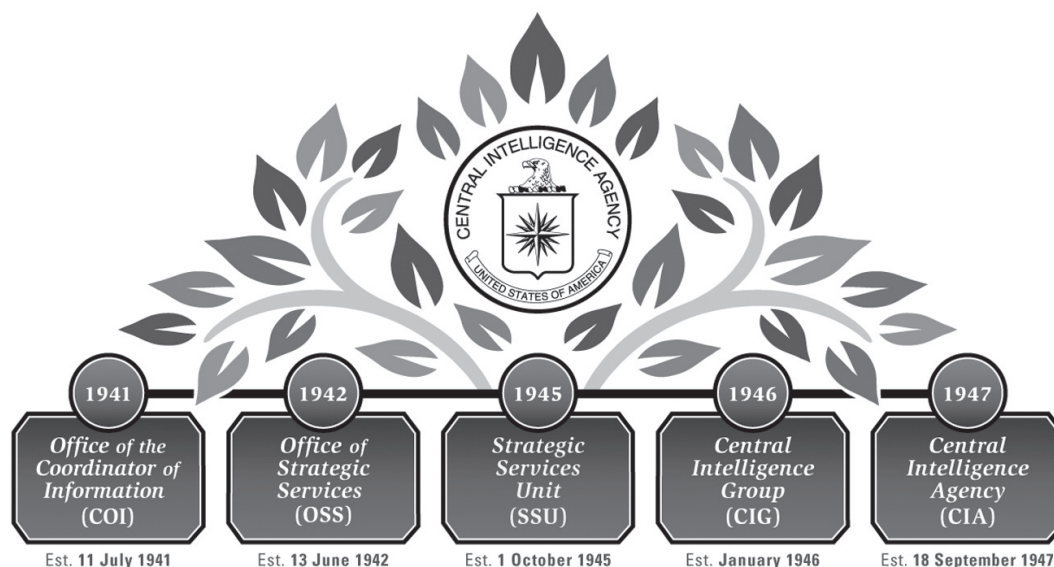
### 1. Read the text.

The CIA is an independent agency responsible for providing national security intelligence to senior US **policymakers**. The Director of the Central Intelligence Agency (D/CIA) is nominated by the president with the advice and consent of the Senate. The Director manages the operations, personnel, and budget of the Central Intelligence Agency.

The CIA is separated into five basic components: the Directorate of Operations, the Directorate of Analysis, the Directorate of Science & Technology, the Directorate of Support, and the Directorate of Digital Innovation. They carry out “the intelligence cycle,” the process of collecting, analyzing, and **disseminating** intelligence information to top US government officials.

In addition, the D/CIA has several staffs that deal with public affairs, human resources, protocol, congressional affairs, legal issues, information management, and internal oversight.

Like all government agencies, the CIA was not created overnight and functioning at full capacity the following morning. In fact, there were various renditions of an intelligence agency for 6 years prior to the formal establishment of the Central Intelligence Agency. At the beginning of World War II America’s first peacetime, non-departmental intelligence organization was created. That organization moved and **morphed** and changed names and ownership, **was dissected** and **dismantled** before President Truman signed the National Security Act of 1947 creating a permanent Central Intelligence Agency.



### CIA's Family Tree

After signing the National Security Act of 1947 by President Truman on July 26, 1947, the CIA officially came into existence on September 18 that same year. Truman appointed the Deputy Director of CIG, Roscoe H.

Hillenkoetter as the first Director of the Central Intelligence Agency. One third of the CIA's personnel were OSS veterans.

The 1947 Act **loosely** defined CIA's mission and while the Act did not alter the functions of CIG, it did add four broad tasks: (1) advise the National Security Council (NSC) on matters related to national security; (2) make recommendations to the NSC regarding the coordination of intelligence activities of the Departments; (3) correlate and evaluate intelligence and provide for its appropriate dissemination and (4) "perform such other functions... as the NSC will from time to time direct...". Two years later, President Truman signed the Central Intelligence Agency Act, which authorized CIA to secretly fund intelligence operations and conduct personnel actions outside of standard US Government procedures.

Originally housed in a **sprawling set of buildings** in the center of Washington, D. C., the CIA's physical presence gave it the advantage of seeming an integral part of, rather than a separate element of, the government.

In late 1961, CIA employees began relocating from a disparate collection of buildings in Washington, DC, to a newly constructed headquarters complex in Langley, Virginia. The Original Headquarters Building (OHB) was the first home designed specifically for Agency officers, and it still serves today as an iconic symbol of CIA and its mission.

On December 17, 2004, President George W. Bush signed the **Intelligence Reform and Terrorism Prevention Act** which restructured the Intelligence Community by **abolishing** the position of Director of Central Intelligence (DCI) and Deputy Director of Central Intelligence (DDCI) and creating the position the Director of the Central Intelligence Agency (D/CIA). The Act also created the position of Director of National Intelligence (DNI), which oversees the Intelligence Community and the National Counterterrorism Center (NCTC).

The CIA has continued to adjust and adapt to the **emerging trends of an ever-changing global landscape**. Like many years ago, today CIA's mission of collecting, analyzing, evaluating, and disseminating foreign intelligence is aimed to assist the President and senior US government policymakers in making decisions relating to national security.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the CIA?
2. Who nominates the Director of the Central Intelligence Agency?
3. What are five basic components of the CIA?
4. What does "to carry out the intelligence cycle" mean?
5. What units compose the CIA's family tree?
6. When did CIA officially come into existence?
7. Who was the first Director of the Central Intelligence Agency?

8. What are four main CIA's tasks?
9. Where is the CIA headquartered since 1961?
10. What was the purpose of the Intelligence Reform and Terrorism Prevention Act?
11. What is the CIA's mission and what is it aimed at?

**3. Read the answers and write questions.**

1. \_\_\_\_\_

The Central Intelligence Agency's primary mission is to collect, evaluate, and disseminate foreign intelligence to assist the president and senior US government policymakers in making decisions relating to the national security. The CIA may also engage in covert action at the president's direction in accordance with applicable law.

2. \_\_\_\_\_

The CIA carefully selects well-qualified people in nearly all fields of study. Scientists, engineers, economists, linguists, mathematicians, secretaries, accountants and computer specialists are but a few of the professionals continually in demand. Much of the Agency's work, like that done in academic institutions, requires research, careful evaluation, and writing of reports that end up on the desks of this nation's policymakers. Applicants are expected to have a college degree with a minimum GPA of 3.0 and must be willing to relocate to the Washington, D. C., area. Selection for Agency employment is highly competitive, and employees must successfully complete a polygraph and medical examination and a background investigation before entering on duty. The Agency endorses equal employment opportunity for all employees.

3. \_\_\_\_\_

The size of the Agency's budget can't, at present, be publicly disclosed. A common misconception is that the Agency has an unlimited budget, which is far from true. While classified, the budget and size of the CIA are known in detail and scrutinized by the appropriate Committees in both houses of Congress. The resources allocated to the CIA are subject to the same rigorous examination and approval process that applies to all other government organizations.

4. \_\_\_\_\_

By law, the CIA is specifically prohibited from collecting foreign intelligence concerning the domestic activities of US citizens. Its mission is to collect information related to foreign intelligence and foreign counterintelligence. By direction of the president in Executive Order 12333 of 1981 and in accordance with procedures approved by the Attorney General, the CIA is restricted in the collection of intelligence information directed against US citizens. Collection is allowed only for an authorized intelligence purpose; for example, if there

is a reason to believe that an individual is involved in espionage or international terrorist activities. The CIA's procedures require senior approval for any such collection that is allowed, and, depending on the collection technique employed, the sanction of the Director of National Intelligence and Attorney General may be required. These restrictions on the CIA have been in effect since the 1970s.

5.

Only the president can direct the CIA to undertake a covert action. Such actions usually are recommended by the National Security Council (NSC). Covert actions are considered when the NSC judges that US foreign policy objectives may not be fully realized by normal diplomatic means and when military action is deemed to be too extreme an option. Therefore, the Agency may be directed to conduct a special activity abroad in support of foreign policy where the role of the US government is neither apparent nor publicly acknowledged. Once tasked, the intelligence oversight committees of the Congress must be notified.

#### **4. Translate the “Contact CIA” call into Russian.**

The United States and its partners continue to face a growing number of global threats and challenges. The CIA's mission includes collecting and analyzing information about high priority national security issues such as international terrorism, the proliferation of weapons of mass destruction, cyber-attacks, international organized crime and narcotics trafficking, regional conflicts, counterintelligence threats, and the effects of environmental and natural disasters.

These challenges are international in scope and are priorities for the Central Intelligence Agency. If you have information about these or other national security challenges, please provide it through our secure online form. The information you provide will be protected and confidential. The CIA is particularly interested in information about imminent or planned terrorist attacks. In cases where an imminent threat exists, immediately contact your local law enforcement agencies and provide them with the threat information.

#### **5. Render the text into English.**

Центральное Разведывательное Управление США было образовано в 1947 году после принятия закона «О национальной безопасности», подписанного президентом Трумэном.

В связи с принятием закона «О реформах в разведке и предотвращении терроризма» в 2004 году были внесены поправки в закон «О национальной безопасности».

ЦРУ занимается исследованиями, разработками, а также внедрением предельно эффективных технологий для разведцелей. Будучи автономным ведомством, ЦРУ является независимым аналитическим источником по вопросам, которые вызывают максимальную обеспокоенность. ЦРУ США в тесном сотрудничестве с иными структурами Разведсообщества



предоставляют самые точные разведанные для американского правительства.

## 6. Role- play.

**Conduct an international forum to talk about the bodies providing national security in the RF, the UK and the USA.**

Divide your group into 2 teams: journalists and intelligence officers.

Delegations from the RF, the UK and the US take part in the forum.

Representatives of the delegations speak about main ways of ensuring national security in their countries. They also answer journalists' questions. As a result, a final communiqué shall be worked out. It must contain the main ways of ensuring international security. The chairperson conducts the forum.

**Communiqué** is an official announcement about a usually very important piece of news. It is also called an official press-release. When organizations, governments or committees want to publicize their decisions, they publish or release official announcement. Similarly, two or more organizations or governments publish their decisions or special bi-lateral or joint statements in the form of communiqué.

Communique usually consists of 3 components. They are introduction, body and signature.

The introductory part of a communique involves the information about the organization or authorities who publish it, the purpose of the communique and the time.

The main part (body) contains the decisions made and date of their entry into force.

Signature of the communique is done for the authority and formality of the document. It is placed at the bottom of it. The authority or authorities should put the signatures to ensure formality and validity of the communique.

## Unit 5. National Security Agency (NSA)

### Lead-in

1. What do you know about the NSA?
2. Have you ever been followed on the street or traced via your mobile phone?

### Vocabulary

1. the National Security Agency (NSA) — Агентство национальной безопасности США (АНБ)
2. clandestine — тайный, секретный
3. to bug electronic systems — исказить электронные системы
4. attack software — атакующее программное обеспечение
5. Special Collection Service — специальная служба сбора данных
6. eavesdropping device — подслушивающее устройство

7. wiretapping — прослушивание телефонных разговоров
8. the Defense Intelligence Agency — Разведывательное управление министерства обороны США
9. the Central Security Service — Центральная служба безопасности
10. cryptanalysis components — компоненты криптоанализа
11. to ensure streamlined communication — обеспечивать бесперебойную связь
12. political controversy — политический спор
13. to reveal to the public — представить общественности
14. to intercept — перехватывать (сообщение)
15. cellphones metadata — метаданные с сотовых телефонов
16. boomerang routing — маршрутизация по принципу бумеранга

### 1. Read the text.

The National Security Agency (NSA) is a national-level intelligence agency of the United States Department of Defense, under the authority of the Director of National Intelligence. The NSA is responsible for global monitoring, collection, and processing of information and data for foreign intelligence and counterintelligence purposes, specializing in a discipline known as signals intelligence (SIGINT). The NSA is also tasked with the protection of U. S. communications networks and information systems. The NSA relies on a variety of measures to accomplish its mission, the majority of which are **clandestine**.

Originating as a unit to decipher coded communications in World War II, it was officially formed as the NSA by President Harry S. Truman in 1952. Since then, it has become the largest of the U. S. intelligence organizations in terms of personnel and budget.

The NSA currently conducts worldwide mass data collection and has been known to physically **bug electronic systems** as one method to this end. The NSA has also been alleged to have been behind such **attack software** as Stuxnet, which severely damaged Iran’s nuclear program. The NSA, alongside the Central Intelligence Agency (CIA), maintains a physical presence in many countries across the globe; the CIA/NSA joint **Special Collection Service** (a highly classified intelligence team) inserts **eavesdropping devices** in high value targets (such as Presidential palaces or embassies). SCS collection tactics allegedly encompass “close surveillance, burglary, **wiretapping**, [and] breaking and entering”.

Unlike the CIA and the **Defense Intelligence Agency** (DIA), both of which specialize primarily in foreign human espionage, the NSA does not publicly conduct human-source intelligence gathering. The NSA is entrusted with providing assistance to, and the coordination of, SIGINT elements for other government organizations — which are prevented by law from engaging in such activities on their own.

As part of these responsibilities, the agency has a co-located organization called the **Central Security Service (CSS)**, which facilitates cooperation between the NSA and other U. S. defense **cryptanalysis components**. To further **ensure streamlined communication** between the signals intelligence community divisions, the NSA Director simultaneously serves as the Commander of the United States Cyber Command and as Chief of the Central Security Service.

The NSA's actions have been a matter of **political controversy** on several occasions, including its spying on anti-Vietnam-war leaders and the agency's participation in economic espionage. In 2013, the NSA had many of its secret surveillance programs **revealed to the public** by Edward Snowden, a former NSA contractor. According to the leaked documents, the NSA **intercepts** and stores the communications of over a billion people worldwide, including United States citizens. The documents also revealed the NSA tracks hundreds of millions of people's movements using **cellphones metadata**. Internationally, research has pointed to the NSA's ability to surveil the domestic Internet traffic of foreign countries through "**boomerang routing**".

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What is NSA?
2. What is NSA responsible for?
3. When and by whom was it officially formed?
4. In what terms is NSA the largest U. S. intelligence organization?
5. What is Stuxnet?
6. How is the joint CIA/NSA service called?
7. How does the NSA differ from the CIA and the DIA?
8. Why have the NSA's actions been a matter of political controversy?
9. What is "boomerang routing" used for?

## 3. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.

1. разведывательное управление национального уровня
2. Министерство обороны США
3. внешняя разведка
4. секретный
5. радиоэлектронная разведка
6. способствовать сотрудничеству
7. компоненты криптоанализа
8. отделы радиотехнического разведывательного сообщества
9. киберкомандование
10. политический спор
11. экономический шпионаж
12. программы тайного наблюдения
13. просочившиеся документы

- 14. отслеживать движения
- 15. способность контролировать внутренний интернет-трафик
- 16. зарубежные страны

#### 4. Read the answers and write questions.

1. \_\_\_\_\_

SIGINT involves collecting foreign intelligence from communications and information systems and providing it to customers across the U. S. government, such as senior civilian and military officials. They then use the information to help protect our troops, support our allies, fight terrorism, combat international crime and narcotics, support diplomatic negotiations, and advance many other important national objectives.

2. \_\_\_\_\_

The U. S. Constitution, federal law, executive order, and regulations of the Executive Branch govern NSA's activities. Internally, the Office of the Inspector General conducts inspections, audits, and investigations to make certain that NSA/CSS operates with integrity, efficiency, and effectiveness, while the Office of the General Counsel provides legal advice. Most importantly, each NSA/CSS employee is charged with knowing, understanding, and obeying to the fullest the laws of the nation.

3. \_\_\_\_\_

Executive Order 12333 (EO 12333) authorizes agencies of the Intelligence Community to obtain reliable intelligence information, consistent with applicable Federal law and EO 12333, with full consideration of the rights of U. S. persons. Pursuant to EO 12333, NSA is authorized to collect, process, analyze, produce, and disseminate Signals Intelligence information and data for foreign intelligence and counterintelligence purposes to support national and departmental missions, and to provide signals intelligence support for the conduct of military operations. The executive order, however, prohibits the collection, retention, or dissemination of information about U. S. persons except pursuant to procedures established by the head of the agency and approved by the Attorney General.

4. \_\_\_\_\_

The NSA/CSS conducts extensive training of its employees to ensure that the workforce is aware and understands the regulations governing NSA/CSS activities. The members of the NSA/CSS work force charged with foreign intelligence production receive very specific training advising them of their responsibility to protect the privacy of U. S. persons. Access to intelligence information is contingent upon the completion of such training sessions.

5. \_\_\_\_\_

Cryptology is the art and science of making and breaking codes and ciphers. NSA/CSS is responsible for creating the systems that pro-

protect U.S. communications and for analyzing systems and communications used by foreign powers. Making a code or cipher system is called cryptography. Those who try to “break” a cryptosystem are practicing cryptanalysis.

### **5. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. The National Security Agency/Central Security Service (NSA/CSS) leads the U.S. Government in cryptology that encompasses both signals intelligence (SIGINT) and information assurance (now referred to as cybersecurity) products and services, and enables computer network operations (CNO) in order to gain a decision advantage for the Nation and our allies under all circumstances.
2. The origins of the National Security Agency can be traced back to April 28, 1917, three weeks after the U.S. Congress declared war on Germany in World War I. A code and cipher decryption unit was established as the Cable and Telegraph Section which was also known as the Cipher Bureau.
3. Following the resignation of President Richard Nixon, there were several investigations of suspected misuse of FBI, CIA and NSA facilities. Senator Frank Church uncovered previously unknown activity, such as a CIA plot (ordered by the administration of President John F. Kennedy) to assassinate Fidel Castro. The investigation also uncovered NSA’s wiretaps on targeted U.S. citizens.
4. NSA’s eavesdropping mission includes radio broadcasting, both from various organizations and individuals, the Internet, telephone calls, and other intercepted forms of communication. Its secure communications mission includes military, diplomatic, and all other sensitive, confidential or secret government communications.
5. In the United States, at least since 2001, there has been legal controversy over what signal intelligence can be used for and how much freedom the National Security Agency has to use signal intelligence. In 2015 the government made slight changes in how it uses and collects certain types of data, specifically phone records.
6. Operations by the National Security Agency can be divided in three types: Collection overseas, Domestic collection and Hacking operations.
7. The NSA conducts polygraph tests of employees. For new employees, the tests are meant to discover enemy spies who are applying to the NSA and to uncover any information that could make an applicant pliant to coercion.
8. While it is assumed that foreign transmissions terminating in the U.S. (such as a non-U.S. citizen accessing a U.S. website) subject non-U.S. citizens to NSA surveillance, recent research into boomerang routing has raised new concerns about the NSA’s ability to surveil the domestic Internet traffic of foreign countries.

**6. Translate from Russian into English.**

1. Агентство национальной безопасности Соединенных Штатов Америки — это подразделение Министерства обороны США, входящее в состав Разведывательного сообщества на правах независимого разведывательного органа.
2. АНБ занимается радиоэлектронной разведкой и защитой электронных коммуникационных сетей госучреждений США.
3. По числу сотрудников и по размеру бюджета АНБ является крупнейшим в США разведывательным ведомством.
4. Задача радиотехнической разведки — получение информации о планах, намерениях, возможностях и местонахождении террористических групп, организаций, иностранных держав, или их агентов, которые представляют угрозу национальной безопасности США.
5. АНБ считает главными ценностями в своей деятельности честность, уважение закона, добросовестность, прозрачность.

**7. Make up your own sentences with the following words and word combinations:**

clandestine, attack software, eavesdropping device, wiretapping, political controversy, to intercept.

**TEST QUESTIONS**

1. What is international law?
2. What branches of law does international law include in its widest sense?
3. What are the three main sources of public international law?
4. What are subjects of international law?
5. What does private international law deal with?
6. What is another name for private international law?
7. What is supranational law?
8. When was the UN founded and for what purpose?
9. When was the term “United Nations” first used and by whom?
10. What are the main organs of the UN?
11. In what cases may the General Assembly be convened within 24 hours in an emergency special session?
12. What countries are permanent members of the UN Security Council?
13. What is the Universal Declaration of Human rights and when was it adopted?
14. What is the role of International Court of Justice?
15. What kind of document is Russia’s National Security Strategy 2015–2020?

16. How is strategic deterrence accomplished, according to Russia's National Security Strategy?
17. What are the main indicators of national security?
18. What is the main threat to Russian national security in the cultural sphere?
19. What is the main threat to Russian national security in the healthcare sphere?
20. What agencies provide national security of the Russian Federation?
21. Are main responsibilities of the FSB within or outside the country? What do they include?
22. What are the main functions of Foreign Intelligence Service of the Russian Federation?
23. What are the main responsibilities of the GRU?
24. What are the vital threats to the UK national security?
25. Why does the UK need sea lanes?
26. What steps must the UK's government take to ensure national security and Strategic Defense?
27. What agencies provide the UK national security?
28. Does the UK have a formal National Security Council?
29. How do responsibilities of MI5 and MI6 differ?
30. What does the US National Security Strategy of 2015 set up?
31. What is the role of the US National Security Council?
32. What is the main function of the FBI?
33. What is the main function of the CIA?
34. What is the NSA responsible for?

## **Chapter VII**

# **INTERNATIONAL POLICE ORGANIZATION**

## **Unit 1. International Cooperation**

### **Lead-in**

1. Why is it so important to cooperate on international level in fighting against crime?
2. What successful operations carried out jointly by a number of states do you know?

### **Vocabulary**

1. to seek to evade detection — стремиться избежать обнаружения
2. reluctance of law enforcement authorities to engage in complicated and expensive investigations — нежелание правоохранительных органов заниматься сложными и дорогостоящими расследованиями
3. to comply with new international standards — соответствовать новым международным стандартам
4. smuggling of migrants and money laundering — незаконный ввоз мигрантов и отмывание денег
5. on a multilateral and a bilateral basis — на многосторонней и двусторонней основе
6. confiscation of criminal proceeds and asset recovery — конфискация преступных доходов и возвращение активов
7. to encourage convergence and compatibility of national legislation — содействовать сближению и совместимости национального законодательства
8. diversity of law enforcement structures — многообразие правоохранительных структур
9. divergences in approaches and priorities — различия в подходах и приоритетах
10. commitment to the rule of law — приверженность верховенству закона
11. prerequisite — необходимый, обязательный



12. African Malagasy Common Organization — Общая Афро-Малагасийская Организация

13. international notice — международное уведомление

### 1. Read the text.

1. The emergence and expansion of transnational crime confront all justice systems with some new difficulties. Criminal offences are mobile and often **seek to evade detection**, arrest and punishment by operating across international borders. They avoid being caught by taking advantage of those borders and playing on the frequent **reluctance of law enforcement authorities to engage in complicated and expensive transnational investigations** and prosecutions. That is why the international community now recognizes international cooperation in criminal matters as an urgent necessity. This demands national efforts **to comply with new international standards, to encourage convergence and compatibility of national legislation**, to introduce complex procedural reforms, and generally to develop a much greater investigation and prosecution capacity at the national level as well as strengthen the capacity to cooperate at the international level.

2. Transnational organized crime is considered one of the main threats to the security of each individual, and it affects the social, economic, political and cultural development of people all over the world. This multilateral phenomenon is observed in different types of activity including: drug trafficking, human trafficking, the arms trade, **smuggling of migrants and money laundering**. Cooperation with colleagues from both distant and nearby countries is one of the key objectives of international activity especially when it concerns joint action against international terrorism, religious extremism, drug trafficking, human trafficking and other dangerous types of transnational crime. Interaction is carried out both **on a multilateral and a bilateral basis**. The importance of having an organized means of cooperation is related to issues such as the search for people who are reasonably suspected of having committed crimes and are evading investigation, trial and extradition.

3. The main mechanisms supporting international cooperation are mutual legal assistance, extradition, transfer of prisoners, transfer of proceedings in criminal matters, international cooperation for the purpose of **confiscation of criminal proceeds and asset recovery** as provided for in the United Nations Convention against Corruption, as well as a number of less formal measures, including measures in the area of international law enforcement cooperation.

4. In spite of the considerable progress accomplished at the bilateral, regional, trans-regional, and international levels, international cooperation in the investigation and prosecution of serious crimes still needs considerable strengthening. Many obstacles still exist. They include sovereignty issues, the **diversity of law enforcement structures**, the absence of enabling legislation, the absence of channels of communication for the exchange of information, and **divergences in approaches and priorities**.

5. A country's **commitment to the rule of law** and the protection of human rights should not be negotiable or bartered against some international cooperation concessions in fighting transnational crime or terrorism.

6. Whether a country is attempting to prevent organized crime activities, financial and economic crime, computer crime, corruption or terrorism, the establishment of better legal bases for international cooperation is **pre-requisite**. In matters of international cooperation, criminal justice agencies must rely to a large extent on the treaty network developed by their country. To facilitate these efforts the General Assembly adopted a Model Treaty on Mutual Assistance in Criminal Matters. Multilateral Conventions dealing with extradition have been developed within the framework of various regional and other international organizations such as the **African Malagasy Common Organization**, the Benelux Countries, the Council of Europe, the Commonwealth, the European Union, the Nordic States, the Organization of African States.

7. Mutual Legal Assistance, as is the case with extradition, is based on bilateral and multilateral treaties as well as on national legislation that either gives full effect to the relevant treaties or enables mutual assistance in absence of a treaty. Instruments on mutual legal assistance in criminal proceedings have also been adopted within the framework of the Commonwealth, the Council of Europe, the European Union, The Organization of American States, the South-East Asian Region (ASEAN signed on 29 November 2004), the Economic Community of West African States, the Southern African Countries of modalities.

8. The Interpol uses a system of **international notices** (circulars) to inform peace officers in the national bureaus of cases where known criminals abandon their usual residence and travel abroad surreptitiously. The color-coded circulars are distributed by Interpol Headquarters to member countries within twenty days of their issue or, in urgent cases, the same day. In the case of a fugitive whose arrest and extradition is requested, a wanted notice containing details of the arrest warrant and the offense committed is circulated.

## 2. Find the paragraph which

- a. proves the commitment to the rule of law and human rights
- b. points out special documents to inform member countries of dangerous criminals
- c. stresses the importance of international cooperation
- d. mentions difficulties of international cooperation
- e. shows the mechanism of international cooperation
- f. proves that organized crime encompasses practically all spheres of human activity
- g. describes the ability of criminals to avoid arrest
- f. explains conditions for the implementation of instruments on mutual legal assistance

**3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. subject to penal sanctions
2. to evade investigation and extradition
3. to travel abroad surreptitiously
4. adherence to international human rights standards
5. to confiscate criminal proceeds and assets
6. commitment to the rule of law

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. запретить определенные категории поведения
2. лица, уголовно наказуемые за совершенные преступления
3. массовые нарушения прав человека
4. соответствовать международным нормам
5. реагировать на вопиющие нарушения гражданских прав
6. ордер на арест

**5. Answer the following questions.**

1. How can criminals avoid being caught?
2. What measures should be taken to prevent the expansion of transnational crime?
3. What types of crimes are referred to as transnational crime?
4. What obstacles prevent countries from investigating international crimes?
5. What measures were taken by the UN General Assembly to facilitate international cooperation?
6. What is the role of international notices in Interpol activities?

**6. Match the words from the text with their definitions.**

1. a fugitive	a. involving two or more participants
2. compatibility	b. to go away from, not intending to return
3. multilateral	c. a poster put up to inform the public of criminals whom the authorities wish to apprehend
4. extradition	d. ability to exist together
5. to abandon	e. a difficulty or problem that prevents you from achieving something
6. a wanted notice	f. someone who has done something illegal and is trying to avoid being caught by the police
7. an obstacle	g. handing over from the state where he is a fugitive to the state where he has committed a crime

**7. Work in pairs. Indicate the appropriate word used in the text.**

1. International community \_\_\_\_\_ international cooperation in criminal matters as an urgent necessity

- a) realize                      b) appreciate                      c) recognizes

2. Therefore the struggle against this evil \_\_\_\_\_ international cooperation.

- a) involve b) requires c) provide

3. These mechanisms are based on \_\_\_\_\_ or multilateral agreements or arrangements or, in some instances, on national law.

- a) bilateral                      b) binding                      c) interstate

4. \_\_\_\_\_ the considerable progress accomplished at the bilateral, regional, trans-regional, and international levels, international cooperation still needs considerable strengthening

- a) whether                      b) as though                      c) In spite of

5. Measures to enforce \_\_\_\_\_ and adherence to international human rights standards are also directly relevant in matters of extradition, mutual legal assistance, or joint investigations.

- a) the conflict of laws      b) the rule of law      c) the purpose of law

6. The treaties and laws should be reviewed periodically and amended \_\_\_\_\_ in international community.

- a) to ban peace                      b) to disturb peace                      c) to keep peace

7. Mutual Legal Assistance as is the case with extradition is based on bilateral and multilateral treaties as well as on \_\_\_\_\_ that enables mutual assistance in absence of a treaty.

- a) an appropriate committee b) the Armed Forces c) national legislation

8. The color-coded circulars \_\_\_\_\_ by Interpol Headquarters to member countries within twenty days of their issue.

- a) are distributed                      b) are discussed                      c) are interpreted

**8. Work in pairs. Read the text and title its parts with the appropriate headings from the box.**

- a) Flexibility of working methods b) Respect for national sovereignty  
c) Universality d) Enforcement of ordinary criminal law  
e) Co-operation with other agencies f) Equality of all Members States

**Cooperation guiding principles**

International police co-operation within Interpol has always been conducted in accordance with the guiding principles listed below:

1. \_\_\_\_\_ Co-operation is based on the actions taken by the police forces in the various member States, operating within their own national boundaries and in accordance with their own national laws.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ The Organization's field of activities is limited to crime prevention and law enforcement in connection with ordinary criminal offences. This is the only basis on which there can be agreement between all member states.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ Any member state may cooperate with any other and co-operation must not be impeded by geographical or linguistic factors.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ All the member states are provided with the same services and have the same rights, irrespective of the size of their financial contributions to the Organization.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Co-operation is extended through the National Central Bureaus to any Government agency concerned with combating ordinary criminal offences
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Although governed by principles designed to ensure regularity and continuity, working methods are flexible enough to take account of the wide variety of structures and situations in different countries. Respect for these principles means that Interpol cannot have teams of detectives with supranational powers who travel around investigating cases in different countries. International Police cooperation has to depend on coordinated action on the part of the member States' police forces, all of which may supply or request information or services on different occasions.

**9. Match the word combinations with their Russian equivalents.**

1. mutual aid and cooperation	a. осуществлять контроль за выполнением решений
2. to prevent and inhibit crime	b. расширять сотрудничество
3. to undertake any intervention	c. действовать в пределах национальных границ
4. to travel abroad surreptitiously	d. основные аспекты преступления
5. to request an arrest of a fugitive	e. оказывать содействие и обеспечивать взаимопомощь
6. to ensure and promote mutual assistance	f. подать запрос о выдаче беглого преступника
7. predominant aspects of the offence	g. тайно путешествовать по стране
8. to operate within national boundaries	h. осуществить интервенцию
9. to extend cooperation	i. предотвращать и сдерживать преступность
10. to oversee the implementation of decisions	j. взаимопомощь и сотрудничество

**10. Comment on the following quotation.**

“The world is a dangerous place, not because of the people who are evil, but because of the people who do not do anything about it”.

Albert Einstein

**Unit 2. History of Interpol****Lead-in**

1. What do you know about the International Criminal Police Organization?
2. Would you like to serve in the Interpol? Why?

**Vocabulary**

1. to inhibit crime / to suppress crimes — сдерживать преступность
2. to oversee the implementation of decisions — осуществлять контроль за решениями
3. counterfeiting — производство контрафакта, фальшивомонетничество
4. nuclear and explosive materials — ядерные и взрывчатые вещества
5. to pose a threat to — представлять угрозу
6. to coordinate and respond to inquiries — координировать и реагировать на запросы
7. to arrange for — способствовать
8. to ensure and promote mutual assistance — обеспечивать содействие и оказывать взаимопомощь

**1. Read the text.**

At the beginning of 20<sup>th</sup> century it was necessary that the international organization should be created to combat crime and to exchange ideas and methods between the police forces in the world. It came into being under the name of the International Criminal Police Commission (ICPC) in 1923 and worked until the beginning of World War II. In 1946 the old members of ICPC met in Belgium to revive the organization, and in 1956 it was renamed as the International Criminal Police Organization — Interpol. The official name is ICPU-Interpol.

This international organization of police forces from 186 countries is designed to coordinate International Law enforcement, mutual aid and cooperation among the police forces of its national members in order to prevent and **inhibit crime**.

Interpol's day-to-day operation is managed by a General Secretariat under the direction of a secretary general, who is appointed for a five-year term by the General Assembly. The General Assembly, consisting of one delegate from each member country, is Interpol's supreme decision-making body.

An Executive Committee of 13 members, each representing a different region of the world, is appointed by the General Assembly at its annual meeting. The Executive Committee **oversees the implementation of decisions** made by the General Assembly and supervises the work of the secretary general.

Interpol with the General Secretariat — the international headquarters — located in Lyons, France. Delegates from member countries meet once a year to discuss police problems and admit new members.

Interpol concentrates on three broad categories of international criminal activity: terrorism and crimes against people and property, including crimes against children, trafficking in human beings, illegal immigration, automobile theft, and art theft; economic, financial and computer crimes, including banking fraud, money laundering, corruption and **counterfeiting**; illegal drugs and criminal organizations, including organized crime.

Terrorism that makes use of CBRNE materials (Chemical, Biological, Radiological, **Nuclear and Explosive**) **poses a clear threat to** health and safety, economic and political stability on global level. Interpol is specialized on the prevention of radiological and nuclear terrorism, bioterrorism, chemical and explosive terrorism. CBRNE terrorism is a global threat with transnational consequences. Interpol activities range from information sharing and intelligence analysis to operational and investigate support.

Each member nation maintains and staffs its own national central bureau. Each national central bureau **coordinates and responds to inquiries** received from local and foreign law enforcement agencies. Each bureau also **arranges for** resolutions adopted by Interpol to be applied at the national level and works to ensure that the basic principles laid down by Interpol's constitution are followed.

Under Article 2 of the UN Organization's Constitution Interpol's aims are: **to ensure and promote the widest possible mutual assistance** between all criminal police authorities, within the limits of the laws existing in the different countries and in the spirit of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights; to establish and develop all institutions to contribute effectively to the prevention and suppression of ordinary law crimes.

Within the organization a series of alerts or notices is used for calling attention to criminals. Red Notice is used when seeking the arrest of a wanted person, and with a view of extradition. Depending upon the country involved, it may serve as a provisional arrest warrant. Blue Notice is used to collect additional information about a person's location, identity or legal activities in relation to a criminal matter. In terms of terrorism matter, this notice enhances the chances for better identification of a suspect. Green notice is used to provide warning to criminal intelligence about persons who have committed criminal offences and are likely to repeat these crimes in other countries.

Interpol is forbidden by its constitution to undertake any intervention or activities of a political, military, religious, or racial character.

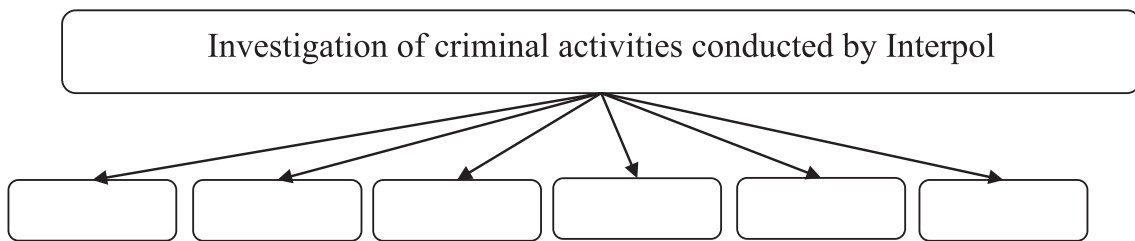
**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What was the reason to create the international police organization?
2. What are the functions of a national bureau?
3. What is Interpol’s supreme decision-making body?
4. What is forbidden for Interpol by its constitution?
5. How often does the General Assembly hold its meetings?
6. What does Interpol coordinate?

**3. Look through the text again. Say in what context the dates and numbers given below are used.**

1946, 1956, 186, 20

**4. Complete the chart.**



**5. Watch the video “Interpol — 100 years of innovation 1914–2014” and answer the following questions.**

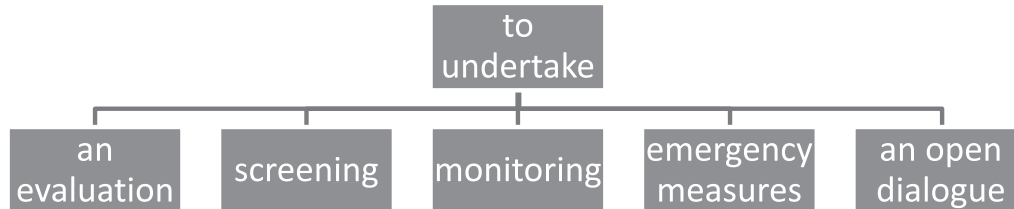
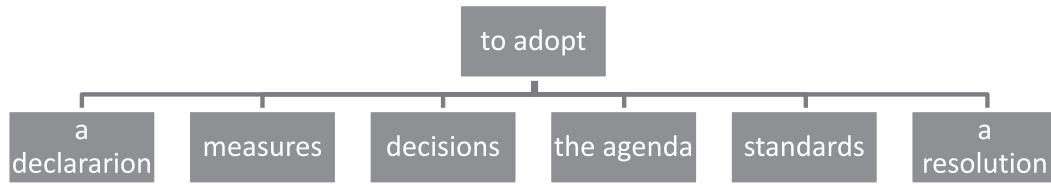
1. What is the aim of Interpol?
2. When and where was Interpol officially created?
3. What was the job of a special unit?
4. What measures were taken to facilitate cooperation among countries?
5. When are Red Notices issued?
6. Does Interpol cooperate with the UN?
7. What crimes does Interpol concentrate on?

**6. Watch the clip again. Work in 3 groups. Each group answers one question.**

1. What terrorist attacks marked a new era?
2. In what way did the 124/7 secure communication system help Interpol?
3. What can people do if they join their efforts?



7. Translate the following word combinations into Russian. Use them in the sentences of your own.



## Unit 3. Interpol Partnership

### Lead-in

1. Is Interpol an independent organization or works in partnership with other international bodies?
2. Can Interpol undertake any activities of a political, military, religious or racial character?

### Vocabulary

1. to counter — противостоять
2. dimension — зд. направление деятельности
3. World Customs Organization — Всемирная таможенная организация
4. to encompass both for-profit entities and non-profit bodies — охватывать коммерческие и некоммерческие организации
5. commitment — приверженность

### 1. Read the text.

Transnational crime cannot **be countered** by the law enforcement community in isolation. By engaging in partnerships across sectors, Interpol can share expertise, technology and resources, and so strengthen our joint response.

Interpol acknowledges the need to work in partnership with other organizations in order to combat international crime. As such, it has concluded a number of cooperation agreements with other international organizations, including the United Nations and the European Union.

External organizations can bring a new and valuable **dimension** to Interpol's activities, with their contributions benefiting Interpol's entire network

of 190 member countries. The exchange of data between Interpol's 190 member countries is carried out according to strict guidelines in order to ensure the legality and quality of information and the protection of personal data.

Interpol cooperates closely with a number of partners in the public sector and maintains representative offices at the United Nations and the European Union. Other public-sector partners include the **World Customs Organization**, CEMAC (Economic Community of Central African States) and numerous government agencies. Interpol works with select partners from the private sector, **encompassing both for-profit entities and non-profit bodies**, such as non-governmental organizations and foundations.

In order to effectively fulfill its cross-border activities, Interpol functions under international law. Interpol is recognized as an international organization by the United Nations through its Headquarters agreements with France and other countries on whose territory it has premises.

The Interpol Constitution is an international agreement that confirms as members the governments of all those countries that participated in its adoption in 1956 and provides the application procedure for countries that were not members in 1956 to join Interpol. As Interpol's main legal document, the Constitution outlines Interpol's aims and objectives. It establishes the mandate of the Organization to ensure the widest possible cooperation between all criminal police authorities and to suppress ordinary law crimes. The Constitution specifies that international police cooperation is to be conducted within the spirit of the Universal Declaration of Human Rights. For example, this **commitment** to human rights is expressed through the Organization's cooperation with international courts and tribunals and through the careful processing of personal data. It is strictly forbidden for Interpol to undertake any activities of a political, military, religious or racial character.

## 2. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.

1. to strengthen response
2. to combat international crime
3. to exchange data
4. to ensure the legality
5. numerous government agencies
6. cross-border activities
7. to outline aims and objectives
8. strictly forbidden

## 3. Render the text into English.

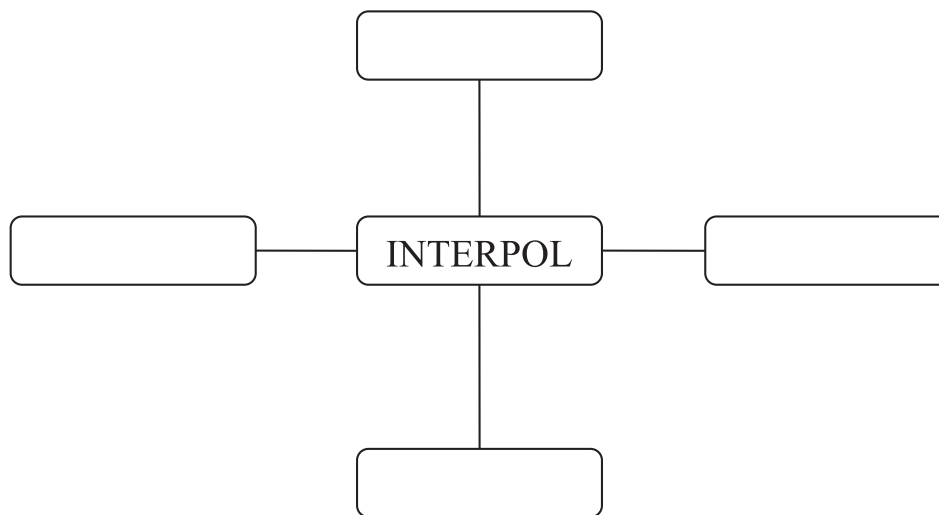
Деятельность Интерпола связана с проблемами социальной безопасности, международного терроризма и организованной преступности, незаконного производства и оборота наркотиков, контрабанды

оружия и торговли людьми, отмывания денег и детской порнографии, финансовых преступлений.

Специалисты Интерпола регистрируют сведения о международных преступлениях, отпечатках пальцев. Также ведутся картотеки, содержащие сведения о похищенных автомобилях, произведениях искусства, о лицах, пропавших без вести, о неопознанных телах, огнестрельном оружии.

Интерпол ведет розыск лиц, подозреваемых в совершении международных преступлений, включая оперативно-розыскные действия.

**4. Fill in the chart. Use the information from the texts and Internet resources to describe the Interpol structure.**



**5. Fill in the gaps with the prepositions from the box.**

**into, with, under (2), on, for, to, in (5), by, of (5), within, between**

1. It came \_\_\_1\_\_\_ being \_\_\_2\_\_\_ the name of the International Criminal Police Commission in 1923.

2. An intelligence agency is a government agency responsible \_\_\_3\_\_\_ the collection, analysis, and exploitation of information and intelligence \_\_\_4\_\_\_ support \_\_\_5\_\_\_ law enforcement, national security, military, and foreign policy objectives.

3. Interpol's day-to-day operation is managed \_\_\_6\_\_\_ a General Secretariat \_\_\_7\_\_\_ the direction of a secretary general, who is appointed for a five-year term by the General Assembly.

4. Intelligence agencies can stipulate provision \_\_\_8\_\_\_ analysis \_\_\_9\_\_\_ areas relevant \_\_\_10\_\_\_ national security.

5. Interpol ensures and promotes the widest possible mutual assistance \_\_\_11\_\_\_ all criminal police authorities, \_\_\_12\_\_\_ the limits \_\_\_13\_\_\_ the

laws existing \_\_\_14\_\_\_ different countries and \_\_\_15\_\_\_ the spirit \_\_\_16\_\_\_ the Universal Declaration \_\_\_17\_\_\_ of Human Rights.

6. This interpretation, based \_\_\_18\_\_\_ the predominant aspects \_\_\_19\_\_\_ the offence, is embodied \_\_\_20\_\_\_ a resolution adopted \_\_\_21\_\_\_ Interpol's General Assembly \_\_\_22\_\_\_ 1951.

7. All the member states are provided \_\_\_23\_\_\_ the same services and have the same rights, irrespective \_\_\_24\_\_\_ the size \_\_\_25\_\_\_ their financial contributions \_\_\_26\_\_\_ the Organization.

## 6. Read and retell the text.

Interpol and Europol are intelligence agencies characterized with different functions. Interpol stands for International Criminal Police Organization. On the other hand, Europol is an intelligence agency of the European Union.

The chief function of Interpol is to facilitate the cooperation among other international police organizations. The chief function of Europol is to facilitate the cooperation of the various intelligence organizations of the member countries.

Interpol has the power to conduct investigation into the crimes committed in different arenas. The arenas into which criminal investigations can be conducted by Interpol include genocide, terrorism, crimes against humanity, money laundering, war crimes and several other kinds of crimes.

The Interpol officials have the right and the power to conduct investigations and also make arrests of the suspects in connection with the crimes committed in the areas of money laundering, terrorism, genocide and the like. The officials of Europol are not authorized to conduct investigations and question the suspects in connection with the various crimes.

In other words, it can be said that Europol is not entitled to make arrests of the suspects in relation to the various crimes across the continent of Europe. All they can do is extend their support to the other intelligence agencies in the member countries where crimes of different kinds are committed.

Interpol is a very large organization when compared to the intelligence agency of Europol. As many as 178 independent nations and 14 sub-bureaus or dependencies are members of the Interpol. It promotes mutual assistance among all police authorities within the limits of the law existing in the different countries.

Russia. National Central Bureau (NCB) for Russia serves as the central platform for operational information exchange between Russian law-enforcement entities and the Interpol law enforcement community. There are 80 regional divisions of Interpol Moscow which operate throughout the Russian Federation. First created in 1997, their main tasks and functions are similar to those of Interpol Moscow but have a more regional focus, serving primarily as a liaison link for regional investigations, crime fighting and the search for fugitives. The NCB works to combat a number of priority crimes

with an international dimension including: The search for location and identification of fugitives and missing people; Organized crime and terrorism; Economic crime and counterfeit currency; Trafficking in stolen vehicles; Theft of cultural heritage and works of art; Drug trafficking; Illegal trade and smuggling of firearms; Ammunition and explosives; High-tech crime; Crimes connected with document forgery.

**7. Use the text and Internet resources for additional information on the Interpol activities. Make a presentation on one the following topics**

1. Interpol.
2. Europol.
3. Interpol Moscow.
4. Interpol in the fight against crimes in the sphere of high technology.
5. Interpol in the fight against organized crime and economic crimes.
6. Interpol in Russia.

## **Unit 4. Extradition**

### **Lead-in**

1. What is extradition?
2. Do you know any extradited criminals?

### **Vocabulary**

1. intrusion in the liberty of the person — посягательство на свободу личности
2. to be justified — быть обоснованным, оправданным
3. to expunge — вычеркивать
4. to deny extradition — отказать в выдаче преступника/отказать в экстрадиции
5. to cover a pardon or an amnesty — распространяться на помилование или амнистию
6. to grant extradition in accordance with domestic law and applicable treaties — предоставить возможность экстрадиции преступника в соответствии с внутренним законодательством и международными договорами
7. nationals — граждане
8. to invoke — использовать
9. hurdle — препятствие
10. reciprocity — взаимный обмен
11. European Arrest Warrant — Европейский ордер на арест
12. surrender of a suspected or convicted criminal — выдача подозреваемого или осужденного

13. web of extradition treaties or agreements to evolve — развитие системы договоров и соглашений о выдаче преступников
14. list treaty — договор-перечень
15. dual criminality treaty — договор о двойной преступности
16. to impose certain restrictions on extradition — ввести определенные ограничения на выдачу преступника
17. to deem — полагать
18. dubious evidence — сомнительные доказательства

### 1. Read the text (A). Make a list of the main ideas.

(A) Extradition is the surrender of a person by one State to another, the person being either accused of a (extraditable) crime in the requesting State or unlawfully at large after conviction. This is a considerable **intrusion in the liberty of the person** concerned, but one which is **justified** by the common interest of States in combating crimes and **expunging** safe havens for fugitives. The standard term is extradition, terms such as surrender or transfer are sometimes used but often with a view to signal a substantive difference.

Extradition is normally subject to strict requirements. The already mentioned principles of double criminality and the rule of specialty apply and the offences must also be extraditable. The requested State may **deny extradition**, which sometimes also **covers a pardon or an amnesty** in that State or a third State. Additionally, numerous grounds for refusal apply and conditions may be imposed. States may **grant extradition in accordance with domestic law and applicable treaties**, as is the case in the 1948 Genocide Convention and in the 1949 Geneva Conventions.

The provisions of the 1984 Torture Convention are different, however, and it is sometimes argued that a condition such as non-extradition of **nationals** may not **be invoked** to refuse extradition concerning torture. But in practice many States do refuse extradition of nationals even in torture cases.

With all these **hurdles** requests for extradition are not always successful and one may ask what effect the obligation has on the requested State when refusing to extradite. To be meaningful the principle must mean that the requested State shall take domestic action if extradition is denied. Many States insist on **reciprocity** and require an international agreement for extradition. The basic multilateral treaty in Europe is the 1957 European Extradition Convention and its Additional Protocols, adopted by the Council of Europe, which represent a traditional scheme.

The EU has adopted two conventions in 1995 and 1996, which provide for simplified proceedings and reduced grounds for refusal, but they are not widely ratified. Among the EU Member States, however, the **European Arrest Warrant** has replaced the traditional extradition scheme and introduced a system whereby a warrant in one State shall be recognized and enforced in all other member States.

The European Arrest Warrant is to be recognized and enforced in the other Member States with minimal formalities.

**2. Read the text (B). Find and describe a) two types of extradition treaties, b) extradition treaty requirements and c) conditions for denying an extradition request.**

**(B)** Extradition is the official process by which one nation or state requests and obtains from another nation or state the **surrender of a suspected or convicted** criminal. As between nations, extradition is regulated by treaties.

The consensus in international law is that a state does not have any obligation to surrender an alleged criminal to a foreign state, as one principle of sovereignty is that every state has legal authority over the people within its borders. Such absence of international obligation and desire of the right to demand such criminals of other countries has caused a **web of extradition treaties or agreements to evolve**; most countries in the world have signed bilateral extradition treaties with most other countries. No country in the world has an extradition treaty with all other countries; for example, the United States lacks extradition treaties with over 50 nations, including the People's Republic of China, Namibia, Jamaica, and North Korea.

There are two types of extradition treaties: **list and dual criminality treaties**. The most common and traditional is the list treaty, which contains a list of crimes for which a suspect will be extradited. Dual criminality treaties, used since the 1980s, generally allow for extradition of a criminal suspect if the punishment is more than one-year imprisonment in both countries. Occasionally the amount of the time of the sentence agreed upon between the two countries is varied. Under both types of treaties, if the conduct is not a crime in either country then it will not be an extraditable offense. Generally, an extradition treaty requires that a country seeking extradition be able to show that:

- The relevant crime is sufficiently serious.
- There exists a *prima facie* case against the individual sought.
- The event in question qualifies as a crime in both countries.
- The extradited person can reasonably expect a fair trial in the recipient country.
- The likely penalty will be proportionate to the crime.

Most countries require themselves to deny extradition requests if, in the government's opinion, the suspect is sought for a political crime. Many countries, such as Mexico, Canada, and most European nations, will not allow extradition if the death penalty may be imposed on the suspect unless they are assured that the death sentence will not subsequently be passed or carried out.

Countries with a rule of law typically make extradition subject to review by that country's courts. These courts may **impose certain restrictions on extradition**, or prevent it altogether, if for instance they **deem** the accusations to be based on **dubious evidence**, or evidence obtained from torture, or if they

believe that the defendant will not be granted a fair trial on arrival, or will be subject to cruel, inhumane, or degrading treatment if extradited.

**3. Answer the following questions.**

1. What procedure is referred to as extradition?
2. Which crimes might a suspect be extradited for?
3. In what cases may certain restrictions on extradition be imposed?

**4. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. Extradition is regulated by treaties.
2. All countries have extradition treaties with other countries.
3. The dual treaty is the most common.
4. Countries with a rule of law typically make extradition subject to review by that country's courts.
5. If the accusation is based on evidence obtained from torture the country's court may impose restrictions.

**5. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. выдача преступника
2. тюремное заключение
3. отказать в экстрадиции преступника
4. смертный приговор
5. свидетельские показания, полученные в результате бесчеловечного обращения

**6. Look through the text again. Say in what context the dates given below are used.**

1948, 1984, 1957, 1996

**7. Match the words with their definitions.**

1. sovereignty	a. a statement by a judge; punishment
2. prima facie	b. asking for something in a polite or formal way
3. request	c. extreme physical pain that someone is forced to suffer
4. restriction	d. the right of a country to rule itself
5. torture	e. something that limits what you can do
6. sentence	f. in the absence of evidence to the contrary

**8. Provide definitions to the following words.**

1. Extradition is \_\_\_\_\_
2. Surrender is \_\_\_\_\_
3. Transfer is \_\_\_\_\_



**9. Make a presentation on one of the following topics. Use the text and Internet recourses.**

1. Extradition treaties and agreements.
2. Cases of extradition.
3. The role of the UN in extradition of suspects.
4. Are the UN requests for extradition obligatory?
5. Rights of victims of politically motivated extradition requests.

## Unit 5. Universal Jurisdiction

### Lead-in

1. What is universal jurisdiction from your point of view?
2. What crimes fall under the universal jurisdiction?

### Vocabulary

1. universal jurisdiction — универсальная юрисдикция
2. to claim criminal jurisdiction over an accused person — требовать применение уголовной юрисдикции к обвиняемому
3. to tolerate jurisdictional arbitrage — допускать юрисдикцию арбитражного суда
4. erga omnes — лат. «всем в назидание», касаясь всех
5. proponent of universal jurisdiction — сторонник универсальной юрисдикции
6. extrajudicial execution — казнь без суда и следствия
7. to pose a serious threat to the international community — представлять серьезную угрозу международному сообществу
8. safe haven — зона безопасности
9. to assert universal jurisdiction — устанавливать универсальную юрисдикцию
10. grievous — тяжкий
11. to exercise universal jurisdiction — осуществлять универсальную юрисдикцию

**1. Read the text below and find out if the text contains information about**

- a. crimes that fall under universal jurisdiction
- b. categories of people who fall under universal jurisdiction
- c. crimes against humanity prosecuted by Amnesty International
- d. geographically specific courts

**Universal jurisdiction** allows states or international organizations to **claim criminal jurisdiction over an accused person** regardless of where the alleged crime was committed, and regardless of the accused nationality, country of residence or any other relation with the prosecuting entity. Crimes prosecuted under universal jurisdiction are considered crimes against all, too serious to **tolerate jurisdictional arbitrage**.

The concept of universal jurisdiction is therefore closely linked to the idea that some international norms are *erga omnes*, or owed to the entire world community, as well as the concept of *jus cogens* — that certain international law obligations are binding on all states.

According to Amnesty International, a **proponent of universal jurisdiction**, certain crimes **pose so serious a threat to the international community** as a whole, that states have a logical and moral duty to prosecute an individual responsible. Therefore, no place should be a **safe haven** for those who have committed genocide, crimes against humanity, **extrajudicial execution**, war crimes and torture.

Amnesty International argues that since the end of the Second World War over fifteen states have conducted investigations, commenced prosecutions and completed trials based on universal jurisdiction for the crimes or arrested people with a view to extraditing the person to a state seeking to prosecute them. These states include: Australia, Austria, Belgium, Canada, Denmark, Finland, France, Germany, Israel, Mexico, Senegal, Spain, Switzerland, the United Kingdom and the United States.

The International Criminal Court is an international tribunal of general jurisdiction to prosecute state-members' citizens for genocide, crimes against humanity and war crimes as specified by the Rome Statute of the International Criminal Court signed in 1998. It provides for ICC jurisdiction over state party or on the territory of a non-state party where that non-state party has entered into an agreement with the court providing for it to have such jurisdiction in a particular case.

In addition, the United Nations has set up geographically specific courts to investigate and prosecute crimes against humanity under a theory of universal jurisdiction, such as the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda (1994) and the International Criminal Tribunal for the Former Yugoslavia (1993).

**Universal jurisdiction may be asserted** by a particular nation as well as by an international tribunal. The result is the same: individuals become answerable for crimes defined and prosecuted regardless of where they live or where the conduct occurred, crimes said to be so **grievous** as to be universally condemned.

All states parties to the Convention against torture are obliged whenever a person suspected of torture is found in their territory to submit the case to their prosecuting authorities for the purposes of prosecution, or to extradite that person. In addition, it is now widely recognized that states, even those that are not states parties to this treaty, may **exercise universal jurisdiction** over torture under customary international law.

## 2. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.

1. prosecuting entity
2. to tolerate jurisdictional arbitrage
3. to conduct investigation
4. to become answerable for the crime

5. to enter into agreement
6. to be universally condemned

**3. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. международно-правовые обязательства
2. требовать уголовную юрисдикцию
3. представлять серьезную угрозу
4. быть обязательным для всех государств
5. быть тесно связанным с чем-то

**4. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. People who have committed serious crimes can find refuge in their own country.
2. Certain crimes pose a serious threat to the international community as a whole.
3. Jus cogens means 'owed to the entire community'.
4. Amnesty International came into existence after the First World War.
5. The ICC is situated in Rome.

**5. Match the words with their synonyms.**

1. violation	a. power
2. duty	b. to prohibit
3. authority	c. to make smb do smth
4. offence	d. obligation
5. to charge smb with smth	e. to hold
6. to forbid	f. to set free
7. to oblige	g. to accuse
8. to release	h. wrong
9. to conduct	i. infringement

**6. Form antonyms using negative prefixes.**

Civil, human, security, adequate, responsible, regular, essential, equal, available, relevant, organize, agreement.

**7. Work in pairs. Find information which was not mentioned in the text.**

1. Universal jurisdiction permits to claim a person regardless of his nationality.
2. According to Amnesty International states have no right to prosecute a person for serious crimes.
3. Under the Universal jurisdiction criminals will not be extradited to the country where the death sentence is in force.

4. Under the Rome Statute of the ICC only member states can be prosecuted for crimes against humanity.
5. Universal jurisdiction may not be asserted by a particular nation.
6. If a person is accused of torture, he must be arrested and prosecuted.
7. A state should have the obligation to prosecute or extradite those in its jurisdiction who have participated in an armed conflict in a territory of which they are neither nationals nor long-term residents.

#### **8. Render the text in English.**

Универсальная юрисдикция является особым видом экстерриториальной юрисдикции. Если все другие виды экстерриториальной юрисдикции предполагают некоторую «персональную» связь устанавливающего юрисдикцию государства с преступлением (через территорию, своих граждан, преступника, жертв, наконец, через свои собственные законные интересы), то универсальная юрисдикция не нуждается в такой связи. Достаточно, чтобы государство могло установить свою юрисдикцию в соответствии с международным правом.

Универсальная юрисдикция вытекает из всеобщего осуждения данного преступления. В этом случае неважно, какое государство судит преступника; главное — чтобы он был привлечен к ответственности. Универсальная юрисдикция имеет договорный характер. По международному праву, т.е. по соглашению между государствами, в порядке исключения может устанавливаться юрисдикция любого государства (или государства-участника соглашения) в отношении некоторых преступлений, где бы и кем бы они ни были совершены, то есть универсальная юрисдикция.

#### **9. Make up a dialogue between two lawyers on the principles of universal jurisdiction under International Criminal Law.**

## **Chapter VIII**

# **INTERNATIONAL CRIMES AND CRIMES OF INTERNATIONAL CONCERN**

## **Unit 1. Introduction to International Criminal Law**

### **Lead-in**

1. What international crimes do you know?
2. What core crimes fall under the jurisdiction of International Criminal Law?

### **Vocabulary**

1. to prohibit — запрещать
2. atrocities — зверства, жестокость
3. perpetration — преступление
4. genocide — геноцид
5. war crimes — военные преступления
6. crimes against humanity — преступления против человечества
7. crime of aggression — преступление агрессии
8. Human Rights Law — международно-правовые нормы в области прав человека
9. International Humanitarian Law — международное гуманитарное право
10. abuses of human rights — нарушения прав человека
11. egregious violation — грубейшее, вопиющее нарушение
12. to accord — соответствовать
13. subset — разновидность
14. treaty law — международное договорное право
15. ad hoc Tribunals — специальные трибуналы
16. 1907 Hague Regulations — Гагская конвенция 1907 г.
17. alleged crime — заявленное преступление

### **1. Read the text and list the core crimes under International Criminal Law.**

International Criminal Law is a body of Public International law designed to **prohibit** certain categories of conduct commonly reviewed as serious

**atrocities** and to make **perpetrators** of such conduct criminally accountable for their **perpetrations**. The core crimes under international criminal law are **genocide, war crimes, crimes against humanity and the crime of aggression**.

International Criminal Law relates to other areas of International Law. The most important areas of International law are: **Human Rights Law, International Humanitarian Law** and the law relating to State responsibility.

Crimes against humanity and the development of the Law of Human Rights was partially inspired by a wish to ensure that the atrocities that characterized Nazi Germany were not repeated. Thus, the modern Law of Human Rights and a considerable part of International Criminal Law have a common base.

More recent developments in the enforcement of International Criminal Law, in particular the creation of the Tribunals, were introduced in response to mass **abuses of human rights** by States against their own citizens or others within their territory. International Criminal Law developed in this context to respond to **egregious violations** of human rights in the absence of effective alternative mechanisms.

Some precedents in International Law can be found before World War I. After World War II, the Allied powers set up an international tribunal to try not only war crimes, but crimes against humanity committed under Nazi regime. The Nuremberg Tribunal held its first session in 1945 and pronounced judgments on 30 September / 1 October 1946. The International Military Tribunal for the East was established for war crimes in Rwanda. It operated from 1946 to 1948. After the beginning of the war in Bosnia, the United Nations Security Council established the International Criminal Tribunal for former Yugoslavia (ICTY) in 1993 and, after the genocide in Rwanda, the International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda in 1994.

War crimes originate from the laws and customs of war, which **accord** certain protections to individuals in conflict situations. This is an important process of transforming societies into rights-respecting democracies and addressing past human rights violations. Investigation and trials of leaders who have committed crimes and caused mass political or military atrocities is a key demand of victims of human rights abuses. Prosecution of such criminals can play a key role in restoring dignity to victims and trusting relationship in society. The prosecution of severe international crimes is necessary to enforce international law and deliver justice to victims.

As International Criminal Law is a **subset** of International Law, its sources are those of International law. These are usually considered to be those enumerated in Article 38(1) (a)–(d) of the Statute of the International Court of Justice, in other words, **treaty law**, customary law, general principles of law and, judicial decisions and the writings of the most qualified publicists. As will be seen, all of these have been used by the **ad hoc Tribunals**. They are available for use by national courts in so far as the national system concerned will allow. Treaty-based sources of International Criminal Law,

either directly or as an aid to interpretation, include the **1907 Hague Regulations**, the 1949 Geneva Conventions and their additional protocols and the Genocide Convention.

In 1993 The International Law Commission had commenced preparatory work for the establishment of a permanent International Criminal Court (ICC). In 1998, at a Diplomatic Conference in Rome, the Rome Statute establishing the ICC was signed. The court can generally exercise jurisdiction only in cases where the accused is a national of a state party, the **alleged crime** took place on the territory of a state party or a situation is referred to the United Nations Security Council. ICC is designed to complement existing national judicial systems and can exercise its jurisdiction only when national courts are unwilling or unable to investigate or prosecute such crimes. Primary responsibility to investigate and punish crimes is therefore left to individual states.

## 2. Decide if the text contains:

- a) the evaluation of future development of international criminal law
- b) the way of transforming societies into right-respecting democracies
- c) sources of international law
- d) the most important areas of international law

## 3. Answer the following questions.

1. What jurisdiction does ICC usually exercise?
2. Is the International Criminal Law a new one?
3. What are the sources of International Criminal Law?
4. Why was Nuremberg Tribunal set up?
5. What is the purpose of International Criminal Law?
6. Why is the prosecution of international crimes necessary?

## 4. Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. The aim of international law is to make law-breakers accountable for their crimes.
2. International law governs the rights and responsibilities of citizens.
3. The law protecting human rights was to put an end to serious atrocities.
4. After World War II Allied powers set up a tribunal to try only war crimes.
5. The ICC can exercise jurisdiction only in cases when the accused is a national of a state party.

## 5. Write questions to the following answers. Rearrange their order according to the text.

1. \_\_\_\_\_?  
In cases where the accused is a national of a state party.

2. \_\_\_\_\_?

Yes, it does.

3. \_\_\_\_\_?

Treaty law, customary law, judicial decisions.

4. \_\_\_\_\_?

To try crimes against humanity committed under Nazi regime.

5. \_\_\_\_\_?

To prohibit serious atrocities and punish for them.

6. \_\_\_\_\_?

To enforce international criminal law and deliver justice to victims.

7. \_\_\_\_\_?

Tribunals were created in response to mass abuses of human rights.

8. \_\_\_\_\_?

Human Rights law, Humanitarian law and laws relating to state responsibility.

### 6. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.

1. to be subjected to penal sanction	a. массовые нарушения прав человека
2. to prohibit certain categories of conduct	b. осуществлять юрисдикцию
3. criminally accountable for the perpetration of crimes	c. подлежать уголовному наказанию
4. military atrocities	d. реагировать на вопиющие нарушения прав человека
5. to respond to egregious violations of human rights	e. дополнять существующие национальные судебные системы
6. to complement existing national judicial systems	f. подлежащие уголовной ответственности за совершение преступлений
7. mass abuses of human rights	g. запретить определенные категории поведения
8. to exercise jurisdiction	h. военные злодеяния

### 7. Use the following word combinations in the sentences of your own.

1. to pose a threat to
2. to comply with
3. the struggle against
4. to be suspected of
5. to take measures for (against)
6. to prevent from



**8. Complete the chart with the name of a country, language, capital and the people of the country.**

Country	Capital	Language	People
Germany			The German
			The French
		Dutch	
Austria			
		Somali, Arab	The Somalis
India	New-Delhi		
Iraq			The Iraqi
		Syriac	The Syrians
Rwanda		Somali, Arab	

**9. Read and translate.**

**Rome Statute of The International Criminal Court**

“In the prospect of an international criminal court lies the promise of universal justice. That is the simple and suring hope of this vision. We are close to its realization. We will do our part to see it through till the end. We ask you to do yours in our struggle to ensure that no ruler, no State, no junta and no army anywhere can abuse human rights with impunity. Only then will the innocents of distant wars and conflicts know that they, too, may sleep under the cover of justice; that they, too, have rights, and that those who violate those rights will be punished”.

Kofi Annan, United Nations Secretary General (1997–2006)

**10. Match the objectives of the International Criminal Court (1–6) with their descriptions (a–f).**

1. to achieve justice for all	a. Those who commit murders are often not punished.
2. to end impunity for abuse of human rights	b. The International Criminal Court aims at discouraging war criminals through the possibility of trial.
3. to help end conflicts	c. Courts set up specifically to try war criminals do not deliver justice.
4. to remedy the deficiencies of ad hoc tribunals	d. Not everyone receives a fair trial.
5. to take over when national criminal justice institutions are unwilling or unable to act	e. Local courts may not always be able to deliver justice.
6. to deter future war criminals	f. The International Criminal Court will try to stop wars.

**11. Make a presentation on one of the following topics.**

1. The history of the ICC.
2. The structure and composition of the ICC.
3. Crimes within the jurisdiction of the ICC.
4. Enforcement of the ICC's decisions.

For more information see Appendix II, Text 7.

**Unit 2. Types of International Crimes****Lead-in**

1. What is the word “apartheid” associated with?
2. What countries suffered from apartheid?

**Vocabulary**

1. to assert — утверждать
2. abolition of slavery — отмена рабства
3. segregated places — зоны изоляции
4. incompatible — несовместимый
5. to condemn — осуждать
6. abhorrent — отвратительный, гнусный
7. conscience of mankind — совесть человечества
8. to bar (syn. to ban, to prohibit, to forbid) — запрещать
9. human dignity — человеческое достоинство
10. ethnic cleansing — этническая чистка
11. looting — грабеж, мародерство
12. compulsory labor — принудительный труд
13. property seizure — изъятие (конфискация) имущества
14. family separation — разделение семьи
15. humiliation — унижение
16. indignity — унижение достоинства, оскорбление
17. suppression — подавление, запрещение

**1. Read the text. What is the essence of Article I and Article II of 1948 Convention on prevention and punishment of crime of genocide?**

The word “racism” was regarded as “a system that **asserts** the superiority of one racial group over another”. The founder of the doctrine of racism is considered Joseph de Gobineau who suggested it in his “Essay on the impact of the racial composition of the considered companies on the characteristics of their culture, social system, economic models, and ultimately their civilizational success”.

Racism in the US has existed since the foundation of the State. Society founded by white people differed on their national and religious ground. Slavery was nominally abolished in 1863 by Abraham Lincoln and in fact

by the 13<sup>th</sup> Amendment to the Constitution which was adopted in 1865. But even after the **abolition of slavery** racism has existed for a long time in the form of **segregated places** “for whites only”.

In South Africa racism is presented in the form of apartheid. Apartheid, the most systematic form of institutionalized racial discrimination and segregation, has been practiced by the Government of South Africa as official policy since 1948. Under apartheid, black South Africans who represent the overwhelming majority of the people of the country are denied their most fundamental rights and liberties. They are not allowed to participate in the political life of the country and are subject to hundreds of repressive laws and regulations.

Both the General Assembly and the Security Council have declared apartheid **incompatible** with the Charter of the United Nations. The Assembly has **condemned** apartheid as a crime against humanity and the Security Council which has considered the question since 1950 has termed apartheid **abhorrent** to the **conscience of mankind**. South Africa, however, consistently maintained that the matter was within its domestic jurisdiction and that, under the Charter, the United Nations **was barred from** considering it. Since 1955 South Africa has not participated in the discussion of the question by the UN. In 1963 the General Assembly adopted the UN Declaration on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination which affirms that discrimination between human beings on the ground of race, colour or ethnic origin is an offence to **human dignity**. Two years later, on 21 December 1965, the International Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Racial Discrimination was adopted.

Genocide is a crime against humanity. It encompasses serious attacks on human dignity or a grave humiliation or degradation of human beings. The Rome Statute requires that they are committed as a part of a widespread or systematic attack directed against any civilian population with knowledge of the attack. Such crimes can be committed in the time of peace as well as during an armed conflict. In the Resolution of 11<sup>th</sup> December 1945, the UN General Assembly for the first time defined the crime of genocide and determines it to be a crime under international law. On 9<sup>th</sup> December 1948 the draft resolution of the Convention on prevention and punishment of crime of genocide was adopted:

Article I. The contraction parties confirm that genocide whether committed in time of peace or war is a crime under international law which they undertake to prevent or punish.

Article II. In the present convention, genocide means any of the following acts committed with the intent to destroy, in whole or in part, a national, ethnic, racial or religious group as such: killing members of the group; causing serious bodily or mental harm; deliberately inflicting on the group conditions of life to bring about its physical destruction in whole or in part; imposing

measures intended to prevent births within the group; forcibly transferring children of the group to another group.

**Ethnic cleansing** is frequently distinguished from genocide on the grounds that its purpose is to forcibly remove people from where they live rather than to kill them. Ethnic cleansing is typically accompanied by rape, **looting, compulsory labor, property seizure, family separation, humiliation**, denial of medical treatment and other **indignities**. Ethnic cleansing may not go as far as genocide but exists on the same continuum of evil. Its intent is the same even if the means chosen are different.

The racial policies of South Africa have been discussed by the UN since 1946, when India complained that South Africa had enacted legislation against South African of Indian origin. During the 1950s, the General Assembly made repeated appeals to the South African Government to revise its apartheid policies in the light of the principles of the Charter. Beginning in 1962, the wider question of the policies of apartheid of the South African Government was included in the agenda of the General Assembly. As to elimination of racial discrimination on 30 November 1973 the General Assembly adopted the International Convention on the **Suppression and Punishment of the Crime of Apartheid**. The Convention provides that international responsibility for the crime of apartheid shall apply to individuals, members of organizations and institutions and representatives of a State whether residing in the State in which the acts are perpetrated or elsewhere.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What did the 13<sup>th</sup> Amendment to the US Constitution abolish?
2. What form of racism was in South Africa?
3. Why did the UN declare apartheid in South Africa incompatible with the Charter of the United Nations?
4. When was genocide defined for the first time as a crime under international law?
5. What is the difference between ethnic cleansing and genocide?
6. How does the Rome Statute define genocide?
7. What acts can be considered genocide?
8. What does the United Nations do to prevent international crime?

## 3. Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. Offences can be classified as international because of the behavior of the offenders.
2. Racial discrimination and segregation has been practiced as official policy by the Government of South Africa since 1948.
3. In 1963 the General Assembly affirmed that discrimination on the ground of race, color or ethnic origin was an offence to human dignity.

4. Since 1955 South Africa has not participated in the discussion of the question of apartheid by the UN.

5. The South African Government revised its apartheid policies in the light of the principles of the Charter.

6. In 1948 the draft resolution of the Convention on prevention and punishment of crime of genocide was adopted.

7. Forcibly removing people from their places is qualified as racism.

**4. Match the verbs with the nouns to make collocations.**

1. to consider	a. individual
2. to abolish	b. resolution
3. to represent	c. slavery
4. to deny	d. crime
5. to participate	e. measures
6. to define	f. the majority
7. to draft	g. discussion
8. to impose	h. legislation
9. to enact	i. question
10. to apply to	j. fundamental rights

**5. Some words are similar in spelling and pronunciation but have different meanings. Match words with their definitions and use them in the sentences of your own.**

1. Accept / except

a) \_\_\_\_\_ besides, excluding

b) \_\_\_\_\_ receive, assume

2. Economic / economical

a) \_\_\_\_\_ being careful of resources, cheap

b) \_\_\_\_\_ relating to money, finance, industry, trade

3. Besides / beside

a) \_\_\_\_\_ in addition

b) \_\_\_\_\_ near, next to

4. Council /counsel

a) \_\_\_\_\_ an assembly of people meeting regularly to discuss something

b) \_\_\_\_\_ a barrister conducting a case

5. Eligible /illegible

a) \_\_\_\_\_ no clear enough to be read

b) \_\_\_\_\_ satisfying the necessary conditions

**6. Work in pairs. Match types of genocide with preventive measures. Report to the class.**

<p>1. Classification: All cultures have categories to distinguish people between ‘us and them’ by ethnicity, race, religion, or nationality. Bipolar societies are most likely to have genocide.</p>	<p>a. To combat this stage, membership of these militias should be outlawed. Their leaders should be denied visas for foreign travel. The UN should impose arms embargoes on governments and citizens of countries involved in genocidal massacres and create commissions to investigate violations.</p>
<p>2. Symbolization: We give names or other symbols to the classification. We name people or distinguish them by colour or dress; and apply symbols to members or groups. Classification and symbolization are universally human and do not necessarily result in genocide unless they lead to another stage, dehumanization. When combined with hatred, symbols may be forced upon unwilling members of pariah groups.</p>	<p>b. Prevention may mean protection for moderate leaders or assistance to human rights groups.</p>
<p>3. Dehumanization: One group denies the humanity of the other group. Members of it are equated with animals, vermin, insects or diseases. Dehumanization overcomes the normal human revulsion against murder. At this stage, hate propaganda in print and on hate radios is used to vilify the victim group.</p>	<p>c. The main preventive measure at this early stage is to develop universalistic institutions that transcend ethnic or racial divisions, that actively promote tolerance and understanding.</p>
<p>4. Organization: genocide is always organized, usually by the state, often using the police to provide deniability of state responsibility. Special army units or the police are often trained and armed. Plans are made for genocide killings.</p>	<p>d. At this stage, a Genocide Emergency must be declared. If the political will of the great powers, regional alliances, or the UN Council can be mobilized, armed international intervention should be prepared, or heavy assistance provided to the victim group to prepare for its self-defense.</p>

5. Extremists drive the groups apart. Hate groups broadcast polarizing propaganda. Laws may forbid intermarriages or social interaction.	e. To combat symbolization, hate symbols can be legally forbidden (swastikas) alike the hate speeches.
6. Preparation. Victims are identified and separated out because of their ethnic or religious identity. Death lists are drawn up. Members of victim groups are forced to wear identifying symbols. Their property is expropriated. They are often segregated into ghettos, deported into concentration camps, or confined to a famine-struck region.	f. Local and international leaders should condemn the use of hate speech and make it culturally unacceptable. Leaders who incite genocide should be banned from international travel and have their foreign finances frozen. Hate radio stations should be shut down, and hate propaganda banned. Hate crimes and atrocities should be promptly punished.

**7. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations.**

1. intent to destroy a national ethnic group
2. to use hate propaganda to vilify the victim group
3. to promote tolerance and understanding
4. ethnic cleansing
5. to set up (establish) an international tribunal
6. to expropriate property
7. predictable but inexorable
8. grave humiliation
9. to inflict harm deliberately
10. to wear identifying symbols

**8. Watch the video “Apartheid Explained”. Answer the following questions.**

1. What explanation of apartheid is given?
2. What features of apartheid are mentioned in the video?
3. How are people classified in South Africa?
4. Can non-white people enjoy the same rights as white people?
5. How were public facilities separated for the white and non-white?
6. Did the people of South Africa try to resist apartheid?

**9. Comment on the following idea.**

Restoration of apartheid is impossible nowadays.

For more information see Appendix II, Text 13.

## Unit 3. War Crimes

### Lead-in

1. What crimes can be referred to as war crimes?
2. Is it a crime to kill civilians at wartime?

### Vocabulary

1. unanimous — единодушный
2. ill treatment — жестокое обращение
3. prisoners of war — военнопленные
4. killing of hostages — убийство заложников
5. plunder of public or private property — расхищение государственной или частной собственности
6. wanton destruction of cities — бессмысленное уничтожение городов
7. devastation — опустошение
8. capture — захват
9. destruction — разрушение
10. to suspend — приостанавливать
11. incidental killing of civilians — непреднамеренное убийство мирных жителей
12. deliberate killing of defenseless civilians — умышленное убийство беззащитных мирных жителей
13. infantryman — пехотинец
14. colonial and guerrilla wars — колониальные и партизанские войны
15. methods of warfare — методы ведения войны
16. conventional weapons — обычные виды вооружения
17. non-detectable fragments into the human body — не различимые фрагменты в теле человека
18. booby traps — мины-ловушки
19. incendiary weapons — зажигательное оружие
20. antipersonnel mines — противопехотные мины

### 1. Read the text.

The most authoritative definition of war crimes was formulated in the London Charter of 8 August 1945, which established the International Military Tribunal at Nuremberg. It was adopted in 1946 by the General Assembly of the United Nations in a **unanimous** resolution approving the work of the Nuremberg Tribunal.

War crimes are violations of the laws which include murder, **ill treatment**, or deportation to slave labor of civilian population in occupied territory, murder or ill treatment of **prisoners of war** or persons on the seas, **killing of hostages**, **plunder of public or private property**, **wanton destruction of cities**, towns or villages or **devastation** not justified by international law.



War crimes have the following elements: (1) they are acts of violence against civilian populations, prisoners of war, or in some cases enemy soldiers in the field; (2) they are committed primarily by military personnel; (3) they are in violation of the laws and customs of war; (4) they are not justified by military necessity; and (5) they often involve weapons or military methods of unusual cruelty or devastation.

In the broadest sense, a war crime is any act of violence by military personnel that exceeds the rules of war. War is by its very nature violent, and military acts in wartime—killing, **capture**, and **destruction**—would otherwise be considered criminal under the laws of all civilized societies. But every society **suspends** the application of its criminal law when dealing with military acts in time of war.

However, whatever immunity is accorded by these military acts in war extend only to conduct that conforms to the rules of war. Thus, the **incidental killing of civilians** in a bombing raid as part of a military operation is not murder because it is justified by military necessity. But the **deliberate killing of defenseless civilians by infantrymen**, in Vietnam or by militia groups in Bosnia or Kosovo, remains murder.

After World War II, the United Nations took over the major effort to codify the rules of war. It passed the Genocide Convention in 1948; a resolution against nuclear weapons in 1961; and a resolution on human rights, calling for protection of civilian populations in time of war, in 1968. In the early 1970s the United Nations also urged the International Committee of the Red Cross (ICRC) to develop new agreements on rules of war that would take account of **colonial and guerrilla wars**, as well as new **methods of warfare** not covered by earlier conventions.

Another conference was held in Geneva in 1980, to consider restrictions on the use of certain **conventional weapons**. Three additional protocols were prepared in 1981, covering weapons that introduce **non-detectable fragments into the human body**: mines, **booby traps**, other devices and **incendiary weapons** (United Nations Conference on Prohibitions or Restrictions on Use of Certain Conventional Weapons).

Those common principles have not varied in their basic outlines for thousands of years: defenseless civilians should not be attacked, prisoners should not be killed, the wounded should be cared for, and weapons of unnecessary destructiveness should not be used.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What grievous crimes are considered war crimes?
2. What are the elements of war crimes under international law?
3. How can a war crime be defined?
4. Can immunity extend to deliberate killing civilians?
5. What measures did the UN undertake to codify the rules of war?
6. What common principles remain the same as for the methods of warfare?

**3. Read the text again and find the names of the documents...**

1. relating to the protection of victims of international and non-international armed conflicts;
2. banning the use and production of antipersonnel mines;
3. dealing with colonial wars of liberation.

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. следовать правилам ведения войны
2. ООН призывает к защите гражданского населения в военное время
3. заключать соглашения
4. ограничение использования обычного вооружения
5. причинять чрезмерные и необоснованные страдания гражданскому населению
6. убийство мирных граждан, оправданное военной необходимостью

**5. Complete the sentences with the verbs *look, see, observe or watch*.**

**Look** is used when you are trying to see something or someone

**See** means to notice people and things with your eyes

**Observe** means to see and notice; to act in accordance with

**Watch** means to look at something for a period of time, usually something which moves or changes

1. Sometimes we have to ... what we say not to hurt people's feelings.
2. Every citizen has the right to..... his or her national and cultural traditions.
3. The criminal had plastic surgery to ..... different.
4. I would like to ..... these countries being given greater assistance.
5. We continue to ... civilians paying the heaviest price during armed conflicts.
6. The police supervise and instruct the interrogators to ... these provisions.
7. They staged everything to ... like they were assaulted.
8. Every citizen has the right to ... his or her national and cultural traditions.
9. The prisoners were forced to ... people being tortured.
10. Our mission was simply to ... events.

**6. Work in pairs. Read the text. Summarize the information on common features and differences between war crimes and crimes against humanity. Complete the table.**

War crimes and crimes against humanity are terms referring to inhumane acts committed during times of conflict.

The international community condemns war crimes, crimes against humanity and grave consequences are sanctioned by the United Nations to any country or organization that participates in these acts.

War crimes, however, is a broader term compared to crimes against humanity. Crimes against humanity refer to acts of violence targeting a particular group for their race, religion or political orientation. War crimes can be any act of violence that may or may not fall in that particular definition.

Crimes against humanity must also be either a part of government policy or is being condoned or promoted by the government. War crimes, on the other hand, do not need to be condoned by the perpetrator’s government.

Crimes against humanity are usually attributed to the government or country as a whole while war crimes can be attributed to a specific person.

The definition of crimes against humanity includes the period before the war. Germany in World War II, for example, committed crimes against humanity and the Jewish people. War crimes, by definition, only include acts committed within the period of the war.

Common features	Different features

## Unit 4. Transnational Crimes

### Lead-in

**Read the text. When transnational crimes can be considered as international crimes?**

There are other crimes of international concern which have a huge impact on people throughout the world and on global economic development. Crimes which are the subject of international suppression Conventions but for which there is as yet no international criminal jurisdiction. They are transnational crimes.

These are crimes which have actual or potential transboundary effect and crimes which are intra-state, but which offend a fundamental value of the international community. Thus, when criminal acts, deals and schemes violate the laws of more than one country, they are used to be transnational crimes.

The prevention and punishment of transnational crimes requires cooperation among governments and among law enforcement agencies. A growing number of agreements are being concluded to provide for this in relation to such crimes as drug trafficking, piracy, slavery, terrorism offences, torture, apartheid, enforced disappearances, transnational organized crime inclu-

ding people trafficking, smuggling migrants and illegal arms trafficking, and corruption. Some of these crimes are also crimes of customary international law or are international crimes when committed in certain circumstances (for example as crimes against humanity).

They include those which were listed as ‘treaty crimes’ in Draft Statute for ICC, but which were excluded from the Rome Statute in the course of the negotiations. Particular transnational crimes may in the future come to be dealt with as international crimes within an international jurisdiction, if States believe that the values they conflict with are sufficiently important to the international community and that international prosecution is an effective way of dealing with them.

### Vocabulary

1. to pin down — дать определение, уточнять
2. wanted criminals — разыскиваемые преступники
3. fingerprinting, fingerprints — отпечатки пальцев
4. specialist-led crime teams — группы по борьбе с преступностью, возглавляемые специалистами
5. tackling drug trafficking — борьба с наркотрафиком
6. to stem a rising tide of murder — остановить нарастающую волну убийств
7. to go hand-in-hand — идти рука об руку
8. immature legal systems — незрелые правовые системы
9. economic integrity — экономическая целостность
10. to whet the appetite — поднять аппетит

### 1. Read the text. Put the paragraphs (A-G) in the correct order according to the plan:

- 1) Introduction
- 2) Examples of transnational crimes
- 3) Factors that facilitate transnational crime
- 4) Threatening situation in many countries
- 5) Development of the world gangs
- 6) What makes transnational crime so attractive
- 7) Possible solution of the problem

A) The situation is really particularly threatening in many countries because of the close relationship of state structures with organized crime.

Official corruption reflects only part of the situation. When the law is inadequately enforced, people feel that they can go unpunished. Territory borders have come to represent challenges rather than permanent barriers to the international gangsters.

B) Transnational crime is clearly a difficult phenomenon **to pin down**, but a solution may be found in a successful union of strategic intelligence

and a joined-up approach to law and policing. It often requires coordinated action between government departments of different states, involving police, customs and even military authorities. Interpol keeps a database of the world's most **wanted criminals**, physical evidence is becoming increasingly important with DNA profiles and **fingerprinting** as principal weapon in tracing criminals. **Specialist-led crime teams** are operating in Europe with the aim of **tackling drug trafficking** and organized crime. They help intelligence officers to investigate pornography, firearms and drug offences.

C) In addition to the crimes mentioned above, transnational crime also embraces a variety of activities, such as tobacco smuggling, arms trafficking, credit card fraud, forgery, counterfeiting and people smuggling.

D) As crime becomes increasingly international, police forces around the globe are working together **to stem a rising tide of murder**, drug trafficking and money laundering.

E) Although the world has long known of the US Mafia and the Chinese Triads, the gangsters of Italy have only become globally infamous in the last decade or so. There has been a huge explosion in crime because the gangsters have mutated into global players.

F) Experts believe that the rise of transnational crime has been facilitated by two sets of factors. Firstly, globalization. Freer border controls, the internet, e-mail provide new opportunities for criminals. Secondly, economic and technological change **goes hand-in-hand** with political instability. The end of the cold war increased cross-border movements, old systems collapsed and new governments struggled with **immature legal systems**. As a result, transnational crime is fast becoming a key factor threatening both the **economic integrity** and political stability of a number of strategically significant states and regions.

G) The global narcotics industry makes enough money and employs enough people **to whet the appetite** of the most industrialist or management consultant. It is an industry that does not advertise and guarantees a big profit everywhere. Illegal drugs make up 8 per cent of world trade, which is worth more than the combined global market for textiles, clothing, iron and steel.

## 2. Identify the crimes according to their descriptions.

1.	buying and selling drugs illegally.
2.	the crime of making fake bank notes, coins, jewelry, perfume, footwear, clothing.
3.	transferring illegal or stolen money into an ordinary bank account, usually by a complex process to avoid detection.
4.	the crime of copying money, documents in order to deceive people.

5.	the condition of being sexually interested in children: sexual activity with children.
6.	offence of taking goods illegally in or out of a country, without paying any tax.
7.	paying money or giving your favour to someone, usually an official, so that he does what you want.
8.	a secret organization of criminals that originates in Sicily

**3. Translate into English the names of transnational crimes given below.**

**Основные виды транснациональных преступлений  
по классификации ООН  
(Палермская конвенция ООН против транснациональной  
организованной преступности 15.11.2000 г.)**

- ➔ 1. Отмывание денег
- ➔ 2. Терроризм
- ➔ 3. Кража произведений искусства
- ➔ 4. Кража интеллектуальной собственности
- ➔ 5. Незаконная торговля оружием
- ➔ 6. Угон самолетов
- ➔ 7. Морское пиратство
- ➔ 8. Захват наземного автотранспорта
- ➔ 9. Мошенничество в сфере страхования
- ➔ 10. Кибер-преступления
- ➔ 11. Экологические преступления
- ➔ 12. Торговля людьми
- ➔ 13. Торговля человеческими органами
- ➔ 14. Незаконная торговля наркотиками
- ➔ 15. Ложное банкротство
- ➔ 16. Вмешательство в легальный бизнес
- ➔ 17. Коррупция, подкуп общественных деятелей

**4. Work in pairs. Translate the Russian part of the text into English. Consult the English part of the text if necessary.**

1.	Транснациональной преступности способствует также бесконтрольное использование через Интернет передовых информационных технологий для планирования и осуществления связанных с наркотиками преступлений.	Transnational crime is further facilitated by the blatant use of sophisticated information technology, via the Internet, in the planning and execution of drug-related crimes.
2.	К числу перечисленных в вышеупомянутом докладе шести блокам международных угроз относятся транснациональная преступность и терроризм.	Transnational crime and terrorism are among the six clusters of international threats identified in the aforementioned report.
3.	Транснациональная преступность приобретает все более сложные формы, в частности в том, что касается киберпреступности, которая не поддается контролю на национальном, региональном и международном уровнях.	Transnational crime is becoming increasingly sophisticated, in particular cybercrime, challenging existing national, regional and global control measures.
4.	Так, в тихоокеанских государствах транснациональная преступность оказалась подчинена влиянию группировок, базирующихся за пределами данного региона.	Transnational crime in the Pacific region, for example, has come to be dominated by groups from outside the region.
5.	Транснациональная преступность — это враг, от которого страдают все страны мира.	Transnational crime is an enemy that hurts every country on the planet.

**5. Study the reasons and conditions of the transnational crime development. Translate them into English.**

**Причины и условия развития транснациональной преступности**

- увеличение взаимной зависимости государств
- упрощение международных связей и сообщений
- прозрачность национальных границ
- формирование мировых финансовых, товарных и иных рынков
- глобальный рост мировой торговли
- формирование спроса на незаконные товары и услуги
- революция в области средств коммуникаций



## Unit 5. Piracy

### Lead-in

1. What do you think the concept of piracy imply?
2. Comment on the following statement:

“The easiest way to stop piracy is not by putting antipiracy technology to work. It’s by giving those people a service that’s better than what they’re receiving from the pirates”.

Gabe Newell

### Vocabulary

1. Geneva Convention on the High Seas — Женевская конвенция об открытом море
2. to pursue the pirate ship — преследовать пиратский корабль
3. disobedience — неповиновение
4. to sink — потопить
5. to be inclined to — склоняться к
6. to infer — делать вывод
7. to be traced — зд. относиться
8. depredation — разрушение, разграбление
9. inciting — подстрекательство

#### 1. Read the text.

Piracy is a criminal offence known to mankind since ancient times. The term “piracy” means sea robbery. Piracy refers to the international criminal offences which are regulated by the national law of individual states and public international law. The international legal fight against piracy is regulated by **Geneva Convention on the High Seas** of 1953 and 1958. According to these conventions no State has the right to patronize piracy, any military ship is entitled **to pursue the pirate ship** on the high seas and in case of **disobedience** or resistance **to sink** it, members of the crew of the pirate ship are subject to criminal liability.

Objective side of the crime is characterized by the attack on the ship or riverboat committed with violence or threat of violence. The subjective aspect of the crime is expressed in the direct intent. Piracy is recognized as a crime committed repeatedly by using weapons or items used as weapons.

This long-forgotten phenomenon reappeared in the mid-1970s, manifesting itself in the illegal shipment of narcotics from South and Central America in yachts and fishing vessels to the United States. Piracy in South-East Asia is believed to be controlled by organized crime. Criminologists **are inclined to infer** that synchronized attacks on vessels in different parts of the world are not coincidental and can **be traced** to a single center.

Under the Law of the Sea piracy consists of any of the following acts:

- a) any illegal acts of violence or detention, or any act of **depredation**, committed for private ends by the crew or the passengers of a private ship



or a private aircraft, and directed on the seas, against another ship or aircraft, or against persons or property on board such ship or aircraft; against a ship, aircraft, persons or property in a place outside the jurisdiction of any State;

b) any act of voluntary participation in the operation of a ship or of an aircraft with knowledge of facts making it a pirate ship or aircraft;

c) any act of **inciting** or of intentionally facilitating an act described in subparagraph (a) or (b).

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What does the term “piracy” mean?
2. What laws regulate piracy?
3. What do Geneva Conventions on the High Seas state?
4. What are objective and subjective aspects of this crime?
5. Are synchronized attacks on vessels in different parts of the world coincidental?
6. Does the Law of the Sea give definition to piracy?

## 3. Read the article. Agree or disagree with the statements below.

Internet piracy is the unlawful reproduction and/or distribution of any copyrighted digital file that can change hands over the Internet. This can be done with music files, videos and movies, e-books, software, and other materials. Those who engage in this type of piracy can often conduct their entire operation on the Internet, including advertising and sales. It has become a worldwide crime problem, because of the relative ease with which it can be committed, even over long distances.

One of the first types of files that were pirated in a widespread way were digital music files, often known as MP3s, because of the mp3 file extension they carry. Several very popular file sharing programs were developed beginning in the 1990s that facilitated the transfer of these types of files, both legitimate and pirated. These file sharing programs have been the subject of a great deal of scrutiny, then and since, because many people have used them to obtain copyrighted video and music without paying for it.

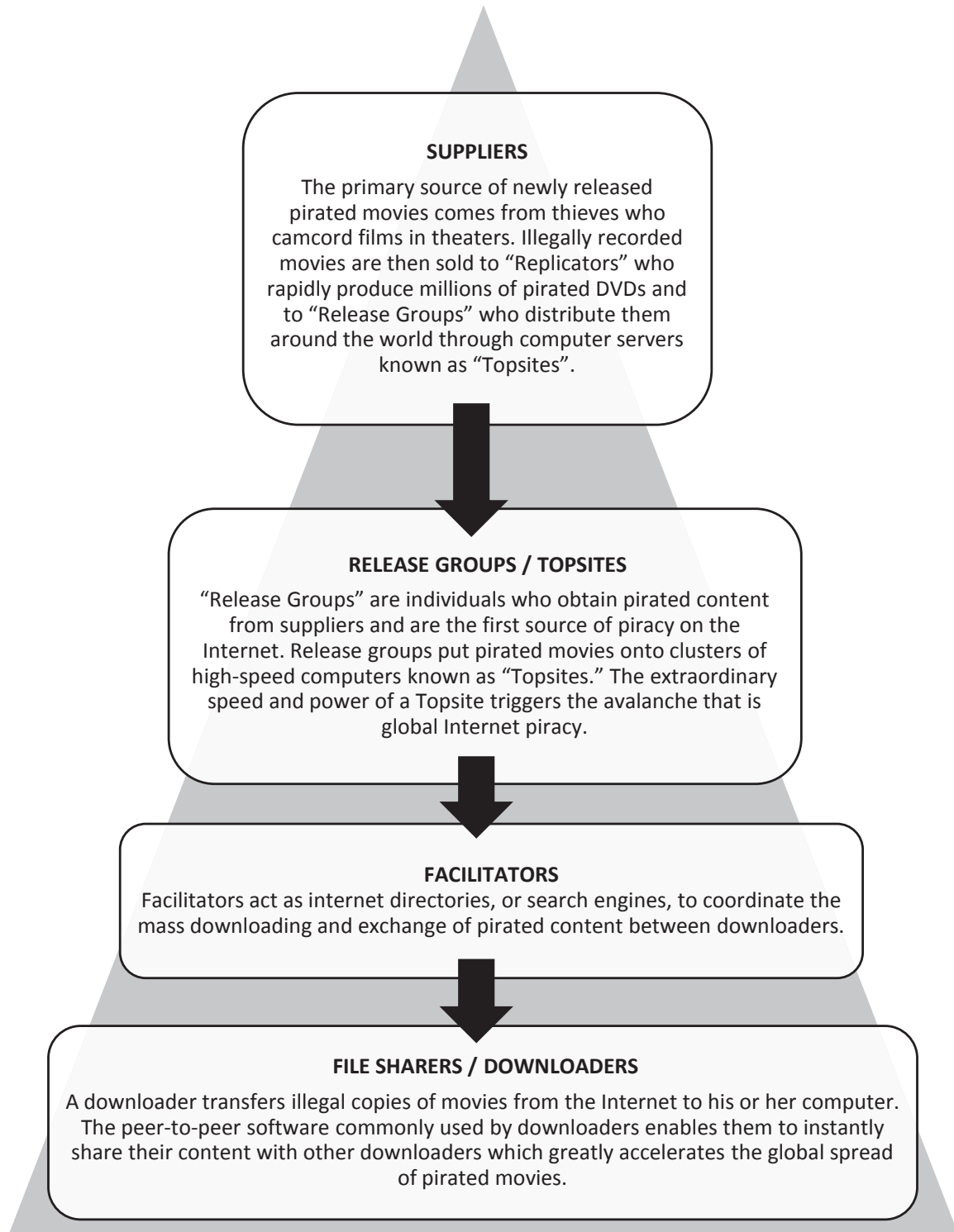
Although the laws of different countries on downloading and distribution of digital files may vary slightly, obtaining music and movies through Internet piracy is illegal in most countries.

One way that consumers can avoid unintentionally purchasing counterfeit or pirated software is to do so at a retail location or from a website they know they can trust, such as the one run by the software publisher. In these cases, the software will almost always come with a certificate of authenticity. It will also be easy to contact the publisher in the event of any problems in shipping or the operation of the software.

1. Internet piracy is connected with the distribution of any copyrighted digital file.
2. Music files, videos and movies, e-books software can't be subjects of piracy.

3. Piracy can't be named as a worldwide crime problem.
4. One of the first types of files that were pirated in a widespread way were MP3 files.
5. Nobody scrutinized popular file sharing programs.
6. Certificate of authenticity is a guarantee of purchasing an authentic software.

**4. Study the following scheme and answer the following questions.**



1. What is the primary source of newly released pirated movies?
2. How are the computer servers for distributing pirated DVDs called?
3. Who are “Release groups”?
4. What advantages of a Topsite give impulse to the global internet piracy?
5. What is the role of facilitators?
6. How do ordinary downloaders accelerate the global spread of pirated movies?

**5. Fill in the gaps using words and word combinations from the box.**

a) the organized crime gang; b) robbing the ship and crew; c) falls under three categories; d) funding or political settlement; e) to make a quick profit; f) for ransom; g) associated with; h) taking over fishing boats; i) coordinate an ambush; j) depletion of some fish stocks; k) equipment; l) hijacking the ship

Piracy occurring either at sea or in ports \_\_\_1\_\_\_, all of which exist in the Straits of Malacca — opportunistic pirate seizing a chance \_\_\_2\_\_\_; “gang” pirate belonging to an organized crime syndicate; and “political” pirate \_\_\_3\_\_\_ a terrorist or secessionist group. The first type operates in small groups with fast boats going after easy targets - often \_\_\_4\_\_\_ of money and valuables. The second type \_\_\_5\_\_\_ with sophisticated arms and \_\_\_6\_\_\_ — stealing a large cargo load, kidnapping the crew \_\_\_7\_\_\_, or \_\_\_8\_\_\_, which requires careful planning, skilled seamanship, significant funding, and some cooperation from port authorities. In recent years, fish piracy has been connected to the organized crime in Asia. Due to the \_\_\_9\_\_\_, the value of some species has soared, resulting in pirates taking over fishing boats with their prized catch or poaching shellfish, such as abalone, in the Pacific Ocean. The third type seeks \_\_\_10\_\_\_ in an act of pirate terrorism — conducting similar operations as the \_\_\_11\_\_\_ with the objective of sustaining terrorist activity.

**6. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. Due to international laws, ships cannot carry weapons on board, so it's difficult for them to defend themselves against a pirate attack.
2. A lot of pirates make their money through ransom charges, so they prefer to keep their hostages in good health as this means that governments are reluctant to hit back at them.
3. Modern statistics states that pirates earn an average of \$120,000 per crew they kidnap.
4. In Somalia, pirates are actually an integral part of the community. This is because often the district gets a cut of whatever profits pirates make, which they use for education and healthcare.

5. Most carriers don't report piracy incidents as insurance rates skyrocket and they have to pay for the following investigation, which can cost \$1,000 per day.

6. The source of modern piracy in Somalia was the collapse of their government and the rest of the world seized the chance to take advantage of Somalia's new unprotected and unenforced state. Neighboring countries began illegally fishing and dumping waste in their waters and angry Somalian fishermen began to board these vessels and demand the fees that should have been collected by the government.

**7. Look at the list of crimes and crime categories below. Divide crimes into categories. Some crimes can be listed under more than one category.**

1. actual bodily harm
2. aiding and abetting (= assisting) an offender
3. arson
4. assault
5. battery
6. bigamy
7. blackmail
8. breach of the Official Secrets Act
9. bribery
10. burglary
11. careless or reckless driving, driving without a license or insurance
12. committing a breach of the peace
13. conspiracy
14. contempt of court
15. vandalism and hooliganism
16. fraud in order to obtain property
17. drug dealing
18. drunk in charge /drink driving
19. embezzlement
20. espionage
21. forgery
22. grievous bodily harm
23. handling stolen goods
24. manslaughter
25. misuse of drugs
26. money laundering
27. murder
28. obstruction of the police
29. pedophilia
30. perjury
31. piracy
32. possessing weapons

33. rape
34. robbery
35. terrorism
36. theft
37. treason

<b>Crimes against person</b>
<b>Crimes against property</b>
<b>Public order offences</b>
<b>Road traffic offences</b>
<b>Sexual offences</b>

<b>Political offences</b>
<b>Offences against justice</b>

**8. Make a presentation on one of the following topics.**

1. Joined efforts in combating international crime
2. Piracy
3. The Nuremberg International Military Tribunal

**Unit 6. Corruption**

**Lead-in**

1. Have you ever faced any form of corruption?
2. Does the RF government take any measures to counter corruption?

**Vocabulary**

1. cronyism - кумовство, блат
2. influence peddling — торговля влиянием
3. to be done under color of law — действовать в соответствии с законом
4. kleptocracy — клептократия
5. nepotistic government — правительство, оказывающее протекцию своим родственникам
6. misusing funds from tax payments — злоупотребление средствами из налоговых платежей
7. to conceal the source of money — скрыть источник денег
8. bookkeeping gymnastics — бухгалтерские махинации
9. purportedly legitimate means — якобы законные средства
10. price-fixing conspiracies and corporate mergers — ценовые сговоры и слияния корпораций

11. competitive vigor — конкурентоспособность
12. International Corruption Unit (ICU) — Международный отдел по борьбе с коррупцией
13. gratuities — чаевые
14. contract extortion — вымогательство контракта
15. bid rigging — сговор на торгах
16. collusion — сговор
17. product substitution — замена продукта
18. items/services invoiced without delivery — товары/услуги, выставленные в счет без доставки
19. diversion of goods — отклонение, переадресование товара
20. conspiracy — заговор

### 1. Read the text.

Corruption is one of the most severe forms of crime that has a widespread manifestation in modern societies. Corruption, as a criminal offense, cannot be identified as organized crime, but it operates in close collaboration with it, with open agreements as well as drawing benefits from each other and especially in the organized protection of criminal activity. In terms of criminal law, corruption includes the following offences: bribe receiving (passive bribery), bribe giving (active bribery) and affected trading, in order to misuse public authorizations of the responsible official person as well as any misuse of the official position of the perpetrator in order to gain personal benefits.

Corruption can take different forms. Forms of corruption vary, but include bribery, extortion, **cronyism (nepotism)**, patronage, **influence peddling**, graft and embezzlement. Corruption may facilitate criminal enterprises such as drug trafficking, money laundering, and human trafficking.

Political corruption is the use of powers by government officials for illegitimate private gain. An illegal act by an officeholder constitutes political corruption only if the act is directly related to their official duties, **is done under color of law** or involves trading in influence. Misuse of government power for other purposes, such as repression of political opponents and general brutality, is also considered political corruption.

**Kleptocracy** is a form of political corruption in which the ruling government seeks personal gain and status at the expense of the governed, literally meaning “the rule by thieves”. Typically, this system involves the embezzlement of state funds at the expense of the population. Kleptocracies are generally associated with dictatorships, oligarchies, military juntas, or other forms of autocratic or **nepotistic governments** in which external oversight is impossible or does not exist. The effects of kleptocratic regime or government on a nation are typically adverse in regard to the welfare of a state’s economy, political affairs and civil rights. Kleptocratic governance typically ruins prospects of foreign investment and drastically weakens the domestic market and cross-border trade. As kleptocracies often embezzle money from their

citizens by **misusing funds from tax payments**, or engage heavily in money laundering schemes, they tend to heavily degrade quality of life for citizens.

Money laundering is the process of creating the appearance that large amounts of money obtained from serious crimes, such as drug trafficking or terrorist activity, originated from a legitimate source. There are three steps involved in the process of laundering money: placement, layering, and integration. Placement refers to the act of introducing “dirty money” into financial system in some way; layering is the act of **concealing the source of that money** by way of a series of complex transactions and **bookkeeping gymnastics**; and integration refers to the act of acquiring that money in **purportedly legitimate means**.

Antitrust laws are the laws that are applied to virtually all industries and every level of business, including manufacturing, transportation, distribution and marketing. They prohibit a variety of practices that restrain trade. Examples of illegal practices are **price-fixing conspiracies and corporate mergers**. They reduce **competitive vigor** of particular markets and try to achieve or maintain monopoly power.

The FBI’s **International Corruption Unit (ICU)** has program management responsibility over cases involving international fraud against the government and international corruption of federal public officials. These cases typically involve bribery, **gratuities, contract extortion, bid rigging, collusion**, conflicts of interest, **product substitution, items/services invoiced without delivery, diversion of goods**, and corporate and individual **conspiracies** at various levels.

The United Nations Convention against Corruption (UNCAC) is a multilateral convention negotiated by members of the United Nations. It is the first global legally binding international anti-corruption instrument. UNCAC requires that Member States implement several anti-corruption measures which may affect their laws, institutions and practices. These measures aim at preventing corruption, including domestic and foreign bribery, embezzlement, trading in influence and money laundering.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. Why is corruption considered to be the most serious crime?
2. What forms of corruption are described?
3. What factors can lead to corruption?
4. What are social consequences of corruption?
5. What steps are taken by the UN to combat corruption?

## 3. Agree or disagree with the following statements. What information is not mentioned in the text?

1. Corruption is an organized crime drawing benefits protection of criminal activity.
2. The commercial bribery prohibits the payment of bribes of private persons and businesses and this type of bribe is often referred to as kickback or payoff.



3. Any abuse of the official authority in order to gain personal benefits. is corruption.

4. The use of powers by government officials, repression of political opponents that directly related to their official duties is considered political corruption.

5. Such forms of autocratic or nepotistic governments in which external oversight is impossible or does not exist is a type of political corruption.

6. The act of introducing “dirty money” into financial system and then concealing the source of that money by way of a series of complex transactions is a form of political corruption.

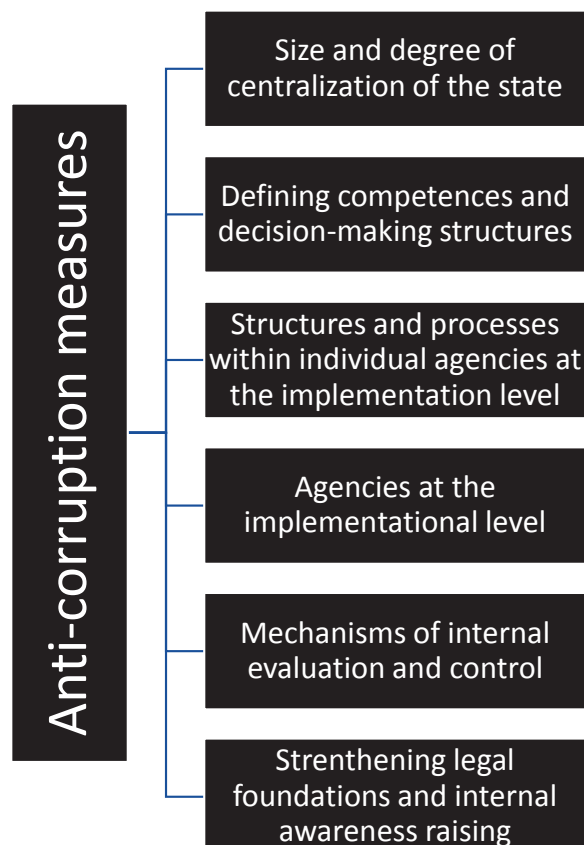
7. Another method used to launder funds involves instances in which suppliers never receive payment for products and “clean” money is legally invested in the economy.

8. Antitrust laws regulate price-fixing conspiracies and corporate mergers, reduce competitive vigor of particular markets and restrain trade.

9. The United Nation’s global legally binding international anti-corruption document is aimed at preventing corruption, including domestic and foreign bribery, embezzlement, trading in influence and money laundering.

10. Corruption poses a threat to the countries by damaging diplomatic relations, supporting insurgent activity and potentially strengthening criminal and terrorist organizations.

**4. Study the following anti-corruption measures. Tell which of them is the most effective. Give your grounds.**



### 5. Match abbreviations with the Russian equivalents.

1. International Criminal Court (ICC)	a) Конвенция против пыток
2. International Criminal Tribunal for the former Yugoslavia (ICTY)	b) Организация африканского единства
3. International Criminal Tribunal for Rwanda (ICTR)	c) Конвенция ООН против коррупции
4. International humanitarian law (IHL)	d) Международный комитет Красного креста
5. Convention against Torture (CAT)	e) Международный военный трибунал
6. The United Nation Convention against Corruption (UNCAC)	f) Международное гуманитарное право
7. International Committee for the Red Cross (ICRC)	g) Международный уголовный суд по бывшей Югославии
8. International Military Tribunal (IMT)	h) Международный суд по уголовным делам
9. Organization of African Unity (OAU)	j) Международный уголовный суд по Руанде

### 6. Write a short essay “My anti-corruption policy” (not less than 50 words).

#### 7. Role-play.

Act out a press-conference on corruption, its roots, forms, adverse impact and ways of combatting it.

The participants of the press-conference are representatives of the government, lawyers, bankers, businessmen, journalists, etc.

The roles are distributed beforehand. Make use of mass media applications and the Internet resources to speak at the press-conference.

It is necessary to appoint two chairpersons. They are to prepare topical questions and be able to comment on the issues under the discussion.

## Unit 7. Human Trafficking

### Lead-in

1. Can human trafficking be considered as an international crime? Give your arguments.

2. Can we say that human trafficking is a disaster of modern times? Why?

### Vocabulary

1. human exploitation — эксплуатация людей
2. under the menace — под угрозой
3. human trafficking — торговля людьми
4. vulnerability of people — уязвимость людей
5. to turn humans into merchandise — превращать людей в товар
6. to push people towards drastic actions — толкать людей на крайние меры
7. small-town dwellers — жители небольших городов
8. family violence — насилие в семье
9. persons without permanent residence — люди без определенного места жительства
10. to use the extreme plight of these people — использовать крайне тяжелое положение этих людей
11. to turn migrants into debtors — обращать мигрантов в должников

#### 1. Read the text and match the titles with the paragraphs.

1. People from other states
2. Main reasons
3. The most probable victims
4. The notion of the subject
5. Providers and consumers

a) The problem of **human illegal exploitation** has got the tremendous size and terrible forms nowadays. The International Labor Office gave the definition of forced labor and it includes “all work or service which is exacted from any person **under the menace** of any penalty and for which the said person has not offered himself voluntarily”. If we consider the notion from the point of view of international crime, we should assume that **human trafficking** is one of its greatest manifestation. Today human trafficking as an international act includes modern-day slavery, sex trafficking, illegal organ removal and the use of child soldiers. These criminal activities involve the coordinated efforts of three or more individuals to achieve some common benefit, and frequently, these activities involve more than one country.

b) According to the official mass media, the majority of forced laborers are located in the Asia and Pacific region with industrialized countries and Latin America and Caribbean taking the second and the third places respectively. According to the UN about 4 million people — women, children and men — are trafficked annually. On the top of the countries of these people origin are eleven countries: Belarus, Moldova, Russia, Ukraine, Albania, Bulgaria, Lithuania, Romania, China, Thailand and Nigeria. The destina-

tion country list mostly consists of Belgium, Germany, Greece, Israel, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, Thailand, Turkey, the United Arab Emirates, Saudi Arabia, Scandinavia and the US.

c) Why do humans become victims of illegal sale and slavery in the 21<sup>st</sup> century? The **vulnerability of people** facing recruiters who **turn humans into merchandise** can be explained by poverty and the failure to find employment. This **pushes people towards drastic actions** and makes them use risky economic behaviour models and agree to illegal migration, exploitation and slave labour.

d) The list of the most vulnerable social groups that become victims of human trafficking may be long. The main of them are children, adolescents, youth, and young women, villages and **small-town dwellers**, recent migrants to the cities, people with low education levels and lack of professional education. Traffickers engage the unemployed, persons psychologically inclined towards risky behaviour, children from “at risk” families (poor, families of alcoholics, dysfunctional families, persons experiencing **family violence** etc.), drug addicts; prostitutes, single mothers; **persons without permanent residence**, etc.

e) Labour migrants, who come to industrial countries in order to earn money for their families and themselves are ready for any illegal employment and thus are very likely to become victims of human traffickers. Human traffickers **use the extreme plight** of these people for getting profit. The actual organizers or accomplices in human trafficking apply various methods to retain migrants and force them to work. These methods may be confiscation of passports; non-payment of wages; violence; psychological pressure; threat of reporting to the authorities; as well as **turning migrants into debtors** with the help of fines and deductions. As a result, migrants have to put up with unsatisfactory labor and accommodation conditions, lack of wages, overtime, lack of opportunity to leave the facility, poor nutrition or starvation conditions, beatings and unacceptable living conditions.

## 2. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.

1. для того, чтобы заработать деньги
2. сделать мигрантов должниками
3. наиболее уязвимые социальные группы
4. жертвы незаконной торговли и рабства
5. незаконная эксплуатация людей
6. под угрозой наказания
7. продаются ежегодно
8. наркозависимые (наркоманы)

9. дети из семей группы риска
10. вынуждены мириться с неудовлетворительными условиями труда и проживания

### 3. Match collocations from 1 to 5 with their definitions from A to E.

1. Human trafficking
2. Modern-day slavery
3. Sex trafficking
4. Illegal organ removal
5. The use of child soldiers

A) Kidnapping and selling humans for work or service which is required from them under the menace of penalty and for which the said humans have not offered themselves voluntarily.

B) Unlawful recruitment or use of youngsters under 18 through force, fraud, coercion, frequently as combatants by armed forces.

C) Control over victims, use of force, drugs, emotional tactics as well as financial means are used. In certain circumstances, various forms of violence, such as gang rape and mental and physical abuse may be applied.

D) Trafficking in human beings, under force, for further transplanting parts of their bodies for other individuals who pay for these “services” to the traffickers making great illegal financial profit.

E) An act of recruiting, transporting, transferring, harboring or receiving a person through a use of force, coercion or other means, for the purpose of exploiting them.

### 4. Match the words with their synonyms.

1. laborer	a. borrower
2. humans	b. ravin
3. recruiter	c. criminal associate
4. victim	e. seller
5. adolescent	f. non-resident
6. dweller	e. inhabitant
7. migrant	g. youngster
8. trafficker	h. hirer
9. unemployed	i. people
10. drug addict	j. employee
12. accomplice	k. drug-dependent
13. debtor	l. jobless

**5. Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions.**

1. How can human trafficking be classified?
2. Why do people obey recruiters?
3. What are groups “at risk”?
4. What are the methods to retain migrants and force them to work?
5. What are the countries mainly involved in human trafficking?
6. What are the consumers?
7. Why are some countries “human traffickers” and the others — “consumers”?
8. What should a person do not to become a victim of recruiters?

**6. Read the words below. They are of international origin. Use as many words as possible in the sentences (story) of your own.**

To exploit, production, service, to dominate, domestic, to pretend, to be manipulated, emotional tactics, effective, hotel industry, modeling contracts, familial, physically, psychologically or emotionally, to progress, tattoo.

**7. Read an excerpt of the interview on modern slavery. A young man tries to find the scheme of human trafficking. Render it to your partner in English.****— Как становятся рабами?**

— Банально. Вот, допустим, как вербуют людей на вокзальной площади крупного города? За появившимся там одиноким человеком наблюдают пару дней. Потом его пытаются напоить. Я сам переодевался в бездомного. Ко мне подошел человек, налил спиртного, только потом я узнал, что там был клофелин. Очнулся уже в автобусе по дороге в Махачкалу, на рынок рабов. Хорошо, что был обвешан датчиками, меня спасли еще в пути. Многих из малых городов манят хорошей зарплатой, а потом обманывают и увозят на кирпичные заводы. Или еще куда-то. Хотя завод — громко сказано. Обычно это чистое поле, никакой колючей проволоки или забора, вырыта яма с глиной — и рабский труд. Владельцы таких заводиков получают десятки миллионов прибыли. Ведь они не платят зарплату, налоги.

**— Почему люди не убегают тогда?**

— Пытаются, но их ловят, избивают до полусмерти и возвращают обратно в подвал. Рабов психологически ломают, спаивают или запугивают. Да и современное рабство — это не цепи или кандалы. Все куда проще. Отняли паспорт, и куда денешься без него?

**8. Work in pairs. Every line has the odd word. Write it out.**

### Child Soldiers

1. A child soldier is any of person under 18 years of age who is a part \_\_\_\_\_
2. of any kind of regular or irregular armed force or the armed group \_\_\_\_\_
3. in any capacity, were including but not limited to cooks, porters, \_\_\_\_\_
4. messengers, spies and anyone accompanying of such groups other \_\_\_\_\_
5. than family members. The definition does also includes girls \_\_\_\_\_
6. recruited for sexual purposes and for forced marriage. Such a \_\_\_\_\_
7. children are often enforced to have leave their homes, trafficked \_\_\_\_\_
8. to the territory of military conflicts and is made to participate in \_\_\_\_\_
9. hostilities under their threat of death.

## Unit 8. Sex Trafficking

### Vocabulary

1. sex trafficking — продажа людей в сексуальное рабство
2. forced labor — принудительный труд
3. to dominate three times over — в три раза превышать что-то
4. to obtain control over their victims — иметь контроль над жертвами
5. intimidation — запугивание
6. familial trafficking — незаконная семейная торговля чем-либо
7. pimp-controlled trafficking — торговля людьми, контролируемая сутенерами
8. a pimp — сутенер
9. affection — привязанность
10. gang human trafficking — торговля людьми, организованная бандой
11. lucrative — прибыльный

#### 1. Read the text and answer the question: who are the victims of sex trafficking and why?

The major form of **forced labor** is exploitation in spheres of production or service (about 70%). The sexual exploitation accounts for about 23% annually and transnational trafficking dominates **three times over** domestic cases.

In order to **obtain control over their victims**, traffickers use force, drugs, emotional tactics as well as financial means. In certain circumstances, they will even resort to various forms of violence, such as gang rape and mental and physical abuse. Sometimes the captors pretend to “love” and “need” the girls, even going so far as promise marriage and future stability. This is particularly effective with younger victims, because they are more inexperienced and therefore easily manipulated. Traffickers sometimes use threats, **intimidation**, and kidnapping as means of obtaining victims.

In some cases, traffickers approach very vulnerable women (including underage girls) to offer them “legitimate” work or the promise of an opportunity for education. The main types of work are in the catering and hotel industry, in bars and clubs, modeling contracts.

In some countries there is so called **familial trafficking**, where a victim is controlled by family members who allow her to be sexually exploited in exchange for something, such as drugs or money. For example, a mother may allow her boyfriend to abuse a child in exchange for a place to stay.

In **pimp-controlled trafficking**, the victim is controlled physically, psychologically or emotionally by a single **pimp**. The pimp first gains the trust of the victim and make her to become dependent on him. Once the victim is comfortable, the pimp moves to another stage, where he will ask the victim to perform sexual acts for him, which the victim will do because she believes it is the only way to keep the trafficker’s **affection**. The requests progress from there and it can be difficult for the victim to escape.

In **gang human trafficking** the victim is controlled by some persons. Gangs are more often turning to sex trafficking as it is seen as safer and more **lucrative** than drug trafficking. A victim controlled by gang trafficking may be sexually exploited by gang members as well as sold outside of the gang. They may tattoo their victims to show their ownership over them.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What is the major form of forced labor?
2. What methods do the traffickers use in order to obtain control over their victims?
3. Why are underage girls in a particularly risky position?
4. What is familial trafficking?
5. What is pimp-controlled trafficking?
6. What is gang human trafficking?

## 3. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.

банда, жертва, татуировка, перейти к следующей стадии, требования, завоевать доверие, в обмен на что-то, претворяться, неопытный, запугивание, стать зависимым от кого-то, сохранить чью-то привязанность

## 4. Translate from English into Russian in writing.

Sex trafficking is human trafficking for the purpose of sexual exploitation, including sexual slavery. Sex trafficking has two aspects of supply and demand. The sex exploitation is based on the interaction between the trafficker selling a victim (the individual being trafficked and sexually exploited) to customers to perform sexual services. Sex trafficking crimes are defined



in three ways: acquisition, movement, and exploitation. Sex trafficking is one of the biggest criminal businesses and is the fastest growing criminal industry in the world.

Most victims find themselves in coercive or abusive situations from which escape is both difficult and dangerous. Locations where this practice occurs span the globe and reflect an intricate web between nations, making it very difficult to construct viable solutions to this human rights problem.

### 5. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Исследователи отмечают, что сексуальное рабство играет значительную роль в распространении ВИЧ.

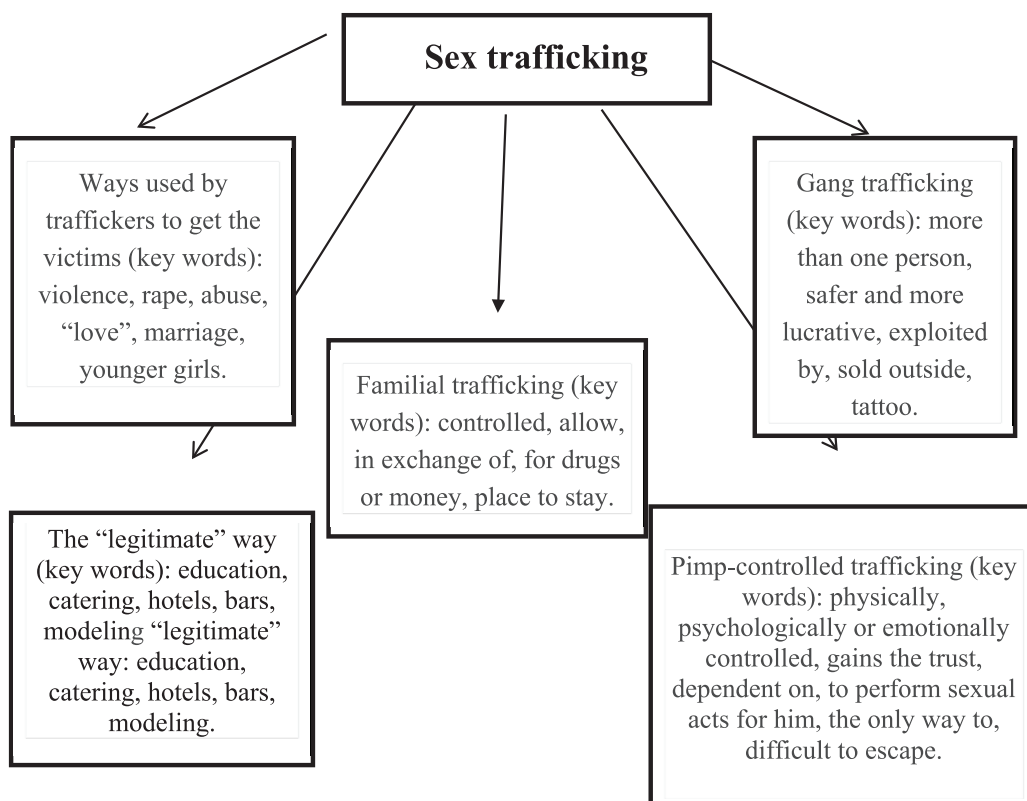
2. Работоторговцы часто употребляют в речи суданскую фразу «использовать раба, чтобы поймать рабов», означающую, что торговцы могут посылать «уже работающих девочек», чтобы набирать более молодых девушек в сексуальное рабство.

3. Западное присутствие в Косово, такое, как войска НАТО и гражданский персонал, вызвало резкий рост сексуальной работоторговли и насильственной проституции.

4. Торговля людьми — международный вид преступности, жертвами которого является большое число женщин.

5. После сексуального самой распространенной формой современного рабства считается принудительный труд.

### 6. Use the following cluster to speak on the topics of the text. Use the key words.



## Unit 9. International Organ Trafficking

### Lead-in

1. Transplanting human organs of people who were killed in road accidents is the usual practice. Their organs are still healthy and alive. Transplantation is the only way to save the life of people who are terminally ill. Do you know anything about the problem from films, books, periodicals?

2. Do you know anything about such form of terrorism as organ trafficking?

### Vocabulary

1. to estimate sth— оценивать что-либо
2. reduction in number — сокращение количества
3. available for transplant — пригодные для трансплантации
4. seatbelt legislation — законодательство (ПДД), связанное с необходимостью использования ремней безопасности в автомобиле
5. to become routine — становиться широко распространенным (обычным) делом
6. heart, kidney or pancreas — сердце, почки или поджелудочная железа
7. to be duped into believing — обманным путем заставить поверить

### 1. Read the text.

This illegal trade has risen to such a level that an **estimated** 10,000 black-market operations involving purchased human organs now take place. Among common terrifying disasters of our time is international organ trafficking that has become a growing trade.

The growth happens due to two factors. The first factor deals with the **reduction in number** of legitimate organs **available for transplant**. It happens partly due to better **seatbelt legislation**, which has cut the number of healthy young adults dying in road traffic accidents. This consequently increased the value of organs to be transplanted. Second is the fact that an increased number of people waiting for transplants have **become more routine** in recent years. As a result, organized criminals can now make a fortune from unethical clinics who will buy a **heart, kidney or pancreas** for wealthy patients.

It is now possible to order an organ on the internet. It's also possible, if you are poor, desperate, and willing to part with, say, a kidney, to make a deal with traffickers and sell it. Recent research by the World Health Organization (WHO) found that traffickers illegally obtain 7,000 kidneys each year around the world. A victim is usually promised to be paid from \$10,000 to \$12,000 per a kidney and then traffickers sell it for \$80,000-90,000 to the recipient.

Organ trafficking operates in various ways. Victims can be kidnapped and forced to give up an organ; some, out of financial desperation, agree to sell an organ; or they **are duped into believing** they need an operation and the organ is removed without their knowledge. Some victims are murdered to order if a large sum has been paid in advance.

The World Health Organization estimates that illegal organ trafficking accounts for five to ten per cent of all annually made transplants worldwide.

## 2. Complete the sentences according to the text.

1. The growth of illegal trade increased because...
  - a) it became easier to transport the organs.
  - b) of the two main reasons.
  - c) it became more available.
2. The number of transport accidents became not so numerous...
  - a) because drivers and passengers must use seatbelts while driving.
  - b) because of better legislation.
  - c) because seatbelts have become of better quality.
3. The queue of people who are waiting for organs in recent years...
  - a) has become shorter.
  - b) has become larger.
  - c) is a usual thing in our time.
4. A victim can make a deal with traffickers...
  - a) and sell his organ eight or ten times cheaper than they get.
  - b) and get nothing for it.
  - c) and give his organ for free.
5. Organs can be taken away in different ways:
  - a) victims give their organs by themselves.
  - b) they are made to be operated.
  - c) organs are taken by force.
6. Some people are duped into believing they need an operation because...
  - a) they really need an operation.
  - b) they believe that they are healthy.
  - c) they are forced to believe that the operation is necessary.

## 3. Fill in the gaps (1-5) with the appropriate sentences (a-e) to complete the text.

### Human Trafficking and Slavery in Modern Society

Human trafficking is one of the greatest known problems facing different countries. The most pertinent aspects of this topic include: who is trafficked, causes of trafficking, and the steps that have been and need to be taken to combat trafficking.

The people most affected by trafficking are women and children. The current economic situation in these countries sometimes makes it difficult for women to find employment and provide for their families, \_\_\_1\_\_\_.

Trafficking \_\_\_2\_\_\_ including government corruption, poverty and economic instability, inefficient legal systems and the incentive of financial gain in the trade. The corruption is so deep that many law enforcement officers are involved in the trafficking industry. The corruption is particularly problematic in neighboring countries with whom trade is conducted, as law enforcement and local police are often customers and \_\_\_3\_\_\_.

Another reason that trafficking continues to function with relative ease is because the legal systems in these countries are not well developed. Often-times offenders are not convicted and, if they are, their terms are minimal, \_\_\_4\_\_\_. Often, even if women are rescued, they remain scarred and they are not able to receive the legal and psychological help they need. Many are dragged back into trafficking.

Human trafficking is a complex issue that is difficult to address. Much more needs to be done to stop human trafficking, \_\_\_5\_\_\_ it will continue.

- a. but as long as it remains fueled by economic disparity and local corruption;
- b. have deals with the traffickers;
- c. is caused by a combination of factors;
- d. putting themselves and their children at high risk for trafficking;
- e. usually less than a year.

#### 4. Work in groups of four. Complete the table and report to the class.

What are the reasons for being a victim of human trafficking?	What is not to be done by a person to avoid becoming a victim of human trafficking?
1.	1.
2.	2.
3.	3.
4.	4.

#### 5. Role-play.

Conduct a round-table discussion on the topic “Measures to combat human trafficking”.

1. Choose the chairperson.
2. Focus on the following topics to make reports or presentations.

a) What measures do the United Nations Organization and its related agencies take in the context of human trafficking?

b) How does the legislation of the RF, the UK and the USA counter this phenomenon?

3. Use Internet resources.

4. In conclusion summarize different opinions on measures that shall be taken by international community to combat human trafficking. The participants make a resolution

## **Chapter IX**

# **TERRORISM AS A GLOBAL PROBLEM**

## **Unit 1. Classification of Terrorism**

### **Lead-in**

1. Is terrorism recognized as an international crime?
2. Which of the following international crimes pose the gravest threat to international security? Give your grounds.
  - a) Genocide
  - b) Drug trafficking
  - c) Trafficking in arms, human beings, organs
  - d) Corruption
  - e) Organized crime
  - f) Terrorism

### **Vocabulary**

1. holy duty — священный долг (обязанность)
2. oppression — угнетение
3. preemption — нанесение упреждающего удара
4. coercive power — силовые методы принуждения
5. to carry on a conflict without adversary realizing the nature of the threat — принимать участие в конфликте, когда противник не осознает реальную угрозу
6. to mistake terrorism for criminal activity — считать терроризм преступной деятельностью
7. nebulous concept — расплывчатое (неясное) понятие
8. beyond the immediate victim — помимо непосредственной жертвы
9. legitimate combatants — участники законных вооруженных формирований
10. with no regard for human life — не принимая во внимание жизнь людей
11. integral part of psychological warfare — неотъемлемая часть психологических методов ведения войны

## 1. Read the text.

Terrorism is not new, and even though it has been used since the beginning of recorded history it can be relatively hard to define. Terrorism has been described variously as both a tactic and strategy; a crime and a **holy duty**; a justified reaction to **oppression** and an inexcusable abomination. Obviously, a lot depends on whose point of view is being represented. Terrorism has often been an effective tactic for the weaker side in a conflict. As an asymmetric form of conflict, it confers **coercive power** with many of the advantages of military force at a fraction of the cost. Due to the secretive nature and small size of terrorist organizations, they often offer opponents no clear organization to defend against or to deter. That is why **preemption** is being considered to be so important. In some cases, terrorism has been a means **to carry on a conflict without adversary realizing the nature of the threat, mistaking terrorism for criminal activity**. Because of these characteristics, terrorism has become increasingly common among those pursuing extreme goals throughout the world. But despite its popularity, terrorism can be a **nebulous concept**.

Terrorism is a criminal act that influences an audience **beyond the immediate victim**. The strategy of terrorists is to commit acts of violence that draws the attention of the local populace, the government, and the world to their cause. The terrorists plan their attack to obtain the greatest publicity, choosing targets that symbolize what they oppose. The effectiveness of the terrorist act lies not in the act itself, but in the public's or government's reaction to the act. For example, in 1972 at the Munich Olympics, the Black September Organization killed 11 Israelis. The Israelis were the immediate victims. But the true target was the estimated 1 billion people watching the televised event.

There are three perspectives of terrorism: the terrorist's, the victim's, and the general public's. The phrase "one man's terrorist is another man's freedom fighter" is a view terrorists themselves would accept. Terrorists do not see themselves as evil. They believe they are **legitimate combatants**, fighting for what they believe in, by whatever means possible. A victim of a terrorist act sees the terrorist as a criminal **with no regard for human life**. The general public's view is the most unstable. The terrorists take great pains to foster a "Robin Hood" image in hope of swaying the general public's point of view toward their cause. This sympathetic view of terrorism has become an **integral part of their psychological warfare** and needs to be countered vigorously.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. How is terrorism described through history?
2. What is "asymmetric form of conflict"?
3. What is the modern description of terrorism?
4. Why is preemption considered to be so important?
5. What are the perspectives of terrorism?

**3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. to commit acts of violence
2. inexcusable abomination
3. secretive nature
4. to confer coercive power
5. to take great pains
6. to counter vigorously

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. при наименьших затратах
2. преимущества военной силы
3. преследовать крайние цели
4. оказать влияние на мнение общественности
5. поддерживать образ Робин Гуда
6. психологические методы ведения войны

**5. Complete the text using the appropriate forms of the words from the box.**

harm, civil, define, terror, politics, govern, exist

Terrorism is a term used to describe violence or other \_\_\_1\_\_\_ acts committed against \_\_\_2\_\_\_ by groups or persons for political or other ideological goals. Most \_\_\_3\_\_\_ of \_\_\_4\_\_\_ include only those acts which are intended to create fear or “terror”, are perpetrated for a \_\_\_5\_\_\_ goal, deliberately target “noncombatants”. Terrorism is sometimes used when attempting to force political change by: convincing a \_\_\_6\_\_\_ or population to agree to demands to avoid future harm or fear of harm, destabilization of an \_\_\_7\_\_\_ government, motivating a disgruntled population to join an uprising, escalating a conflict in the hopes of disrupting the status quo.

**6. Complete the table with nouns using appropriate suffixes (there might be more than one per a verb). Translate the nouns into Russian.**

Verb	Noun
to justify	justification
to oppress	
to abominate	
to represent	
to organize	
to preempt	
to commit	
to oppose	
to react	
to estimate	



**7. Match the words from the text with their definitions. Use them in the sentences of your own.**

1. Abomination	a) someone who fights against or opposes another, an enemy
2. Perspective	b) a person who disagrees with something and speaks against it or tries to change it
3. Oppression	c) the activity of fighting a war, often including the weapons and methods that are used
4. Cause	d) to react to something with an opposing opinion or action, or to defend yourself against something
5. Warfare	e) a particular way of considering something
6. To foster	f) a situation in which people are governed in an unfair and cruel way
7. Preemption	g) a socially valuable principle that is strongly supported by some people
8. Opponent	h) something regarded with disgust or hatred
9. To counter	i) a policy of launching a preemptive attack in order to prevent a suspected imminent attack
10. Adversary	j) to promote the growth or development of something, further, encourage

**8. Match types of terrorism with their descriptions.**

1. Political terrorism	a) Terrorism is an activity planned and intended to achieve particular goals. It is a rationally employed, specifically selected tactic, and is not a random act. Since the victims of terrorist violence are often of little import, with one being as good for the terrorists' purposes as another, victim or target selection can appear random or unprovoked. But the target will contain symbolic value or be capable of eliciting emotional response according to the terrorists' goals. Remember that the actual target of terrorism is not the victim of the violence, but the psychological balance.
2. Psychological terrorism	b) A terrorist act is a political act or is committed with the intention to cause a political effect. Clausewitz' statement that "war is a continuation of policy by other means" is taken as a truism by terrorists. They merely eliminate the intermediate step of armies and warfare, and apply violence directly to the political contest.

3. Coercive terrorism	c) Terrorist groups demand change, revolution, or political movement. The radical worldview that justifies terrorism mandates drastic action to destroy or alter the status quo. Even if the goals of a movement are reactionary in nature, they require action to “turn back the clock” or restore some cherished value system that is extinct. Nobody commits violent attacks on strangers or innocents to keep things “just the way they are.”
4. Dynamic terrorism	d) Violence and destruction are used in the commission of the act to produce the desired effect. Even if casualties or destruction are not the result of a terrorist operation, the threat or potential of violence is what produces the intended effect. For example, a successful hostage taking operation may result in all hostages being freed unharmed after negotiations and bargaining. Regardless of the outcome, the terrorist bargaining chips were nothing less than the raw threat of applying violence to maim or kill some or all of the hostages. When the threat of violence is not credible, or the terrorists are unable to implement violence effectively, terrorism fails.
5. Deliberate terrorism	e) The intended results of terrorist acts cause a psychological effect (“terror”). They are aimed at a target audience other than the actual victims of the act. The intended target audience of the terrorist act may be the population as a whole, some specific portion of a society (an ethnic minority, for example), or decision-making elites in the society’s political, social, or military populace.

**9. Read the opinion of a journalist. Agree or disagree with his point of view. Give your arguments.**

To solve the problem of global terrorism, we must try to find the roots of it, to analyze the actions of countries taken against terrorism. Mass media leads active struggle against terrorism but very often this process isn’t connected with well-known terrorists. They blame whole nations without any division. The consequences of such actions are predictable: people begin to hate not terrorists as a whole but correlate terrorists with definite nationalities, Arabic, for example.

Terrorism as a national phenomenon is a great problem and its understanding can help us to find the way out. Terrorism needs serious and responsible public attitude, but sometimes hiding after the generous aims of the liquidation of terrorism, politicians limited civil liberties of some nationalities. Internet sites and mass media can abuse position of some social and ethnic groups and give false information about them. All these and many other facts only promote terrorism. Aggressive attitude to the Arabic people and their religion causes fits of anger in Arabic countries and can even lead

to acts of terrorism. To avoid this national hatred, we must get acquainted with Arabic culture, traditions and religion, to understand that not all people in these countries support terrorism and that their religion doesn't propagate to kill people of other religions.

So, the first step is to take under rigid control mass media and Internet. Information about terrorism and terrorists must be objective and factual. Real facts are necessary for the correct understanding of the situation. Then it's necessary to give children and teenagers the real facts as they represent the future generation to rule the country. Subjective understanding of the matter should be minimized as subjective opinion causes emotional reaction while to solve this problem we must be guided only by common sense. To blame Islam in the existence of terrorism and to consider all Arabic people terrorists is silly and nonsensical. The name Islam means "peace" translated from the Arabic language. Examining Arabic Belief system, we find that aggressive actions have no place in it.

Terrorism being a global problem needs special attention and careful attitude. Exploring the roots of this phenomenon is necessary to find ways out. A special organization must be created. Its main aim would be to inform population about all acts of terror, to make them acquainted with Arabic and other cultures whose representatives have been terrorists, to get rid of national hatred. This organization would spend special meetings in colleges, universities and at schools where global problems could be discussed. It would form objective independent opinion that would help people to get together and overcome this trouble that endanger all lives.

### **10. Comment on the following.**

1. Peculiarities of modern terrorist activities.
2. Reasons why people join terrorist organizations today.

## **Unit 2. What is Terrorism?**

### **Lead-in**

1. What is the most horrifying terrorist attacks you have ever heard of?
2. Is it possible to stop terrorism? Give your arguments.

### **Vocabulary**

1. means of coercion — средство принуждения
2. to perpetrate for an ideological goal — совершать преступления с идеологической целью
3. deliberately target or disregard the safety of non-combatants (civilians) — умышленно ставить своей целью или игнорировать безопасность гражданского населения

4. to select terrorism for its political effectiveness — прибегать к терроризму с точки зрения его политической эффективности
5. a desire for social solidarity with other members of their organization — стремление к социальной солидарности с другими членами их организации
6. murky and undefined — смутный и неопределенный
7. use of violence against noncombatants — применение актов насилия против гражданского населения
8. collective violence interfering with the peace — коллективные акты насилия, препятствующие мирному процессу
9. to generate fear in the community — порождать страх в обществе
10. conscious design to create and maintain a high degree of fear for coercive purposes — осознанное решение вселять и нагнетать страх с целью применения методов принуждения
11. to induce terror — вызывать (порождать) ужас
12. to use the modalities and techniques of the genuine terrorist — использовать приемы и методы настоящих террористов
13. concerted campaign to capture control of the state — согласованные действия по установлению контроля над государством
14. pursuit of political objectives — достижение политических целей

### 1. Read the text.

Terrorism is, in the most general sense, the systematic use of terror especially as a **means of coercion**. At present, the International community has been unable to formulate a universally agreed, legally binding, criminal law definition of terrorism. Common definitions of terrorism refer only to those violent acts which are intended to create fear (terror), **are perpetrated for an ideological goal** (as opposed to a lone attack), and **deliberately target or disregard the safety of non-combatants (civilians)**.

Some definitions also include acts of unlawful violence and war. The history of terrorist organizations suggests that they do not **select terrorism for its political effectiveness**. Individual terrorists tend to be motivated more by a **desire for social solidarity with other members of their organization** than by political platforms or strategic objectives, which are often **murky and undefined**.

The word “terrorism” is politically and emotionally charged, and this greatly compounds the difficulty of providing a precise definition.

Terrorism has been practiced by a broad array of political organizations for furthering their objectives. It has been practiced by both right-wing and left-wing political parties, nationalistic groups, religious groups, revolutionaries, and ruling governments. One form is the **use of violence against noncombatants** for the purpose of gaining publicity for a group, cause, or individual.

The Task Force on Disorders and Terrorism of the USA classified terrorism into six categories.

- Civil disorder — A form of **collective violence interfering with the peace**, security, and normal functioning of the community.
- Political terrorism — Violent criminal behavior designed primarily **to generate fear in the community**, or substantial segment of it, for political purposes.
- Non-Political terrorism — Terrorism that is not aimed at political purposes, but which exhibits “conscious design **to create and maintain a high degree of fear for coercive purposes**, but the end is individual or collective gain rather than the achievement of a political objective”.
- Quasi-terrorism — The activities incidental to the commission of crimes of violence that are similar in form and method to genuine terrorism, but which nevertheless lack its essential ingredient. It is not the main purpose of the quasi-terrorists to **induce terror** in the immediate victim as in the case of genuine terrorism, but the quasi-terrorist **uses the modalities and techniques of the genuine terrorist** and produces similar consequences and reaction. For example, the fleeing felon who takes hostages is a quasi-terrorist, whose methods are similar to those of the genuine terrorist but whose purposes are quite different.
- Limited political terrorism — Genuine political terrorism is characterized by a revolutionary approach; limited political terrorism refers to “acts of terrorism which are committed for ideological or political motives, but which are not part of a **concerted campaign to capture control of the state**”.
- Official or state terrorism — “referring to nations whose rule is based upon fear and oppression that reach similar to terrorism or such proportions”. It may also be referred to as Structural Terrorism defined broadly as terrorist acts carried out by governments in **pursuit of political objectives**, often as part of their foreign policy.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. How is terrorism described by the Task Force on Disorders and Terrorism of the USA?
2. What do common definitions of terrorism refer to?
3. Why is it difficult to give a precise definition of terrorism?
4. Why do terrorists use violence against non-combatants?
5. How does the term “quasi-terrorism” differ from the term “terrorism”?

## 3. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.

1. иметь политическую и эмоциональную окраску
2. связанный с совершением преступления
3. способствовать достижению целей
4. юридически обязательный

5. оперативная рабочая группа по борьбе с терроризмом
6. захват заложников
7. сбежавший преступник
8. средства принуждения
9. приемы и методы настоящих террористов
10. предать гласности

**4. Consult the text and make collocations. Translate them into Russian. Use them in the sentences (stories) of your own.**

1. to base upon	a. the safety of non-combatants
2. to refer to	b. the high degree of fear
3. to disregard	c. violent acts
4. to further	d. fear and oppression
5. to interfere with	e. essential ingredient
6. to lack	f. publicity
7. to maintain	g. objectives
8. to gain	h. the peace, security

**5. Read the information on terrorism. Fill in the gaps with the appropriate words and word combinations from the box.**

a) the primary purpose, b) to intimidate politicians, c) international community,  
 d) the global problem, e) controversial, f) legally binding definition,  
 g) government agencies

Terrorism is \_\_\_\_ 1 \_\_\_\_ nowadays that endangers life of every person on the earth. \_\_\_\_ 2 \_\_\_\_ of all governments is to encourage and enable people to join their forces against terrorism and win it by common efforts.

The definition of terrorism has proved \_\_\_\_ 3 \_\_\_\_\_. Various legal systems and \_\_\_\_ 4 \_\_\_\_ use different definitions of terrorism in their legislation. Moreover, the \_\_\_\_ 5 \_\_\_\_\_ has been slow to formulate a universally agreed, \_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_\_ of this crime. These difficulties arise from the fact that the term “terrorism” is politically and emotionally charged.

As a whole terrorism means aggressive actions with the use of violence against ordinary civilians aimed \_\_\_\_ 7 \_\_\_\_\_. The term “terrorism” is often used to show that the actions taken by a group of people are violent, unlawful and immoral.

**6. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. It's impossible to exterminate the evil by another evil, and taking united aggressive actions against acts of terror can do nothing.
2. Aiming to get rid of terrorism, the war just lights the fire of hatred between different nationalities.
3. One person's freedom fighter is another person's terrorist.

For more information see Appendix II, Texts 8, 9.

### **Unit 3. The Financing of Terrorism: Sources, Methods, Channels, Organizations, Sponsorship**

#### **Lead-in**

1. What sources of financing terrorism do you know?
2. Terrorism is a global evil, but terrorists are still financed by different countries. Why?

#### **Vocabulary**

1. nefarious — бесчестный
2. conduit for the money — канал для движения денежных средств
3. flow of money on which they ride — денежный поток, с помощью которого террористы получают прибыль
4. to stem at the source — перекрыть (канал поступления денег) у самого источника
5. stringent financial procedures and controls — жесткие финансовые процедуры и меры контроля
6. to operate a hawala system from a back of a store — использовать неофициальные каналы для перевода денежных средств
7. criminal endeavor — покушение на преступление
8. a good measure of sophistication — высокая степень изощренности преступников
9. to become a matter of serious concern — стать предметом особой важности
10. to trace, intercept and prevent acts of terrorism — отслеживать, пресекать и предупреждать террористические акты
11. abundant resources — широкие финансовые возможности
12. funding constraints — ограничения в финансировании
13. to be not feasible — быть невыполнимым
14. to breed religious intolerance — породить религиозную нетерпимость

#### **1. Read the text.**

Terrorism has global reach in its activities and in its sources of funding. There are manifold sources operating through methods that may be legal

or illegal and sometimes even **nefarious**, and through routes that are often circuitous. Indeed, so-called charitable organizations are often used as a front to mobilize funds or serve as a **conduit for the money**. It is clear that if acts of terrorism are to be eliminated, the **flow of money on which they ride** must be **stemmed at the source**. This is one area in which **stringent financial procedures and controls** could be helpful. Equally important is the control that central banks must exercise in the financial sector, and the banking system in particular, to ensure greater accountability and better record keeping. Realistically, however, as long there is someone who **operates a hawala system from a back of a store**, money will keep flowing. No less important is the cooperation between countries and the enforcement of international conventions.

A recent article on the transfer of money in Dubai notes that the authorities counted 429 suspicious money transfer operations between August 2001 and May 2003. Of these, only 46 cases were thoroughly investigated because there was little support from other countries involved, including Britain, Switzerland and the United States. Finally, education systems that teach jihad (holy war) as the highest calling for the individual and **breed religious intolerance** must be reformed. The financing of terrorism is a subterranean universe governed by secrecy, subterfuge, and **criminal endeavors**; but also, **a good measure of sophistication** and an understanding of the global financial system. It is best described as octopus with tentacles spreading across vast territories as well as across a wide range of religious, social, economic and political realities. Shutting the flow of money to terrorist organizations will require international cooperation at all levels, and the results will be far from certain. Money is the engine that drives terrorist acts, and it is not surprising that the financing of terrorism **has become a matter of serious concern** for those responsible for **tracing, intercepting and, if possible, preventing acts of terrorism**.

The events of September 11 have heightened this concern. According to Interpol, the international police organization, “the frequency and seriousness of international terrorist acts are often proportionate to the financing that terrorist groups might get”. The September 11 attack, with its complex planning, preparation and execution, would not have been possible without **abundant resources**. On the other hand, **funding constraints** have often limited the scope of an attack.

One case was the bombing of the Egyptian embassy in Islamabad, Pakistan. According to Ayman al-Zawahiri, Osama bin Laden’s right hand, his group wanted to take revenge for the “evil alliance” between Egypt and the United States. Their first choice of target was the American Embassy in Islamabad; if bombing that target **was not feasible**, their second choice was “a Western embassy famous for its historic hatred



for Muslims”; their third choice was the Egyptian embassy. In the end, funding was the deciding factor. In the words of al-Zawahiri: “A short time before the bombing of the Egyptian embassy the assigned group told us that they could strike both the Egyptian and American embassies if we gave them enough money. We had already provided them with all that we had, and we couldn’t collect more money. So, the group focused on bombing the Egyptian embassy”.

In another case, Ramzi Yusef, the convicted mastermind behind the 1993 bombing of the World Trade Center admitted that, due to the shortage of funds, the terrorists were unable to build as large a bomb as they had intended.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What is the nature of sources operating through methods of terrorist acts?
2. What is used to mobilize funds as a channel for the money?
3. Why is it necessary to stop the flow of money?
4. What must be changed to decrease religious influence?
5. What is the issue of serious concern for counter-terrorism organizations?
6. What are the well-known sources of financing terrorism?

**3. Find combinations with the word “money” in the text. Use them in the sentences of your own.**

**4. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. There are manifold sources operating through models that may be legal or illegal.
2. It is clear that if acts of terrorism are to be eliminated, finances on which they ride must be stemmed at the very beginning.
3. Cooperation between countries and the enforcement of international conventions are called to foster terrorist activity.
4. Terrorism is financed by a world-famous subterranean union.
5. Money is the engine that drives terrorist acts.
6. According to Interpol, the European police organization, the frequency and seriousness of international terrorist acts are often proportionate to the financing that terrorist groups might get.

**5. Find in the text synonyms to the following words.**

Huge, agreement, to implement, complicated, various, dishonorable, indirect, to guarantee, useful, strict, assistance, questionable, deficit, to eradicate.

**6. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.**

1. convicted mastermind	a. операции по переводу подозрительных денежных сумм
2. enforcement of international conventions	b. мстить, отомстить за что-то
3. record keeping	с. перекрыть денежный поток
4. global reach	d. обеспечение выполнения международных конвенций
5. a back of a store	e. осужденный идейный вдохновитель
6. sources of funding	f. недостаток денежных средств
7. shut the flow of money	g. глобальный характер
8. shortage of funds	h. ведение учета
9. take revenge for something	i. неофициальный канал информации
10. suspicious money transfer operation	j. источники финансирования

**7. Match the words from the text with their definitions.**

1. accountability	a. an effort to do or attain something
2. to drive	b. a trick or a dishonest way of achieving something
3. concern	c. to stop something unwanted from spreading or increasing
4. to stem	d. giving money, food, or help free to those who are in need because they are ill, poor, or have no home
5. funding	e. a situation in which someone is responsible for things that happen and can give a satisfactory reason for them
6. endeavor	f. money given by a government or organization for an event or activity
7. to eliminate	i. a traditional system of transferring money used in Arab countries and South Asia, whereby the money is paid to an agent who then instructs an associate in the relevant country or area to pay the final recipient
8. subterfuge	g. something that affects or is of importance to a person; affair; business
9. charity	k. to remove or take out; get rid of
10. hawala	l. to force someone or something into a particular state, often an unpleasant one

**8. Make the summary of the text. Report to the class.**

For more information see Appendix II, Text 16.

## Unit 4. Funds for Terrorism

### Lead-in

1. Can funds for terrorism be legitimate?
2. Is it possible to freeze terrorist funds?

### Vocabulary

1. tangible or intangible, movable or immovable — материальные или нематериальные, движимые или недвижимые
2. global reach both in terms of activities and in terms of its sources of funding — широкое распространение на международном уровне как деятельности, так и источника финансирования
3. daunting — ошеломляющий
4. definitely relevant — несомненно актуальный
5. war of weaponry and solicitors — противостояние средств вооружений и права
6. commingle legitimate with illegitimate sources of funding — сочетать законные и незаконные источники финансирования
7. forging passports, smuggling militant Muslims and asylum seekers into Germany — подделка паспортов, незаконную переправку в Германию мусульманских боевиков и беженцев

### 1. Read the text.

The International Convention for the Suppression of the Financing of Terrorism of 1999 defines funds for terrorism to mean assets of every kind, whether **tangible or intangible, movable or immovable**, however acquired, and legal documents or instruments in any form, including electronic or digital, evidencing title to, or interest in, such assets, including, but not limited to, bank credits, travelers checks, money orders, shares, securities, bonds, drafts, letters of credit.

Terrorism today has a **global reach both in terms of activities and in terms of its sources of funding**. As the title of a recent article in the Wall Street Journal on the activities of one individual suspected of financing terrorism in Spain poignantly read: “Mapping the Trail of Terror Money Proves **Daunting**”.

In response to US measures to freeze terrorist funds, the Al-Qaeda leader Osama bin Laden defiantly, and with a good measure of exaggeration, stated: “By the grace of Allah, Al-Qaeda has more than three different alternative financial networks”. Al-Qaeda, he said, “is being run around the world by well-educated young men. We do not have a few hundred or a few thousands but hundreds of thousands of highly educated young men who were well aware of these things and know the alternatives”.

Perhaps not in direct response, but **definitely relevant**, is the retort by the US Attorney General John Ashcroft who said: “The war against terrorism

is a war of accountants and auditors, as well as a **war of weaponry and solicitors**".

The methods of raising funds often **commingle legitimate with illegitimate sources of funding**, the individual parts of the mix becoming not only untraceable to their source, but virtually indistinguishable from each other. On the one hand, funds may derive from legitimate charitable organizations but, on the other hand, funds may come from credit card fraud, smuggling, protection rackets, extortion, violation of intellectual property rights, and front businesses.

A former Al-Qaeda operative, Shadi Abdullah, a Jordanian national, admitted raising hundreds of thousands of dollars by **forging passports, smuggling militant Muslims and asylum seekers into Germany** and, most important, by fraudulently soliciting contributions for allegedly religious or humanitarian purposes.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What assets does the Convention define?
2. How many financial networks did Al-Qaeda have according to Osama bin Laden?
3. What are the sources of terroristic funds?
4. What are the methods of raising funds?

**3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. bank credits
2. travelers checks
3. money orders
4. shares, securities
5. bonds, drafts
6. letters of credit
7. credit card fraud
8. smuggling
9. protection rackets
10. extortion

**4. "Mapping the trail of terror money proves daunting". What does it mean? Consult the dictionary if necessary.**

**5. Read the text and match the titles with the paragraphs.**

- a) Unofficial actions taken by officials or functionaries of a regime.
- b) Government terrorizes its own population.
- c) The provision of safe haven or physical basing for the terrorist organization.
- d) The participation of states in terrorism.

- e) Resort to violence by nations and states.
- f) Terrorism under official sanction.

### **State Sponsored Terrorism**

1) Is there a difference between terrorism and the use of specific tactics that exploit fear and terror by authorities normally considered “legitimate”? Nations and states often resort to violence to influence segments of their population or rely on coercive aspects of state institutions. Just like the idea of equating any act of military force with terrorism described above, there are those who equate any use of government power or authority versus any part of the population as terrorism. This view also blurs the lines of what is and is not terrorism, as it elevates outcomes over intentions. Suppression of a riot by law enforcement personnel may in fact expose some of the population (the rioters) to violence and fear, but with the intent to protect the larger civil order. On the other hand, abuse of the prerogative of legitimized violence by the authorities is a crime.

2) But there are times when national governments will become involved in terrorism or utilize terror to accomplish the objectives of governments or individual rulers. Most often, terrorism is equated with “non-state actors”, or groups that are not responsible to a sovereign government. However, internal security forces can use terror to aid in repressing dissent, and intelligence or military organizations perform acts of terror designed to further a state’s policy or diplomatic efforts abroad.

Three different ways that states can engage in the use of terror are:

- Governmental or “State” terror
- State involvement in terror
- State sponsorship of terrorism

3) Governmental or “State” terror. Sometimes referred to as “terror from above”, where a government terrorizes its own population to control or repress them. These actions usually constitute the acknowledged policy of the government and make use of official institutions such as the judiciary, police, military, and other government agencies. Changes to legal codes permit or encourage torture, killing, or property destruction in pursuit of government policy. After assuming power, official Nazi policy was aimed at the deliberate destruction of “state enemies” and the resulting intimidation of the rest of the population. Stalin’s “purges” of the 1930s are examples of using the machinery of the state to terrorize a population. The methods he used included such actions as rigged show trials of opponents, punishing family or friends of suspected enemies of the regime, and extra-legal use of police or military force against the population.

Saddam Hussein used chemical weapons on his own Kurdish population without any particular change or expansion of policies regarding the use of force on his own citizens. They were simply used in an act of governmental terror believed to be expedient in accomplishing his goals.

4) State involvement in terror. These are activities where government personnel carry out operations using terror tactics. These activities may be directed against other nations' interests, its own population, or private groups or individuals viewed as dangerous to the state. In many cases, these activities are terrorism under official sanction, although such authorization is rarely acknowledged openly. Historical examples include the Soviet and Iranian assassination campaigns against dissidents who had fled abroad, and Libyan and North Korean intelligence operatives downing airliners on international flights.

5) Another type of these activities is "death squads" or "war veterans": unofficial actions taken by officials or functionaries of a regime (such as members of police or intelligence organizations) against their own population to repress or intimidate. While these officials will not claim such activities, and disguise their participation, it is often made clear that they are acting for the state. Keeping such activities "unofficial" permits the authorities deniability and avoids the necessity of changing legal and judicial processes to justify oppression. This is different than "pro-state" terror, which is conducted by groups or persons with no official standing and without official encouragement. While pro-state terror may result in positive outcomes for the authorities, their employment of criminal methods and lack of official standing can result in disavowal and punishment of the terrorists, depending on the morality of the regime in question.

6) State sponsorship of terrorism. Also known as "state supported" terrorism, when governments provide supplies, training, and other forms of support to non-state terrorist organizations. One of the most valuable types of this support is the provision of safe haven or physical basing for the terrorists' organization. Another crucial service a state sponsor can provide is false documentation, not only for personal identification (passports, internal identification documents), but also for financial transactions and weapons purchases. Other means of support are access to training facilities and expertise not readily available to groups without extensive resources. Finally, the extension of diplomatic protections and services, such as immunity from extradition, diplomatic passports, use of embassies and other protected grounds, and diplomatic pouches to transport weapons or explosives have been significant to some groups.

An example of state sponsorship is the Syrian government's support of Hamas and Hizballah in Lebanon. Syrian resources and protection enable the huge training establishments in the Bek'aa Valley. On a smaller, more discreet scale, the East German Stasi provided support and safe-haven to members of the Red Army Faction (RAF or Baader Meinhof Gang) and neo-fascist groups that operated in West Germany. Wanted members of the RAF were found resident in East Germany after the fall of the Berlin Wall in 1989.

**6. Give Russian equivalents to the following English words and word combinations.**

1. to equate any act of military force with terrorism
2. to elevate outcomes over intentions
3. to aid in repressing dissent
4. rigged show trials of opponents
5. to be expedient in accomplishing his goals
6. to down airliners on international flights
7. to permits the authorities deniability
8. persons with no official standing and without official encouragement
9. the provision of safe haven or physical basing for the terrorists' organization
10. diplomatic pouches to transport weapons or explosives

**7. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian words combinations.**

1. использовать страх и ужас
2. стирать границы
3. подавление мятежа
4. сталинские “чистки” 1930-х годов
5. без каких-либо изменений политического курса
6. «эскадроны смерти»
7. обнаружение и наказание террористов
8. иммунитет от экстрадиции
9. в более закрытом формате

**8. What are the reasons for the state to support terrorism? Write a short essay (10 sentences).**

For more information see Appendix II, Text 10.

## Unit 5. Global Action Against Terrorism

### Lead-in

1. What factors prevent the effective global fight against terrorism?
2. Have any counter-terrorism operations been successful?

### Vocabulary

1. to bring Member States to an acceptable level of compliance with the terrorism-related conventions and protocols — призвать страны-участницы к соблюдению конвенций и протоколов антитеррористической направленности
2. to mandate the General Assembly — наделить полномочиями Генеральную Ассамблею

3. to address the conditions conducive to the spread of terrorism — рассматривать условия, способствующие распространению терроризма
4. to build state capacity to fight terrorism — укреплять государственный потенциал в борьбе с терроризмом

### 1. Read the text and identify organizations involved in combatting terrorism.

Terrorism has been of concern to the international community since 1937 when the League of Nations elaborated the Convention for the Prevention and Punishment of Terrorism. Subsequently, the United Nations and other international and regional inter-governmental organizations have dealt with terrorism from a legal and political perspective.

Since 1963, the international community has elaborated universal legal instruments related to the prevention and suppression of international terrorism, which constitute the universal legal regime against terrorism.

In addition, the United Nations General Assembly and Security Council have adopted several resolutions pertaining to terrorism. In particular, and in response to the attacks of 11 September 2001, the Security Council adopted resolution 1373 (2001) on 28 September (2001) which declared that:

“...acts, methods and practices of terrorism are contrary to the purposes and principles of the United Nations”. It called upon Member States “to become parties as soon as possible to the relevant international conventions and protocols” and “to increase cooperation and fully implement the relevant international conventions and protocols”.

This resolution also established the Counter-Terrorism Committee (CTC) of the Security Council to monitor the implementation of the resolution by all States and increase the capability of States to fight terrorism, including **bringing Member States to an acceptable level of compliance with the terrorism-related conventions and protocols**. The CTC has since become the United Nations’ leading body to promote collective action against international terrorism. In carrying out its functions, the Committee is supported by the Counter-Terrorism Committee Executive Directorate (CTED) (See also “Working closely with the Security Council’s CTC and CTED”.)

In the 2005 World Summit Outcome Document, the Heads of State and Government **mandated the General Assembly** to develop a counter-terrorism strategy to promote comprehensive and coordinated responses to one of humanity’s major threats. In April 2006, the Secretary-General issued recommendations for a global counter-terrorism strategy (60/825), which led to the unanimous adoption by the General Assembly, on 8 September 2006, of the United Nations Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy (60/288). The strategy marks the first time that countries around the world agree on a common strategic approach to fight terrorism. The strategy contains a plan of action: **to address the conditions conducive to the spread of terrorism**; to prevent and combat terrorism; to take measures **to build state capacity to fight terrorism**



and to strengthen the role of the United Nations in combating terrorism; and to ensure the respect of human rights while countering terrorism.

**2. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. to monitor the implementation of the resolution
2. to promote collective action
3. to bring Member States to an acceptable level of compliancy
4. to implement the relevant international conventions and protocols
5. to ensure the respect of human rights
6. to increase the capability
7. United Nations Global Counter Terrorism Strategy
8. to elaborate universal legal instruments
9. the prevention and suppression of international terrorism
10. to issue recommendation

**3. Single out key phrases to report briefly on the counter-terrorism activity of the international community.**

**4. Choose the most effective counter-terrorism measures. Report to the class.**

Measures to be taken to stop people being radicalized and drawn into extremism and terrorism:

1. implement a new Counter-Extremism Strategy; counter extremist ideologies; build partnerships with all those opposed to extremism; disrupt extremists; and build more cohesive communities;
2. defend and promote the values which are the basis for a diverse, multi-racial, multi-faith society;
3. campaign for a more robust and effective international response to refute extremist ideology and propaganda, including through the UN Secretary General's Action Plan on Preventing Violent Extremism;
4. continue to implement the statutory duty which means that all local authorities, schools, colleges, universities, police, probation services and prisons have a specific legal responsibility to prevent radicalization;
5. expand the work with people who are at risk of radicalization and to stop them before they are engaged in any terrorist-related activity;
6. take action to investigate, disrupt and wherever possible convict terrorists; increase the resources for counter-terrorism police and the security and intelligence agencies to pursue terrorists;
7. provide capabilities to investigate terrorist activity online and to process large amounts of digital media quickly and effectively, upgrade counter-terrorism technology, including technical intelligence collection and digital forensic capability;

8. acquire intelligence and evidence from electronic communications; maximize security, while implementing strict safeguards to ensure that privacy is protected;

9. terrorism thrives in unstable states and amid civil wars. We need to be able to find and track terrorists in these hostile environments, where they pose a threat to the security of the country;

10. continue to invest in capabilities to protect ourselves against terrorist attack; invest in the protection of transport systems, notably aviation, borders, crowded places;

11. invest in developing new technologies to keep pace with evolving risks, and to help airports and airlines to screen out threats;

12. continue to train police, fire and ambulance personnel to work together when responding to major incidents, including chemical, biological, radiological or nuclear incidents before specialists arrive;

13. collaborate with allies and partners to tackle conflicts and build stability; share insights and expertise in counter-extremism, counter-radicalization and communications; exchange information and conduct joint operations to tackle specific threats; train law enforcement officers, prosecutors and judges; help other countries to develop effective protective security standards and enforce them; and share the latest techniques in responding effectively to attacks.

### 5. Fill in the gaps with prepositions from the box.

by (2), into (1), through (1), of (9), in (5), on (3), to (2)
---

The United Nations Office \_\_\_1\_\_\_ Counter-Terrorism was established \_\_\_2\_\_\_ the adoption \_\_\_3\_\_\_ General Assembly resolution 71/291 \_\_\_4\_\_\_ 15 June 2017. Mr. Vladimir Ivanovich Voronkov was appointed as Under-Secretary-General \_\_\_5\_\_\_ the Office \_\_\_6\_\_\_ 21 June 2017.

As suggested \_\_\_7\_\_\_ Secretary-General Antonio Guterres \_\_\_8\_\_\_ his report (A/71/858) \_\_\_9\_\_\_ the Capability \_\_\_10\_\_\_ the United Nations \_\_\_11\_\_\_ assist Member States \_\_\_12\_\_\_ implementing the United Nations Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy, the Counter-Terrorism Implementation Task Force and the UN Counter-Terrorism Centre, initially established \_\_\_13\_\_\_ the Department \_\_\_14\_\_\_ Political Affairs were moved \_\_\_15\_\_\_ a new Office \_\_\_16\_\_\_ Counter-Terrorism headed \_\_\_17\_\_\_ an Under-Secretary-General.

The new Under-Secretary-General will provide strategic leadership \_\_\_18\_\_\_ United Nations counter-terrorism efforts, participate \_\_\_19\_\_\_ the decision-making process \_\_\_20\_\_\_ the United Nations and ensure that the cross-cutting origins and impact \_\_\_21\_\_\_ terrorism are reflected \_\_\_22\_\_\_ the work \_\_\_23\_\_\_ the United Nations.

## 6. Translate the paragraph from English into Russian.

The Office of Counter-Terrorism has five main functions:

- (a) provide leadership on the General Assembly counter-terrorism mandates entrusted to the Secretary-General from across the United Nations system;
- (b) enhance coordination and coherence across the 38 Counter-Terrorism Implementation Task Force entities to ensure the balanced implementation of the four pillars of the UN Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy;
- (c) strengthen the delivery of United Nations counter-terrorism capacity-building assistance to Member States;
- (d) improve visibility, advocacy and resource mobilization for United Nations counter-terrorism efforts; and
- (e) ensure that due priority is given to counterterrorism across the United Nations system and that the important work on preventing violent extremism is firmly rooted in the Strategy.

The Office will aim to have a close relationship with Security Council bodies and Member States, strengthening existing and developing new partnerships through regular travel and attendance at counter-terrorism-related meetings.

The creation of the Office is the first major institutional reform undertaken by the Secretary-General.

## 7. Render the paragraph in English using the tips in brackets.

Глобальная контртеррористическая стратегия Организации Объединенных Наций была принята (to adopt) государствами-членами 8 сентября 2006 года. Эта стратегия является уникальным глобальным документом, который укрепит (to enhance) национальные, региональные и международные усилия по борьбе с терроризмом (to counter).

Впервые все государства-члены согласились с общим стратегическим подходом к борьбе с терроризмом (to a common strategic and operational approach to fight terrorism), не только послав четкий сигнал (not only sending a clear message) о том, что терроризм неприемлем (unacceptable) во всех его формах и проявлениях (forms and manifestation), но и выразив решимость предпринять практические шаги (resolving to take practical steps), как в индивидуальном, так и в коллективном плане, по предотвращению терроризма и борьбы с ним (to prevent and combat it).

Эти практические шаги включают широкий круг мер (a wide array of measures), варьирующихся от укрепления государственного потенциала (ranging from strengthening state capacity) в деле борьбы с террористическими угрозами до лучшей координации контртеррористической деятельности системы Организации Объединенных Наций.

С принятием этой Стратегии было выполнено обязательство (fulfilled the commitment), принятое руководителями стран мира на Всемирном саммите в 2005 году (2005 World Summit). При этом Стратегия задействует многие элементы, предложенные Генеральным секретарем (builds on many of the elements proposed by the Secretary-General), в его докладе от 2 мая 2006 года, озаглавленном (entitled) «Единство в борьбе с терроризмом: рекомендации по глобальной контртеррористической стратегии».

**8. Using Internet resources find the UN Global Counter-Terrorism Strategy and analyze it. Identify the main ideas of each pillar. Does the UN Strategy work in all countries? Report to the class.**

For more information see Appendix II, Text 15.

**9. Prepare short presentations on the following topics.**

1. The UN activity in countering terrorism.
2. The role of the RF in combatting terrorism.
3. The role and activity of Russian diplomats in counter-terrorism activity.
4. What are the most effective measures in countering terrorism for achieving global peace?

**10. Role Play.**

Conduct round table talks “Terrorism as a worldwide problem”. Participants of the roundtable are national leaders and journalists. Choose a chairperson to conduct the meeting. He lays down the agenda, prepared previously. The roles are distributed and prepared beforehand. Make use of different information resources.

For more information see Appendix II, Texts 11, 12.

## Chapter X

# COMBATING DRUG ABUSE

### Unit 1. Drugs: the Overwhelming Concern

#### Lead-in

1. What bodies are responsible for combating drug dealing in Russia?
2. What countries are the most active drug producers nowadays?
3. Check your skills in pronouncing the most difficult terminology of this unit.

psychoactive substance	[saɪkəʊ'æktɪv 'sʌbst(ə)nʃ]	психотропное вещество
immunodeficiency	[ɪmju:nəʊdɪ'fɪʃnsɪ]	иммунодефицит
virus	['vaɪərəs]	вирус
hepatitis	[hepə'taɪtɪs]	гепатит
organic chemistry	[ɔ:'gænɪk 'kemɪstrɪ]	органическая химия
morphine	['mɔ:fi:n]	морфин
cocain	[kə'keɪn]	кокаин
amphetamin	[æm'fetəmi:n]	амфитамин
heroin	['herəʊɪn]	героин
hypodermic syringe	[haɪpəʊ'dɜ:mɪk'sɪrɪndʒ]	шприц для подкожной инъекции, шприц для одноразового использования

#### Vocabulary

1. drug — наркотик; лекарство
2. euphoria — эйфория
3. devastation — опустошение, уничтожение
4. drug dealing — купля-продажа наркотиков
5. to fuel smth — разжигать ч.-л.

6. HIV (Human Immunodeficiency Virus) — ВИЧ (Вирус Иммунодефицита Человека)
7. behind bars — находиться в тюрьме
8. bystanders — прохожие, случайные свидетели
9. international drug trafficking — незаконный оборот наркотиков на международном уровне
10. insurgency — мятеж, беспорядки
11. drunkenness — пьянство
12. worship — поклонение, религиозный обряд
13. to foster drug abuse — способствовать злоупотреблению наркотиками
14. to produce refined products — производить нефтепродукты
15. embodied in domestic statutes — закрепленный во внутренних законах страны
16. AIDS (Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome) — СПИД (Синдром Приобретенного Иммунодефицита Человека)

**1. Read the text and match the titles with the paragraphs.**

- a) State control
- b) Not only illegal drugs are fatal
- c) World disaster
- d) Used for ages
- e) Producing drugs from plants
- f) Modern abilities
- g) Historical aspect

1) For many years the word “**drug**” meant a medicine which was taken by sick people for treatment. But from the beginning of the twentieth century this word has obtained the new meaning. Now it names the substance which is taken by people who want to get some relax or **euphoria** in spite fatal consequences. This effect has become so widely spread that it has turned into a great trouble. But by all means, while walking along streets in English speaking countries, you may see many shops which are called “Drug store”, where you can buy some medicine but not drugs.

2) The **devastation** caused by drugs and **drug dealing** is familiar to us from mass media and our life experience. A quarter of 14-15-year-old teenagers in many countries have already tried an illegal drug. What is more, injection drug use **fuels** epidemics of **HIV** and **hepatitis**. Half a million people are **behind bars** for dealing. Moreover, dependent users commit enormous amount of crimes under drug influence or in order to finance drug purchases, while dealers’ violence effects more and more innocent **bystanders**. It is not a secret that **international drug trafficking** supports corruption, **insurgency** and terrorism.

3) However, the problem is not in illegal drugs only. Half of all criminal violence and automobile fatalities are caused by **drunkenness**. One of twelve adults suffer from a substance abuse disorder and 8 million children are living with addicted parents. It is important to remember that alcohol abuse and cigarette smoking kill more people than all the illegal drugs combined.

4) The problem is not new. People have used chemicals to alter their state of mind since before there were written records. Wherever there is fruit or grain, there is the possibility of fermentation. By some accounts, beer is older than bread, and other **psychoactives**, such as opium, are comparably ancient. Mind affecting molecules have been, and are still, used for relaxation, for recreation, for healing and easing pain, for making and enjoying music and art, for seduction, for work, for battle, and for **worship**.

5) Moreover, urbanization and industrialization have increased the damage of intoxication. Technology has created new and more potent psychoactives, and trade has spread them over great territories. A resident of any city today has access to dozens, if not hundreds of psychoactives. The availability of multiple drugs raises the possibility of drug combinations, which can be deadlier than any drug alone. Most contemporary societies also offer their citizens more wealth and more leisure than any of the ancients knew and this prosperity makes drugs more available and can also **foster drug abuse**.

6) The nineteenth century gave us both organic chemistry, the possibility **to produce refined products** from plant materials (including morphine and cocaine) and potent synthetic or semisynthetic molecules (such as the amphetamines and heroin), and the **hypodermic syringe** as an especially efficient means of getting them to brain.

7) The strong desire for drugs and the risk of drug-related damage are realities that cannot be merely wished away. Custom, religion, and law have always created some constraints on drug use and nowadays countries have stated the drug-abuse control as a field of public policy, **embodied in domestic statutes** and international treaties.

## 2. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.

1. overwhelming concern	a. оплачивать покупку наркотиков
2. devastation caused by	b. способность брожения
3. to fuel epidemics	c. для устранения и облегчения боли
4. HIV	d. способствовать распространению эпидемии
5. to be behind the bar	e. расстройства, связанные со злоупотреблением психотропными веществами
6. to finance drug purchases	f. всеобщая обеспокоенность
7. a substance abuse disorder	g. шприц для одноразового использования
8. possibility of fermentation	h. ВИЧ
9. for healing and easing pain	i. разрушительные последствия, вызванные чем-то
10. to foster drug abuse	j. нельзя просто отмахнуться
11. hypodermic syringe	k. способствовать наркомании
12. cannot be merely wished away	l. находиться в тюрьме

## 3. Use the key words from the box to retell the text.

Devastation, already tried an illegal drug, epidemics, behind bars for dealing, under drug influence, to finance drug purchases, drug trafficking

caused by drunkenness, to suffer from living with addicted parents, alcohol abuse and cigarette smoking, all illegal drugs combined

to alter their state of mind, written records, possibility of fermentation, mind affecting molecules

urbanization and industrialization, intoxication for a person, spread over great territories, availability of multiple drugs, drug combinations

to produce refined products from plant materials, hypodermic syringe, means of getting to brain.

cannot be merely wished away, to create some constraints on drug use, drug-abuse control

4. Work in pairs. Act the conversation between Mr. Sergei Losev, the narcologist at the Clinic of Psychiatry, and Ms. Elena Krasina, the journalist of the youth radio program. They are talking about death dangerous drugs. Translate the following question patterns into English to be used in the dialogue. To answer the questions use the information from the table below.

1. Каковы наиболее распространенные виды .....
2. Каковы формы .....
3. Каковы последствия приема ...?
4. К чему приводит...?
5. Как выглядит...?
6. Что происходит с .....
7. Возможен ли летальный исход.....?
8. Каковы симптомы ...?
9. Каковы внешние признаки ...?
10. Как производится ...?

Here are some pronunciation tips.

marijuana	[mæri'hwa:nə]	марихуана
euphoria	[ju:'fɔ:riə]	эйфория
hallucination	[həlu:si'neiʃn]	галлюцинация
hallucinogen	[həlu:sinə'dʒen]	галлюциноген
hydrochloride	[haɪdrə'klɔ:raɪd]	гидрохлорид
excitability	[ɪksaɪtə'bɪlɪti]	возбудимость
opiates	['əʊpiets]	опиаты



### Death Dangerous Drugs

Drug name	Effects	Dangers	Addiction
<p><b>Marijuana</b> Other forms — hashish, hashish oil. Prepared marijuana is dried. Usually smoked in hand-rolled cigarettes, or pipes.</p>	<p>Euphoric feeling, lack of motivation, talkativeness. Impaired coordination, concentration, and memory. Increased heart rate.</p>	<p>“Burn out”, muddled thinking, acute frustration, and isolation. Dangers for lungs and sexual system, impossibility of reproduction. Hallucinations and paranoia.</p>	<p>Psychological dependence, become chronic users, or become abusers of «harder» drugs such as cocaine, LSD, and other hallucinogens.</p>
<p><b>Cocaine hydrochloride</b> — white crystalline powder, which is sometimes «cut» or diluted with other substances such as sugar <b>Other forms</b> — <b>crack (rock)</b> or <b>freebase</b>.</p>	<p>Feeling of euphoria stimulates the central nervous system. Increases pulse, blood pressure, body temperature, and respiratory rate. Dilates the pupils of eyes. Causes extreme excitability and anxiety.</p>	<p>Nasal bleeding. Paranoid psychosis, hallucinations, and other mental abnormalities. Impaired driving ability. Death caused by heart or respiratory failure.</p>	<p>Intense craving for the drug once use is discontinued. If the craving is not satisfied, the individual may experience irritability, depression, and loss of energy.</p>
<p><b>Heroin and other Opiates</b> <b>Heroin</b> is white to dark brown powder. Can be injected, snorted, or smoked. <b>Morphine</b>, <b>Codeine</b> are usually injected or taken orally.</p>	<p>Short-lived state of euphoria followed by drowsiness. Slowed heart rate, breathing, brain activity. Depressed appetite, thirst, reflexes. Increased tolerance for pain.</p>	<p>AIDS, blood poisoning, and hepatitis. Death resulting from an unexpectedly purity of the drug. Convulsions, coma, or death from overdose.</p>	<p>Malnutrition, infection, and unattended injuries and diseases, physical and psychological consequences. Quickly developing addiction.</p>
<p><b>Amphetamines</b> —chemically manufactured drugs come in the form of capsules, pills, or tablets. Enters the brain much more quickly. Highly addictive.</p>	<p>Increases heart rate and blood pressure. Dilates the pupils of the eyes. Produces feelings of alertness and euphoria. Causes distorted thinking and sleeplessness.</p>	<p>Convulsions and physical collapse. Hallucinations, paranoia, physical collapse, and brain deteriorations. Overdose is fatal.</p>	<p>Highly addictive physically and psychologically. Experience is a «crash» which is difficult to break.</p>

### Death Dangerous Drugs

Drug name	Effects	Dangers	Addiction
<p><b>Inhalants</b> Common <b>inhalants</b> include cement fingernail, polish remover, lighter fluid, nitrous oxide, ether, hair spray, insecticides, and cleaning fluid. Produce psychoactive effect.</p>	<p><u>Short-term</u> –dizziness and light-headedness. Can cause, nose bleeds, nausea, abnormal heart rhythm, and chest pains. <u>Long-term</u> — liver, nerve, and brain damage, heart failure, respiratory arrest, suffocation, coma, and death.</p>	<p>Death results when high concentration of the inhalant replaces oxygen in the lungs, suppressing the central nervous system to the extent that breathing stops. Brain damage from prolonged use.</p>	<p>Over the time, users must inhale more and more of the substance to obtain the same effects. Highly addictive both physically and psychologically.</p>
<p><b>Hallucinogens Phencyclidine</b> is a synthetic drug. <b>LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide)</b> is odorless, colorless. <b>Ecstasy or MDMA</b> (methylenedioxy methamphetamine), tablets or capsules. <b>Psilocybin</b> — is the active ingredient in mushrooms and chemically similar to LSD. <b>Peyote and Mescaline</b> is the primary ingredient of peyote cactus. Mescaline is produced as a powder, capsules, or liquid and may be inhaled or injected</p>	<p>Distortion of reality — user may report “seeing sounds” and “hearing colors”. Numbness and/or a sense of detachment from one’s surroundings. Delusions and hallucinations. Extreme sense of happiness and excitability.</p>	<p>Schizophrenia, severe depression, feelings of panic, confusion, suspiciousness, anxiety, and loss of control. Severe mood swings and paranoia. Impaired thinking and judgment leading to irrational behavior and accidents. Unexpected and unexplained outbursts of violence. Genetic changes. Depression, coupled with suicidal tendencies. Numerous cases of over-exertion followed by heart failure, convulsions, or death have been reported.</p>	<p>Highly addictive both physically and psychologically.</p>

### 5. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Употребление наркотиков — это серьезное заболевание современного общества.
2. Молодые люди, неспособные осознать риск, которому они себя подвергают, составляют самую большую группу лиц, употребляющих наркотики.
3. Огромное количество заболеваний, несчастных случаев и преступлений становятся следствием употреблений наркотиков.
4. Наркотик — это химическое вещество, которое оказывает влияние на внутренние органы человека.
5. Наркотики вызывают необратимые изменения в мозгу человека и приводят к потере самоконтроля, а также способности адекватно воспринимать окружающую действительность.
6. Передозировка большинства наркотиков может иметь летальные последствия для человека.

## Unit 2. What Is a Drug?

### Lead-in

1. Read two definitions for the word «drug». Which one do you think is more accurate? Give your grounds.

a) Natural or synthetic substance which affects functioning or structure of a human body, and is used in the diagnosis, mitigation, treatment, or prevention of a disease or relief of discomfort. It is also called “a legal drug” or “medicine”. A legal or medical drug (such as amphetamines), however, can be harmful and addictive if misused.

b) Habit forming stimulant or narcotic substance (such as alcohol, cannabis, nicotine, or a derivative of cocoa or poppy) which produces a state of arousal, contentment, or euphoria. Continued or excessive use (called drug abuse or substance abuse) of such substances causes addiction or dependence.

2. Here are some pronunciation tips.

biological [baɪəʊ'lɒdʒɪkəl]	биологический
benign [bɪ'naɪn]	мягкий; доброкачественный
penicillin [penɪ'sɪlɪn]	пенициллин
caffeine ['kæfi:n]	кофеин
nicotine ['nɪkəti:n]	никотин
physiological [fɪziə'lɒdʒɪkəl]	физиологический
toxicity [tɒk'sɪsɪti]	токсичность
binge [bɪndʒ]	неумеренный

### Vocabulary

1. novel — новый, неизведанный
2. abusable — вызывающий привыкание
3. non-abusable — не вызывающий привыкание
4. behavioral toxicity — поведенческая токсичность
5. addiction — зависимость
6. botulism toxin — токсин ботулизма, ботулинический токсин, ботокс
7. overdose — передозировка
8. unfamiliar circumstances — непривычные обстоятельства
9. prank — шалость, розыгрыш
10. sexual encounter — половой контакт

#### 1. Read the text. Fill in the gaps with the following word combinations.

- a) if continued over months or years
- b) First the man takes a drink
- c) and inflict on others
- d) but also from a person to a person and from occasion to occasion.
- e) and no one wants to take more than the prescribed amount.
- f) the body or the mind.

Drug is a chemical that influences biological function of human body. Some drugs come from plants, some from laboratories. Some are traditional and familiar, others are **novel**. A drug's effect can be **benign** or harmful, or both, often depending on the dose.

We can define psychoactive drugs, which influence human mental functions. They can be **abusable** and **non-abusable**. So, penicillin is a drug, but not abusable, it can be taken under a doctor's orders **1** \_\_\_\_\_. Nevertheless, caffeine, nicotine, alcohol, cocaine, heroin, morphine and many others, which are used not for treatment, but for so called "pleasure", are abusable psychoactive drugs.

Abusable drugs can cause three distinct types of problems: **physiological toxicity, behavioral toxicity and addiction**.

Almost any chemical will damage **2** \_\_\_\_\_ if taken in sufficient quantity and the maxim is "The dose makes the poison". The tiny amount of **botulism toxin** (Botox) is a beauty aid, but a little larger amount is a deadly weapon. The most dramatic toxic risk is a sudden death from **overdose**. The probability of a fatal dose varies with the quantity consumed **3** \_\_\_\_\_. Mixing drugs tends to increase the risk, taking two drugs together, each at a dosage safe if taken alone, can be fatal.

Overdose is not the only form of toxicity. Even a dose that causes no damage when taken once or a few times can still create harm **4** \_\_\_\_\_. A drug with no overdose risk — tobacco in the form of cigarettes, for example — can be profoundly toxic in chronic use.

Intoxication is always risky, especially for someone not used to it or in **unfamiliar circumstances**. A fight, a crash, a **prank**, or a **sexual encounter** resulting from occasional intoxication can have lifelong consequences. One

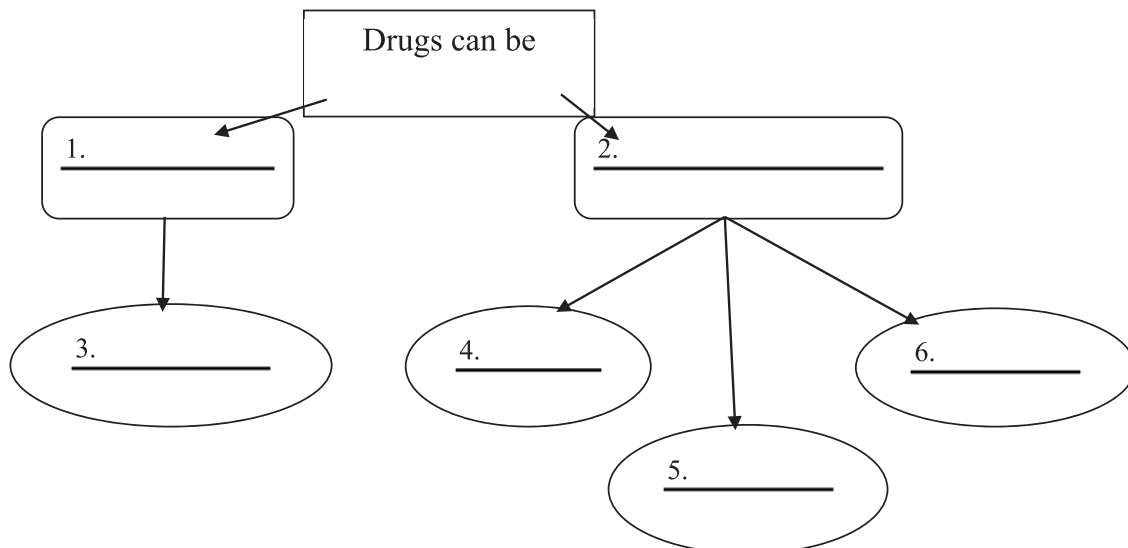
peculiar form of behavioral toxicity is loss of self-control due to over dosage, as in the all-too-familiar example of **binge** drinking. As the saying goes “5\_\_\_\_\_, then the drink takes a drink, then the drink takes the man”.

Drug taking can develop into a bad habit — that is a pattern, which is difficult to break even once the person understands that his behavior is a problem. This is addiction. Sometimes it can be harmless habits such as chocolate addiction. However, drug addiction is an unwanted and hard-to-break habit that leads to taking a drug more often or in greater amounts and that will bring to destruction of the user’s body. Addicts suffer 6\_\_\_\_\_ and this is an enormous amount of damage.

**2. Match the words and word combinations with their synonyms.**

1. plant	a) very small
2. novel	b) outcome which will last always
3. all-too-familiar	c) allowed
4. abusable	d) new
5. non-abusable	e) special
6. benign	f) well known to everybody
7. treatment	g) herb
8. addiction	h) not harmful
9. tiny	i) curing
10. deadly weapon	j) lethal means of destruction
11. quantity	k) amount
12. lifelong consequences	l) illegal
13. peculiar	m) bad habit

**3. Work in pairs or in groups if four. Fill in the cluster with the information from the text. Describe the cluster to your partner.**



4. **According to some sources, the saying “First the man takes a drink, then the drink takes a drink, then the drink takes the man” is a Japanese proverb. However, there is an opinion that these words belong to the famous American writer Francis Scott Fitzgerald (1896–1940). What does this saying mean?**
5. **Read the drug taker’s letter to the psychiatric clinic. He wants to undergo addiction treatment. Find 10 grammar, spelling and word order mistakes.**

Dr. Sergei Losev  
Clinic of Psychiatry  
Moscow  
Russia

Dear Dr. Losev,

My name is Dmitri, I’m 25. I’m a heavy drug taker for 10 years already. I realise that your clinic is my last hope to get rid of this terrible disease.

I don’t have a family because my wife left me as she couldn’t stand the life with a drug taker. I studied at the University for 2 years but later was excluded for drugs. I am unemployed and it is impossible to earn a money for me as every employer makes me have a drug test and I can’t pass it.

No friends are with me now. We were four classmates in college, all drug takers, and two of us has already gone because of overdose, one dies in the hospital. I am the last. I want to live, to work, to have family and kids.

Please, help me! I would like to take the treatment for drug taking and I’ll do my best not to use drugs ever again.

My uncle is so kind to pay for my treatment in your clinic in case I will do it voluntary and consciously. Please, sent me an information about the price and course available.

Hope to hear from you soon,  
Dmitri

6. **Make a presentation on one of the following topics. You may work out the topic of your own.**
  1. Why is “Drug” the name of the problem?
  2. Why is it necessary to have drug laws?
  3. How does drug-law enforcement work?
  4. What prevents drug abuse?
  5. How do drugs influence the brain?
  6. What treats drug abuse?

7. How drugs influence the crime rate?
8. Does international drug dealing support terrorism?
9. How do different countries combat drug abuse?

**It would be a good idea if your presentation met the following requirements:**

1. follow the plan: a) introduction, b) the body of the presentation, c) conclusion;
2. your presentation should take 5–7 min.
3. use the vocabulary of words and phrases given below.
4. be ready to ask a topical question to be discussed in the class.

### **Useful words and phrases to make a presentation**

While speaking, use the link words and phrases. They are sometimes called “discourse markers”. They show the interrelation of the ideas and make the presentation sound much better

#### **Introduction:**

My presentation deals with the topic of ...; I'll speak on the topic of....; I would like to touch upon the problem of ...; the presentation is intended to ...;

let's start with...

#### **Main body:**

first of all, secondly, finally, besides, in addition, furthermore, moreover; contrasting: in contrast, on the other hand, however, alternatively; referring to the past: formerly, traditionally, historically, initially;

#### **Conclusion:**

as a consequence, therefore, thus, as a result; in fact, clearly, indeed; in short, summarizing, in other words;

#### **Your point of view:**

from my point of view, however, in my opinion, I strongly feel that ... to sum up it seems to me that...

## **Unit 3. Smoking Is a Drug Addiction**

### **Lead-in**

1. Do you smoke? Yes/no; Why?
2. Do frightening pictures on the cigarette packs decrease the number of smokers in Russia?

### **Vocabulary**

1. to increase heart rate and breathing — увеличить частоту сердечных сокращений и частоту дыхания
2. surge of adrenaline — выброс адреналина
3. blood stream — кровоток
4. rebellion — протест, бунт

5. to fit in with their peer group — вписываться в группу сверстников
6. energy boost — прилив энергии
7. tar — деготь
8. carbon monoxide — угарный газ, монооксид углерода
9. to inhale — вдыхать
10. surge in energy — всплеск энергии
11. to suppress the appetite — подавлять аппетит
12. dizziness — головокружение
13. to experience cravings — испытывать тягу
14. to be gasping — задыхаться
15. to reduce fertility — снижать репродуктивную способность
16. miscarriage — выкидыш
17. stillbirth — рождение мертвого ребенка
18. second hand smoke — пассивное курение
19. to stain one's teeth — оставлять налет на зубах
20. to dull taste buds — притуплять вкусовые рецепторы

### 1. Read the text.

Smoking is a popular activity for many people who continue to enjoy it even though they are well aware of the health risks. The main reason for this is nicotine addiction. Tobacco contains nicotine – an extremely powerful stimulant for addiction which affects both the mind and the body. It **increases heart rate and breathing** and causes a **surge of adrenaline** which gives that ‘buzz’ that smokers enjoy.

Psychologically, it causes the smoker to feel relaxed as well as stimulated which is due to the production of a chemical called Dopamine. Dopamine is released into the **blood stream** which causes feelings of pleasure and well-being. Your body becomes accustomed to these effects and its tolerance increases. This means that you require larger amounts or in this case, smoke more cigarettes in order to have the same effects. This is why it is very difficult to give up smoking.

All sorts of people are smokers. Young people are attracted to smoking as they see it is a sign of being grown up or a statement of being cool and sophisticated. Others do it as a form of **rebellion** or **to fit in with their peer group**. Smoking is also popular within adults, some of whom started when they were young and are still smoking well into middle age or older.

Smokers claim that it helps them to relax or gives them an **energy boost** or ‘rush’. They argue that it relieves stress, increases concentration, in the case of women, reduces their appetite, and helps them to lose weight. Some smokers find that it calms their nerves or energizes them, especially if they smoke first thing in the morning.

Tobacco smoke contains nicotine, **tar**, **carbon monoxide** and other chemicals which when **inhaled**, increases heart rate, blood pressure and respiration. It causes a **surge in energy** which is due to the release of adrenaline. This



is followed by energy boost and also acts upon insulin production which smokers believe **suppresses their appetite**. Other physical effects include a dry mouth, a decrease in urine production and **dizziness**.

What happens then is that you become used to the effects of smoking and **experience cravings** or unpleasant withdrawal symptoms when you don't. So, you light up again in order to prevent these symptoms. Your mind and body develop a tolerance to the effects of nicotine which means that you need to smoke more and more cigarettes to get these effects as well as stopping any cravings. It can get to the point where you are constantly smoking throughout the day.

If you go for a certain period of time without a cigarette then you will find that you are anxious, restless and literally, '**gasping**' for a smoke. It is not the type of habit in which you can have the occasional cigarette. Most people find that they either smoke heavily or not at all.

The risks are well documented and can be fatal. Smoking causes lung cancer, heart disease, bronchitis, poor circulation, **reduces fertility** (both men and women) and increases the risks of many other diseases. There are particular problems for women who smoke during pregnancy which include risk of **miscarriage, stillbirth**, birth defects, low birth weight and poor development in the child.

If you have children there is the risk of them inhaling '**second hand smoke**' which causes health problems such as asthma and ear, nose and throat infections. They may also go on to be smokers themselves when they are older. Second hand smoke or 'passive smoking' is another issue, which is open to debate. There are arguments for and against this, but it is claimed that there are health risks from inhaling someone's cigarette smoke.

Smoking is expensive, stains your teeth and clothes, **dulls your taste buds** and sense of smell and overall, is considered socially unacceptable.

## 2. Agree or disagree with the following statements.

1. People usually know about consequences of smoking.
2. Nicotine is a mild stimulant for addiction.
3. A chemical called Dopamine is a source of pleasure.
4. A wish to get more pleasure is the main reason for not giving up smoking.
5. Only very special people can become smokers.
6. Young people want to look grown-up and experienced.
7. Some smokers say that cigarettes keep them fit.
8. Smoking helps to stand hunger and not to gain weight.
9. Body and mind of the smoker get used to the effect of nicotine and claim more.
10. Tobacco is very useful for pregnant women.
11. "Second hand smoking" means that first a person takes a cigarette by the first hand and then by the second.

**3. Study the information about the US antitobacco measures and answer the questions below.**



1. When was The Family Smoking Prevention and Tobacco Control Act signed into law?
2. What organization published a list of harmful ingredients in tobacco products? Find its full name.
3. When did the Department of Justice file a lawsuit against cigarette manufacturers and why?
4. What was the first American city that restricted smoking in restaurants?
5. What was the first American city that officially banned smoking in workplaces?
6. When did the federal ban on smoking in interstate buses and domestic flights take effect?
7. What is Master Settlement Agreement aimed at?
8. How many states tried to recuperate money from tobacco companies for smoking-related illnesses paid for by Medicaid?

**4. Translate into Russian in writing.**

The European Tobacco Products Directive (EUTPD) is a directive of the European Union which places limits on the sale and merchandising

of tobacco and tobacco related products in the EU. The TPD aims to improve the functioning of the internal market for tobacco and related products, while ensuring a high level of health protection for European citizens. Based on the proposal of the European Commission the Directive entered into force on 19 May 2014 and became applicable in the EU Member States on 20 May 2016.

This Directive applies to the manufacture, presentation, and sale of tobacco related products including cigarettes, roll your own tobacco, pipe tobacco, cigars, cigarillos, smokeless tobacco, electronic cigarettes, and herbal products for smoking. To address this situation, the European Union and its Member States have taken various tobacco control measures in the form of legislation, recommendations and information campaigns.

The health warnings have to be accurately stated on 65% of the product packaging. This directive bans all promotional or misleading sectors on tobacco products, while introducing EU-wide tracking and tracing to prevent illegal trade of tobacco products; allowing Member States to prohibit internet sales of tobacco related products.

The European Commission wants to reduce the estimated 700,000 deaths of EU citizens a year related to tobacco and discourage young people from becoming smokers.

### **5. Translate from Russian into English.**

Федеральный закон «Об охране здоровья граждан от воздействия окружающего табачного дыма и последствий потребления табака» (Federal Law N 15-FZ of February 23, 2013 “On Protecting the Health of Citizens from the Effects of Second Hand Tobacco Smoke and the Consequences of Tobacco Consumption”) был принят в России в 2013 году. Закон о курении серьезно ограничил права курильщиков, которым запретили курить в ресторанах, спортивных сооружениях и других общественных местах. В административный кодекс были внесены поправки, ужесточающие ответственность для нарушителей ФЗ-15 о запрете курения. Курильщикам, а также организациям, которые не соблюдают установленные запреты на курение табака, грозят серьезные санкции. По данным Роспотребнадзора (The Russian Federal Service for Surveillance on Consumer Rights Protection and Human Wellbeing), только за первое полугодие 2017 года в качестве штрафов за курение в общественном месте, а также за другие нарушения закона о курении, россияне были оштрафованы на 60 млн рублей.

В связи с тем, что с 11 мая 2008 года Российская Федерация является стороной Рамочной конвенции Всемирной организации здравоохранения по борьбе против табака, принятие нового закона является выполнением обязательств по борьбе с курением и снижением смертности из-за употребления табака на международном уровне.

## Unit 4. Drug Trafficking

### Lead- in

1. How is drug trafficking punishable in different countries?
2. Is the drug use punished under criminal codes of different jurisdiction?
3. Why do punishments for selling different types of drugs vary from country to country?
4. How is the involvement in drug trafficking punished in the RF?

### Vocabulary

1. drug trafficking — распространение наркотиков / незаконный оборот наркотиков
2. illicit — незаконный
3. to penalize — наказывать
4. felony — тяжкое преступление
5. drug possession — хранение наркотиков
6. mandatory minimum sentence — обязательная минимальная мера наказания
7. prescription drug — лекарство, отпускаемое по рецепту
8. pain killer — обезболивающее
9. sleeping pill — снотворное

#### 1. Read the text.

**Drug trafficking** is a global **illicit activity** involving the cultivation, manufacture, distribution and sale of substances which are subject to drug prohibition law. Drug distribution or trafficking laws **penalize** the selling, transportation, and illegal import of unlawful controlled substances, such as marijuana, cocaine, methamphetamines, and other illegal drugs.

The punishment for drug trafficking can vary widely depending on several factors including type and amount of drugs, geographic area of distribution, and whether children were targeted. Sentences for drug distribution and trafficking can generally range from 3–5 years to life in prison.

Drug trafficking / distribution is a **felony** and is a more serious crime than **drug possession**. A person can be convicted of drug trafficking if a person manufactures, transports, sells or distributes illegal drugs or if police suspect that the person intends to sell them. If you have drugs in your possession and the amount you have exceeds the legally determined trafficking amount, you can be found guilty of drug trafficking. If you are found with a large amount of drugs or cash at the time of your arrest, it is likely you will be facing drug distribution charges.

Drug trafficking charges are very serious, and anyone convicted of these crimes can find themselves facing years or decades in prison. Drug trafficking convictions, even for first offenders, typically result in prison sentences that last over a year. A conviction for trafficking can easily result in a prison sentence of 10 years or more, though some states have significantly higher penalties than others - life sentences.

The fines associated with drug trafficking are also serious. They may be very high depending on the amount and kind of drugs.

Probation sentences are possible in some trafficking cases, but typically only as a part of a plea bargain where the accused agrees to plead guilty to a less serious charge. People sentenced to probation have to meet specific conditions ordered by the court, such as being monitored by probation officer, submitting to random drug testing, not leaving the state without the probation officer's permission, and not breaking any more laws. Probation sentences usually last 12 months and sentences of three years or more are possible.

Drug trafficking laws often impose **mandatory minimum sentences**. This means that a person convicted must serve a specified amount of time and cannot be released on parole until that time has passed. If, for example, you are sentenced to 10 years in prison for drug trafficking and your state has a three-year mandatory minimum, you cannot be paroled before you finish serving at least three years in prison.

Drug distribution or trafficking laws also apply to the illegal distribution of **prescription drug**, such as **pain killers** or **sleeping pills**. When a state or federal government classifies a substance as “controlled”, it generally means that the use and distribution of the substance is governed by law.

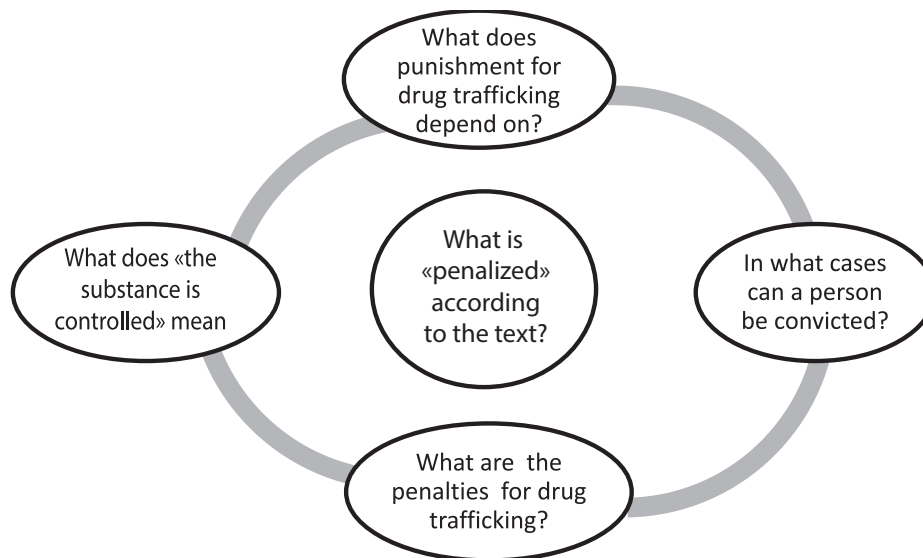
## 2. Match the words and word combinations from the text with their synonyms.

1. illicit	a. to be set free
2. charges	b. to be going to do something
3. to intend	c. analgesics
4. to be convicted	d. special terms of punishment
5. drug trafficking	e. accusation
6. distribution of something	f. illegal
7. pain killers	g. spreading of something
8. probation	h. to be sentenced
9. to manufacture	i. selling drugs
10. to be released	j. to produce something

## 3. Match the words from the text with their definitions.

1. substance	a. an illegal substance that some people smoke or inject for the physical and mental effects it has
2. life sentence	b. a serious crime such as murder or rape
3. felony	c. a sum of money that must be paid as punishment for breaking a law or a rule
4. fine	d. the punishment of being sent to prison for the rest of one's life
5. offender	e. a verdict
6. sentence	f. a type of solid, liquid, or gas that has particular qualities
7. drug	g. something that you own or have with you at a particular time
8. possession	h. a person who commits a crime

**4. Skim the text. With your partner discuss the cluster using questions as the key topics.**



**5. Read the text about legalization of drugs. Find odd words. There are lines that don't contain unnecessary words.**

1. The question of whether to legalize drugs or not is a very controversial
2. and the important issue. Drugs affect many areas of society. Several groups
3. have formed and spoken about their position. Speaking out against
4. drug legalization is the first step in helping to deliver along the credible,
5. consistent message about the many risks and costs of the legalization of drugs
6. to people if they are interested in solving this problem.
7. The government has made some several efforts to control drugs and their
8. users. However, the drug problem appears against to be out
9. of hand. Others see potential profit in legalizing drugs and still others
10. simply believe that individual rights to take drugs should be protected of.
11. The legalization concept appeals to people who are looking out for simple
12. solutions to the devastating problem of drug abuse. Society's answer
13. to the problem is to trick the drug user by giving him what he wants.
14. People believe that ever making drugs legal will take away the temptation
15. to use them. This idea is wrong and far from logical. If drugs are been
16. legalized then they will be the more accessible to the young, addicted,
17. and ignorant. The only resulting effect will be a negative one.
18. There are no some positive aspects of putting drugs on the streets with
19. a label reading "legal". Legalizing with drugs would have a devastating
20. result that would never affect society as a whole.

## 6. Render the text in English.

Употребление наркотиков — серьезное заболевание современного общества, оказывающее губительное влияние на определенные группы людей молодого и среднего возраста. К сожалению, большой процент употребляющих наркотики — это подростки, не способные осознать риск, которому они себя подвергают. Употребление наркотиков среди представителей этой группы населения выливается в миллионы заболеваний и несчастных случаев.

Употребление наркотиков является причиной наиболее серьезных социальных проблем. Среди них насилие, стресс и жестокое обращение с детьми, вождение в состоянии наркотического опьянения. Кроме того, растет число бездомных и повышается уровень преступности. Наркотики наносят вред еще не рожденным детям и разрушают семьи.

Наркотик — это химическое соединение, которое, не являясь продуктом питания, оказывает влияние на состояние вашего тела. Существуют такие наркотики, как медицинские препараты и болеутоляющие, которые назначаются врачом, и их можно купить в аптеке. Но существует также и другой вид — произведенные человеком наркотики, которые чрезвычайно опасны. Они включают амфитамины, анаболические стероиды, марихуану, летучие вещества наркотического действия, кокаин и героин. Оказывая кратковременный эйфорический эффект, они вызывают необратимые изменения в мозгу человека и зачастую приводят к потере самоконтроля и способности адекватно воспринимать окружающую действительность.

Существует множество причин, объясняющих употребление наркотиков. Среди них и социальные, и экономические, и психологические. Иногда это попытка уйти от реальности, иногда — желание показаться взрослым и независимым. Однако иллюзия быстро заканчивается, остаются многочисленные проблемы, которые влечет за собой эта пагубная привычка.

В современной медицине есть различные способы борьбы с наркотической зависимостью, но лучший из них — предотвращение употребления наркотиков. Значительную роль в этом процессе играют различные программы профилактики, применяющиеся в школах и вузах, а также работа средств массовой информации в этом направлении.

## 7. Conduct round table talks.

**Some countries have already legalized drugs. The disputable question is whether to legalize drugs or not. Discuss the answers to the following questions.**

1. Do you think there is any sense in legalizing drugs?
2. What might the legalization of drugs result in?

**Use any phrases you need to express your opinion:**

I'd like to stress that....

The thing is that ....

What is your point of view on ....?

How does it happen that...?

What are the ways of...?

Going back to my last point....

Would you mind explaining your point of view?

For more information see Appendix II, Text 17.

**Unit 5. Russia in Combating Drug Abuse****Lead-in**

1. Are successful operations of law enforcement agencies in combating drug trafficking widely covered by media?
2. Read the text about the UNODC and say what the United Nations do to counter crime and illicit drugs.

The United Nations Office on Drugs and Crime (UNODC) is a global leader in struggle against illicit drugs and international crime. UNODC mobilizes and promotes regional and transnational cooperation to confront the growing threat to security posed by the convergence of organized crime, drug trafficking, corruption and terrorism. UNODC also works to educate the world about the dangers of drug abuse and to strengthen international action against drug production, trafficking and drug-related crime. In order to achieve this, UNODC carries out a broad range of initiatives, including alternative development projects, illicit crop monitoring and anti-money laundering programs.

Established in 1997 through a merger of United Nations Drug Control Program and the Centre for International Crime Prevention, UNODC has approximately 500 staff members worldwide. Headquartered in Vienna, UNODC operates 52 field offices covering more than 150 countries, as well as liaison offices in New and Brussels.

UNODC is mandated by international conventions and UN resolutions, to assist Member States in implementing UN treaties on drug control, transnational organized crime, corruption and criminal justice reform. It also works to suppress terrorism and human trafficking. The Regional Office for Central Asia (ROCA) assists the five Central Asian states in reducing the use and trade of illicit drugs, in fighting organized crime, and in preventing and prosecuting terrorism.

**Vocabulary**

1. collapse of the Soviet Union — распад Советского Союза
2. trans-shipment country — транзитная страна
3. drug smuggling — контрабанда наркотиков



4. Government's Commission on Fighting Drug Abuse and Illegal Turnover — Правительственная комиссия по борьбе с наркоманией и незаконным оборотом наркотиков
5. Ministry of Interior — Министерство внутренних дел
6. Ministry of Healthcare — Министерство здравоохранения
7. State Customs Committee — Государственный таможенный комитет
8. Complex Measures to Withstand Abuse and Illegal Drug Trade — Комплексные меры по противодействию злоупотреблению наркотиками и их незаконному обороту
9. consequences — последствия

### 1. Read the text.

1. According to the Russian mass media, Russia has one of the fastest growing drug problems in the world nowadays. It has now integrated into the global drug market with links to the synthetic drug markets of Western Europe and the Far East, as well as the booming heroin trade from Central Asia. Drugs are now trafficked in all regions of Russia and their use in affecting the youthful population. In recent years crime activities connected with drugs have become the primary care of the state attention.
2. Historically, before the **collapse of the Soviet Union**, Russia was considered to be a **trans-shipment country** for **drug smuggling** from Central Asia to Europe. Now it has developed into one of the major drug consumers itself with several millions of drug users all over the country.
3. The rise of the Russian drug trade has an enormous negative impact on Russia's demographic situation. **AIDS**, tuberculosis and other diseases associated with the spread of drugs is having significant demographic impact on the Russian population. The drug trade threatens the labor force of the country because it affects the young and the working-age population.
4. The government of the Russian Federation pays great attention to the growing problem. It works in a great amount of directions, which are coordinated by the **Government's Commission on Fighting Drug Abuse and Illegal Turnover**. Its work is also assisted by the **Ministry of Interior**, the **Ministry of Healthcare** and the **State Customs Committee** of the Russian Federation, and many public organizations which carry out the work on combating drug abuse, preventing drug taking and rehabilitating former drug takers. The special Federal Program "**Complex Measures to Withstand Abuse and Illegal Drug Trade**" was worked out and successfully implemented by central and local authorities.
5. As the most drug takers are of 13-18 years of age, the great care is taken of the youth. The mass anti-drug work is carried out at schools where special lessons are devoted to the **consequences** of drug taking.

The seminars which are called “When Trouble is Knocking on Your Door” are held with their parents, providing information about the most widely used drugs, offering the ways on prevention of drug abuse, specially stressing the peculiarities of psychology of children and teenagers using drugs. Great amount of rehabilitation centers was established in Russia, where patients renounce their addiction to drugs and return to usual life after this hard disease.

6. Well-known Russian specialists are engaged in the area of addiction treatment, who speak in mass media, give lectures in educational institutions, and discuss the problem in popular TV programs.

**2. Match the main ideas (a-f) with the appropriate paragraphs of the text (1-6).**

- a) The mass media work
- b) Official measures
- c) Now and then
- d) Country’s concern
- e) Preventive measures
- f) Danger to the society

**3. Answer the following questions.**

1. What people are mostly affected by drugs?
2. How drugtaking is connected with crimes?
3. Has the position of Russia recently changed in the world drugs market?
4. How can drugs affect the economy of a country?
5. What measures does the Russian government take to combat drug trafficking?
6. What do schools undertake to prevent drug abuse?
7. What is the role of mass media in combatting drug abuse?
8. Do you know any celebrities who suffered from of drug abuse and turned into drug addicts?

**4. Read excerpts from the speech of the RF President addressed to the delegates of the International Drug Enforcement Conference (IDEC) in Moscow. The participants of the conference are heads of drug control agencies from more than 120 countries and representatives of international organizations: the UN, Shanghai Cooperation Organization, and Collective Security Treaty Organization. In two teams discuss the answers to the following questions.**

1. What was done for combating drug abuse in Russia?
2. What is to be done?

President of Russia: Ladies and Gentlemen, friends, it is a great pleasure to welcome you all to this anniversary 30th International Drug Enforcement Conference.

The drug trade has become a global challenge to the entire international community, and for some countries has become a national tragedy. The drug trade is a breeding ground for organized crime, smuggling, and illegal migration. Even sadder and more dangerous, it is also a breeding ground for terrorism.

Russia supports the UN's central coordinating role in combating drug trafficking. The United Nations has a tremendously important part to play in this work.

It is extremely important to reach the goals that were set by the Political Declaration and the Plan of Action to Counter the World Drug Problem, adopted at the 64th UN General Assembly, namely, to reduce production of the most dangerous drugs, including heroin and cocaine, around the world by 2019.

Russia has always been an advocate of closer cooperation between law enforcement agencies in combating the drug threat. This concerns above all efforts to suppress international drug trafficking, exchange operational information, and train personnel.

As part of our obligations under the international anti-drug conventions, we are active in helping to develop the human resources capabilities of drugs control and police agencies in many countries, from Asia to Central America. Last year, more than 600 specialists from our partner countries received ongoing professional training in Russia.

Our common priorities include planning and carrying out joint anti-drugs operations. Russia has quite a lot of experience in this area. For example, through our cooperation with Kyrgyzstan over these last two years only, we have shut down 35 wholesale heroin supply channels.

More than 1,500 crimes were brought to light and around 500 kilograms of narcotic substances and more than 750 kilograms of precursors were confiscated.

Another key area for action is to destroy the drug trade's financial base. This is something you all say too. The experts estimate that the trade in opiates alone, calculated using the final sales value method, is worth more than \$60 billion. Providing reciprocal legal assistance and expanding the exchange of information on suspicious bank accounts, deposits, investments and property would help to break down the drug production infrastructure.

We also are to work more closely in the important area of preventing leaks and illegal trade of precursors. This work should continue together with the UN Office on Drugs and Crime, the UN International Narcotics Control Board, and the business community.

It is important to strengthen the public-private partnership in this area, and together with the International Narcotics Control Board continue the

work to draw up the guidelines for a voluntary code of conduct for businesses engaged in producing special substances and components.

At the same time, we all know that security methods alone will not resolve the problem of illegal drugs use. In pursuing our set objectives, we must therefore work together more actively with civil society and business circles too.

Surely, we also have to make broader use of the latest drug addiction treatment methods that various countries are using, and carry out educational, treatment, rehabilitation and social re-integration programs for people with drug addictions, especially young people.

Thank you very much for your attention.

### 5. Match the words and word combinations with their equivalents.

1. failed policies	a) to soften the consequences
2. to devise an effective strategy	b) unsuccessful activities
3. a substantive commitment	c) change of some medicines in treatment
4. to provide the financial and human resources	d) to fulfill positive planning
5. to respond	e) to ask somebody not to do something
6. to reduce	f) to give monetary and staff assistance
7. regardless of supply	g) to answer
8. to warn people	h) to lessen
9. substitution therapy	i) irrespectively of the source
10. to mitigate the harm	j) actual wish to do something

### 6. A foreign politician gives recommendations on drug abuse strategy in Russia. Read the text. Are you of the same opinion? Give your arguments.

“Russia will have to break with the failed policies of the past Soviet-era to devise an effective strategy to combat drug abuse. Building on widely recognized “best practices” worldwide, such a strategy must include, at a minimum:

- A substantive commitment to provide the financial and human resources to combat drug abuse and respond effectively to the costs arising from it.
- Measures to reduce demand for drugs regardless of supply, including therapeutic programs to treat and counsel drug abusers, nonjudgmental educational initiatives to warn people, especially youth, about the dangers of drugs, and harm-reduction measures, such as substitution therapy, to warn addicts from the most dangerous drugs and mitigate the harm their habit can inflict on themselves and others.

- A modern drug-treatment system staffed by qualified specialists and elimination of compulsory treatment of addicted individuals.
- A public-private partnership to combat drug abuse and its consequences that includes civil society, such as nongovernmental organizations, religious institutions, and school-based parental associations, as an active and co-equal participant.
- Comprehensive, accurate collection of data on the scope and etiology of drug abuse and related pathologies, such as HIV/AIDS and hepatitis C as a basis for evidence-based public policy.”

### 7. Skim the following text and discuss the questions below.

#### **If your friend is a drug taker, what is to be done?**

Suddenly you notice that your friend has changed. First a little, then more and more. Maybe it is drug misuse and it is your turn to help him out. If someone you know has a problem with drugs, you should realize that drug addiction is a medical disease and it should be cared medically, especially if a person is a heavy user. However, if your friend is yet at the begging of the ‘drug way’, you can try to prevent his possible addiction or positively contribute his treatment.

If you’ve got any suspicions, make some observations to be sure that your facts are true before you take any steps.

There are some signs that can follow drug misuse:

- sudden changes of mood from happy and alert to sullen and moody;
- unusual irritability or aggression;
- loss of appetite;
- loss of interest in hobbies, sport, studying or friends;
- bouts of drowsiness or sleepiness;
- increased evidence of telling lies or furtive behavior;
- unexplained loss of money or belongings from home
- unusual smells, stains or marks on the body or clothes
- unusual powders, tablets, capsules, scorched tinfoil or needles or syringes.

First, show him that you are caring about him and will support him whatever the circumstances are. Try to stick to him and do not turn your back on him as if he is in a lower position. It will have terrible effect if you start blame him off to his face or to other people — in this way you may lose him as a friend forever. Think about people you know who may be of some help.

You may try to talk to him but remember — never try it if he is just under the influence of drugs! It is useless and even dangerous. Choose proper time for the talk and be firm, consistent and caring during it. Give him some reasons for rejecting the misuse of drugs. For example, tell him that is illegal, and it will inevitably bring to troubles with police and law. Tell him that it will have a destructing effect on his health and reflect on the health of his future children, making them heavily ill with chronicle diseases.

Try to discover why he has used drugs. Once you know this, you can try to tackle with the cause rather than the symptoms. If you have found the cause, try to assure him that it is a passing phase and is not the reason to make damage to himself.

It is very important not to exert pressure on a drug taker — he will have to make his own decisions. If he wants, accompany him to seek help from a doctor, clinic, or counselor. If he doesn't want, try to assure him that it is necessary and vitally important for him.

It can be hard work helping someone with drugs. But do we have friends only to enjoy ourselves?

1. Do you know anybody who takes drugs? How can you know it?
2. Have you ever talked about drugs with him or her?
3. Why shouldn't you exert pressure on him or her?
4. What might you do to prevent him/her from using drugs?
5. Do you think it is a disease or a bad habit?
6. Do you think it is possible for a person to give up using drugs on his/her own?
7. Where do you think it is possible to find drugs for personal use?
8. Why do people try drugs?
9. Do YOU realize that drugs are harmful for YOUR health?

## **Chapter XI**

# **CYBER AND INFORMATION SECURITY**

## **Unit 1. Information Technology**

### **Lead-in**

1. Have you achieved any particular results in mastering computer skills?
2. What role do Information technologies play nowadays?

### **Vocabulary**

1. data storage — хранение данных, информации
2. enterprise operations — деятельность предприятия
3. to coin something — обозначить что-либо, упомянуть
4. purpose-built machines — специализированные машины
5. general-purpose computing machines — универсальные компьютеры
6. hardware — аппаратные компьютерные средства, комплектующие
7. software — программное обеспечение
8. essential functions — важные функции
9. peripherals — подключаемое оборудование, внешние устройства
10. laptop — ноутбук
11. computer servers — компьютерные серверы
12. storage — хранилище
13. volatile random-access memory — энергозависимое оперативное запоминающее устройство
14. non-volatile tape — энергонезависимый ленточный накопитель
15. solid-state flash drive — твердотельный флеш-накопитель
16. IT architectures — схемы построений в области ИТ
17. cloud computing — облачная обработка данных
18. pooled in different configurations — объединены в различные конфигурации
19. combination of both deployment — сочетание обоих вариантов развертывания
20. digital dissemination — цифровой метод распространения

### 1. Read the text.

Information technology (IT) is the use of any computers, **data storage**, networking and other physical devices, infrastructure and processes to create, store, secure and exchange all forms of electronic data. Typically, IT is used in the context of **enterprise operations** as opposed to personal or entertainment technologies. The commercial use of IT encompasses both computer technology and telephony.

The term “information technology” **was coined** by the *Harvard Business Review*, in order to make a distinction between **purpose-built machines** designed to perform a limited scope of functions and **general-purpose computing machines** that could be programmed for various tasks.

IT includes several layers of physical equipment (hardware), virtualization and management, automation tools, operating systems and applications (software) used to perform **essential functions**. User devices, **peripherals** and software, such as **laptops**, smartphones or even recording equipment, can be included in the IT domain.

**Computer servers** run business applications. Servers interact with client users and other servers across one or more business networks. **Storage** is any kind of technology that holds information as data. Information can take any form including file data, multimedia, telephony data and Web data, data from sensors or future formats. Storage includes **volatile** random-access memory (RAM) as well as **non-volatile** tape, hard disk and solid-state flash drives.

**IT architectures** have evolved to include virtualization and cloud computing, where physical resources are abstracted and **pooled in different configurations** to meet application requirements. Clouds may be distributed across locations and shared with other IT users or contained within a corporate data center, or some **combination of both deployments**.

Legal aspects of this sphere are regulated by IT law. Information technology law (also called “cyberlaw”) concerns the law of information technology, including computing and the internet. It is related to legal informatics, and governs the **digital dissemination** of both digitalized information and software, information security and electronic commerce. It raises specific issues of intellectual property in computing and online, privacy, freedom of expression, and jurisdiction.

### 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What is Information technology (IT)?
2. Where does the term “Information technology” originate from?
3. What does the IT field include?
4. What is the role of a computer server?



5. What is the function of a storage?
6. What are advantages of cloud computing?
7. What instrument is used for legal regulation of the IT sphere?

**3. Match English words and word combination with their Russian equivalents.**

1. networking device	a) записывающее устройство
2. storage	b) аппаратные средства
3. privacy	c) сетевое устройство (модем, сервер)
4. hardware	d) энергозависимое оперативное запоминающее устройство
5. peripherals	e) обработка данных в “облаке”
6. recording equipment	f) энергонезависимое оперативное запоминающее устройство
7. digital dissemination	g) ноутбук
8. volatile random-access memory	h) периферийные устройства (принтер, сканер)
9. non-volatile tape	i) конфиденциальность
10. software	j) цифровой метод распространения
11. cloud computing	k) полупроводниковая карта флэш-памяти
12. solid-state flash drive	l) программное обеспечение
13. laptop	m) хранилище

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. обмениваться всеми видами электронных данных
2. охватывать как компьютерные технологии, так и телефонию
3. могут быть запрограммированы для выполнения различных задач
4. информация может принимать любую форму, включая данные из файлов, мультимедиа, данные телефонии и веб-данные
5. пользовательские устройства, периферийные устройства и программное обеспечение
6. облачные сервисы могут иметь распределенную структуру и могут совместно использоваться разными лицами
7. касаться конкретных вопросов, связанных с интеллектуальной собственностью в области компьютерных технологий и доступом в режиме онлайн, конфиденциальностью, свободой выражения мнений и юрисдикцией

**5. Match the key ideas (1-8) with the text passages (A-F).****Development of the Modern Phase in Information Technology**

1. The 17th century break throw took place in the history of mankind because the first calculator was invented.

2. “Computer network” is synonymic to “information technology”, but not absolutely.

3. The new era of IT began the invention of transistorized computer.

4. The attempts to keep information and to transmit it to other people or generation were made very long ago at the sunrise of mankind.

5. IT has a wide field of application in many spheres of human life such as electronics, cybernetics, semiconductors, TV equipment, e-commerce and many others.

6. The first computer of the 20th century was not perfect as they were designed to decide only one task.

7. Information technology being a branch of communication technology has several stages of development.

8. The electromechanical computer was completed in 1941 and the first electronic digital computer was used in the war against fascists.

**A.** Information technology (IT) is the use of computers to store, retrieve, transmit and manipulate data or information, often in the context of a business or other enterprise. IT is considered to be a subset of information and communications technology (ICT). Humans have been storing, retrieving, manipulating and communicating information since the Sumerians in Mesopotamia developed writing in 3000 BC. Based on the storage and processing technologies employed, it is possible to distinguish four distinct phases of IT development: pre-mechanical (3000 BC — 1450 AD), mechanical (1450—1840), electromechanical (1840—1940) and electronic (1940-present).

**B.** But the term information technology in its modern sense first appeared in a 1958 article published in the Harvard Business Review by Harold J. Leavitt and Thomas L. Whisler. Their definition consists of three categories: techniques for processing, the application of statistical and mathematical methods to decision-making, and the simulation of higher-order thinking through computer programs. The term is commonly used as a synonym for computers and computer networks, but it also encompasses other information distribution technologies such as television and telephones. Several products or services within an economy are associated with information technology, including computer hardware, software, electronics, semiconductors, internet, telecom equipment, and e-commerce.

**C.** Devices have been used to aid computation for thousands of years, probably initially in the form of a tally stick. The Antikythera mechanism, dating from about the beginning of the first century BC, is generally considered to be the earliest known mechanical analog computer, and the earliest known geared mechanism. Comparable geared devices did not emerge in Eu-

rope until the 16th century, and it was not until 1645 that the first mechanical calculator capable of performing the four basic arithmetical operations was developed.

**D.** Electronic computers, using either relays or valves, began to appear in the early 1940s. The electromechanical Zuse Z3, completed in 1941, was the world's first programmable computer, and by modern standards one of the first machines that could be considered a complete computing machine. Colossus, developed during the Second World War to decrypt German messages, was the first electronic digital computer. Although it was programmable, it was not general-purpose, being designed to perform only a single task. It also lacked the ability to store its program in memory; programming was carried out using plugs and switches to alter the internal wiring. The first recognizably modern electronic digital stored-program computer was the Manchester Baby, which ran its first program on 21 June 1948.

**E.** The development of transistors in the late 1940s at Bell Laboratories allowed a new generation of computers to be designed with greatly reduced power consumption. The first commercially available stored-program computer, the Ferranti Mark I, contained 4050 valves and had a power consumption of 25 kilowatts. By comparison the first transistorized computer, developed at the University of Manchester and operational by November 1953, consumed only 150 watts in its final version.

**F.** Database management systems emerged in the 1960s to address the problem of storing and retrieving large amounts of data accurately and quickly. One of the earliest such systems was IBM's Information Management System (IMS) which is still widely deployed more than 50 years later. IMS stores data hierarchically, but in the 1970s Ted Codd proposed an alternative relational storage model based on set theory and predicate logic and the familiar concepts of tables, rows and columns. The first commercially available relational database management system (RDBMS) was available from Oracle in 1980. All database management systems consist of a number of components that together allow the data they store to be accessed simultaneously by many users while maintaining its integrity. A characteristic of all databases is that the structure of the data they contain is defined and stored separately from the data itself, in a database schema.

## **6. Read the preface. Match the actors in IT business with their functions.**

### **IT education and job functions**

IT teams depend on a wide range of specialized information and technology skills and knowledge to support equipment, applications and activities.

The information technology profession is extremely diverse: IT workers can specialize in fields like software development, application management, hardware desktop support, server or storage administrator and network architecture. Many businesses seek IT professionals with mixed or overlapping skill sets.

a) Chief technology officer, b) Systems administrator, c) Developer, d) Chief information officer, e) Architect, f) Application manager, g) IT director.

### **Common IT careers:**

1. \_\_\_\_\_ This person is responsible for IT and computer systems that support the enterprise's goals.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ This person sets all technology goals and policies within an organization.

3. \_\_\_\_\_ This person is responsible for the function of all of the business's technology tools and processes. This role is commonly called IT manager or IT leader.

4. \_\_\_\_\_ This person configures, manages, supports and troubleshoots a multi-user computing environment. Within an enterprise, this role can be segmented by technology, requiring an administrator or team dedicated to server, desktop, network, virtualization or other components.

5. \_\_\_\_\_ This person's role centers on the provisioning and management of a high-value business application, such as Exchange.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ This person or team writes, updates and tests code for programs to meet business objectives internally or facing customers.

7. \_\_\_\_\_ This person examines and changes IT functions to best support the business.

### **7. Translate from English into Russian in writing.**

1. The regulation of information technology, through computing and the internet evolved out of the development of the first publicly funded networks, such as ARPANET and NSFNET in the United States or JANET in the United Kingdom.

2. IT law does not constitute a separate area of law rather it encompasses aspects of contract, intellectual property, privacy and data protection laws.

3. The area of software patents is controversial, and still evolving in Europe and elsewhere.

4. In various countries, areas of the computing and communication industries are regulated — often strictly — by governmental bodies.

5. There are laws governing trade on the Internet, taxation, consumer protection, and advertising.

6. In certain circumstances and jurisdictions, computer communications may be used in evidence, and to establish contracts. New methods of tapping and surveillance made possible by computers have wildly differing rules on how they may be used by law enforcement bodies and as evidence in court.

7. Computerized voting technology, from polling machines to internet and mobile-phone voting, raise a host of legal issues.

8. Issues of jurisdiction and sovereignty have quickly come to the fore in the era of the Internet.
9. Major problem of cyberlaw lies in whether to treat the Internet as if it were physical space (and thus subject to a given jurisdiction's laws) or to act as if the Internet is a world unto itself (and therefore free of such restraints).
10. The Information Technology Laws of various countries, and / or their criminal laws generally stipulate enforcement agencies, entrusted with the task of enforcing the legal provisions and requirements.

For more information see Appendix II, Text 14.

## Unit 2. Cybercrime

### Lead-in

#### **Skim the preface. Why is the problem of cyber security so urgent nowadays?**

The rapid growth of Information and Communication Technology (ICT) has raised the bar for the security requirements also. Lots of data is received, stored, processed, and transmitted. Therefore, its security is extremely important. It is important to understand the major aspects of information security, including information assurance, cybercrime, threats to the security of information systems, risk assessment, and countermeasures. It is also necessary to be aware of the ways in which you can mitigate risks and overcome the issues that may cause harms to an information system's security. Furthermore, you should obtain knowledge of various laws, such as patent law and copy right law, which have been constituted in the field of information security.

### Vocabulary

1. cybercrime — киберпреступность, преступность в области компьютерных технологий
2. a conventional crime — обычное преступление
3. to perpetuate — увековечить
4. e-mail spoofing — подделка электронного адреса или письма
5. cyber defamation — кибер-диффамация, распространение порочащей информации через Интернет
6. cyber stalking — кибер-преследование, использование технологий для преследования других людей
7. data diddling — обработка данных (такой тип атаки включает в себя изменение исходных данных непосредственно перед их обработкой компьютером, а затем возвращение их в исходное состояние после завершения обработки)
8. salami attacks — атака "салями", вид компьютерного мошенничества в банковской сфере, когда мелкие, трудноотслеживаемые суммы

(не более полуцента) снимаются в ходе безналичных операций и накапливаются на счете, указанном преступником

9. **logic bomb** — логическая бомба, программа намеренного искажения данных

10. **web jacking** — ограбление посредством Интернета

11. **abacus** — счеты (одно из первых устройств для вычислений)

12. **loom** — ткацкий станок

13. **weaving of special fabrics** — изготовление особых тканей

14. **binary code** — двоичный код

15. **livelihood** — средства к существованию

16. **to discourage** — препятствовать

17. **discontented employees** — работники, недовольные ч.-л.

18. **to avoid a protective firewall** — избегать установки защитной антивирусной программы

19. **misuse of computers** — неправомерное использование компьютеров

20. **Computer Misuse Act** — Закон о неправомерном использовании компьютерных технологий

21. **morphing** — морфинг, технология компьютерной графики, создающая плавный переход изображений от одного объекта к другому

### 1. Read the text.

Cybercrime is the latest and perhaps the most complicated problem in the cyber world. Here are some definitions of cybercrime:

a) A **conventional crime**, where the computer is either an object or subject of the conduct constituting crime.

b) Any criminal activity that uses a computer either as an instrumentality, target or a means for **perpetuating** further crimes.

c) Unlawful act wherein the computer is either a tool or target or both.

The computer may be used as a tool in the following kinds of activity: financial crimes, sale of illegal articles, pornography, online gambling, intellectual property crime, **e-mail spoofing**, forgery, **cyber defamation**, **cyber stalking**.

The computer may however be target for unlawful acts in the following cases- unauthorized access to computers / computer systems / computer networks, theft of information contained in the electronic form, e-mail bombing, **data diddling**, **salami attacks**, **logic bombs**, Trojan attacks, internet time thefts, **web jacking**, theft of computer system, physically damaging the computer system.

The first recorded cybercrime took place in 1820. That is not surprising considering the fact that the **abacus**, which is thought to be the earliest form of a computer, has been around since 3500 B. C. in India, Japan and China. In 1820, Joseph-Marie Jacquard, a textile manufacturer in France, produced the **loom**. This device allowed the repetition of a series of steps in the **weaving**

**of special fabrics.** The invention of the industrial loom was a real breakthrough, not only for contemporaries, but also brought the creation of autonomous computing technology to the next generations. It was an outstanding example of a computer-controlled machine, invented long before the term “**binary code**” appeared. This resulted in a fear amongst Jacquard’s employees that their traditional employment and **livelihood** were being threatened. They committed acts of sabotage **to discourage** Jacquard from further use of the new technology. And this was the first recorded cybercrime.

The cyber criminals constitute of various groups/ categories: children and adolescents between the age group of 6 — 18 years, organised hackers, professional hackers / crackers, **discontented employees.**

Organisations and companies come under cybercrime attacks in every business activity in cyberspace, therefore, companies should develop and secure their websites by providing anti-piracy software which could possibly help to reduce the risk of cybercrime and their activities. In addition, businesses ought to hire some people who are sophisticated and experts in computer security to supervise their content and materials which give a secure environment in cyberspace.

It has been proven that it is the responsibility of an individual to protect his/her own Internet connection. Therefore, governments and local authorities including Police and Education Services should work more closely with the Internet Service Providers to protect minors on the Internet. Despite all the developments in the domain of Child Protection Software, young people will always find a way of **avoiding a protective firewall.**

The **misuse of computers** is a serious issue in the eyes of the law, and under the English Law, the **Computer Misuse Act (1990)** is central in prosecuting any individual who attempts to use a computer unlawfully.

Some other countries also took measures in combating cybercrime. For example, the Information Technology Act, 2000 (also known as ITA-2000, or the IT Act) is an Act of the Indian Parliament. It is the primary law in India dealing with cybercrime and electronic commerce. It is based on the United Nations Model Law on Electronic Commerce 1996 (UN-CITRAL Model) recommended by the General Assembly of the United Nations by a resolution dated 30 January 1997. Information Technology Act 2000 does not mention the typical cybercrimes like cyber stalking, **morphing** and email spoofing as technology develops much faster than the law responds to these developments. Nevertheless, the Act aims and successfully helps to deter those who would abuse and misuse the new technology.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What definition of cybercrime given in the text do you consider the most appropriate? Why?
2. What is the role of a computer in the global cybercrime?

3. What unlawful activities can be carried out by means of a computer?
4. When did the first recorded cybercrime take place?
5. What groups of cyber criminals do you know?
6. What must companies do to protect their businesses from cyber-attacks?
7. What is to be done to protect minors online?
8. Can you name any laws governing cyber space?

### 3. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.

1. sale of illegal articles	a. вид трудно отслеживаемого компьютерного мошенничества в банковской сфере
2. online gambling	b. мошеннические действия с электронной почтой
3. intellectual property crime	c. взлом паутины, атака в интернете
4. e-mail spoofing	d. подтасовка данных
5. cyber defamation	e. продажа предметов, запрещенных законом
6. cyber stalking	f. программа, которая запускается при определенных временных или информационных условиях для осуществления вредоносных действий
7. unauthorized access to computers	g. азартные игры в режиме онлайн
8. e-mail bombing	h. клевета в киберпространстве
9. data diddling	i. особый тип программного обеспечения, созданный для несанкционированного удаленного проникновения в компьютер пользователя
10. salami attacks	j. бомбардировка электронной почты
11. logic bombs	k. преступления, связанные с интеллектуальной собственностью
12. trojan attacks	l. преследование в киберпространстве
13. internet time thefts	m. несанкционированный доступ к компьютерам
14. web jacking	n. кража времени в интернете



#### 4. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Бомбардировка электронной почты означает отправку большого количества сообщений электронной почты жертве, в результате чего происходит сбой учетной записи пользователя (в случае отдельного лица) или почтового сервера (в случае компании или поставщика интернет-услуг).

2. Обработка данных — это тип атаки, включающий в себя изменение исходных данных непосредственно перед его обработкой на компьютере и последующее изменение его после завершения обработки.

3. Атака «салями» используется для совершения финансовых преступлений. Смысл здесь состоит в том, чтобы сделать изменение настолько незначительным, чтобы оно оставалось полностью незаметным. Например, на серверы банка сотрудник вставляет программу, которая вычитает небольшую сумму денег (например, 50 центов в месяц) со счета каждого клиента. Ни один владелец счета, вероятно, не заметит этот несанкционированный дебет, но каждый день сотрудник банка будет зарабатывать значительную сумму денег.

4. Кража Интернет-времени означает использование неавторизованным лицом интернет-часов, оплачиваемых другим лицом.

5. Логическая бомба — это программа, зависящая от событий. Эта программа создается для активации только тогда, когда происходит определенное событие (известное как триггер-событие). Например, некоторые вирусы можно назвать логическими бомбами, потому что они неактивны в течение всего года и становятся активными только в определенный день (как вирус Чернобыль).

6. Поддельное письмо — это письмо, которое, как представляется, происходит из одного источника, но фактически отправлено из другого источника.

7. Кибер-преследование включает в себя следование передвижениям человека в Интернете путем публикации сообщений (иногда угрожающих) на досках объявлений, посещаемых жертвой, в чатах, посещаемых жертвой, постоянную бомбардировку жертвы электронными письмами и т. д.

#### 5. Fill in the gaps with the following word combinations.

- a) is rather challenging
- b) be freely accessible
- c) to avoid risks
- d) can be tackled
- e) to monitor
- f) are required to be educated
- g) the threat to safety
- h) which their children join

1. It is necessary for parents \_\_\_\_\_ which \_\_\_\_\_.
  2. It \_\_\_\_\_ to find out if the child is not at home.
  3. But this challenge \_\_\_\_\_ if parents work together with authorities.
  4. \_\_\_\_\_ parents \_\_\_\_\_ in computers and governments should be responsible and effective in their work.
  5. Website, which can be considered \_\_\_\_\_ of children, shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian words combinations.**

однако, в дополнение, таким образом, который, с одной стороны, с другой стороны, больше того, кроме того, для того чтобы.

7. **Make a presentation on any type of cybercrime.**

### Unit 3. Information Security

#### Lead-in

1. Should a company protect its inside information? Why?
2. Is a non-disclosure agreement an effective way to save information?

#### Vocabulary

1. information assurance — обеспечение целостности и безопасности информации
2. to be at the core of — находиться в основе ч.-л.
3. to be not compromised — не подвергаться риску
4. malicious cyber-attack — злонамеренная кибер-атака
5. securing networks and allied infrastructure — обеспечение безопасности сетей и смежной инфраструктуры
6. information systems auditing — проверка информационных систем
7. business continuity planning — планирование устойчивого развития бизнеса
8. electronic record discovery — обнаружение электронных записей
9. digital forensics — компьютерная криминалистика
10. encryption software — программное обеспечение для шифрования
11. information extortion — вымогательство информации
12. worm — вирусная программа-червь
13. phishing attack — фишинговая атака (отправка мошеннического сообщения с целью получения конфиденциальных личных данных)
14. confidence — доверие

15. to amass — накапливать
16. competitor — конкурент
17. black hat hacker — хакер, взломщик кодов
18. irreparable financial loss — невосполнимый финансовый ущерб
19. to reduce or mitigate the threats — уменьшить или смягчить угрозы
20. safeguards and countermeasures — гарантии и контрмеры
21. to eliminate vulnerabilities — устранить уязвимость
22. to assign or transfer the cost of the threat onto another entity — поручить восполнение затрат другому предприятию или организации
23. purchasing insurance — страхование покупки
24. to outweigh — оценивать

### 1. Read the text.

**1. Information assurance** is at the core of information security. It is the act of maintaining the confidentiality, integrity and availability of information (CIA), ensuring that information is **not compromised** in any way when critical issues arise. These issues include but are not limited to natural disasters, computer/server malfunction and physical theft. While paper-based business operations are still prevalent, requiring their own set of information security practices, enterprise digital initiatives are increasingly being emphasized by information technology (IT) security specialists. IT security specialists are responsible for keeping all of the technology within the company secure from **malicious cyber-attacks** that often attempt to acquire critical private information or gain control of the internal systems.

**2.** The field of information security has grown and evolved significantly in recent years. It offers many areas for specialization, including **securing networks and allied infrastructure**, securing applications and databases, security testing, **information systems auditing**, **business continuity planning**, **electronic record discovery**, and **digital forensics**. To standardize this discipline, academics and professionals collaborate and seek to set basic guidance, policies, and industry standards on password, antivirus software, firewall, **encryption software**, legal liability and user/administrator training standards. This standardization may be further driven by a wide variety of laws and regulations that affect how data is accessed, processed, stored, and transferred.

**3.** Some of the most common information security threats today are software attacks, theft of intellectual property, identity theft, theft of equipment or information, sabotage, and **information extortion**. Viruses, **worms**, **phishing attacks**, and Trojan horses are a few common examples of software attacks. The theft of intellectual property has also been an extensive issue for many businesses in the IT field. Identity theft is the attempt to act as someone else usually to obtain that person's personal information or to take advantage of his or her access to vital information. Sabotage usually consists of the destruction of an organization's website in an attempt to cause loss of **con-**

**fidence** on the part of its customers. Information extortion consists of theft of a company's property or information as an attempt to receive a payment in exchange for returning the information or property back to its owner.

4. Governments, military, corporations, financial institutions, hospitals and private businesses **amass** a great deal of confidential information about their employees, customers, products, research and financial status. Should confidential information about a business' customers or finances or new product line fall into the hands of a **competitor** or a **black hat hacker**, a business and its customers could suffer widespread, **irreparable financial loss**, as well as damage to the company's reputation. For an individual, information security has a significant effect on privacy, which is viewed very differently in various cultures.

5. Possible responses to a security threat or risk may be different. For example, **to reduce or mitigate the threats** some **safeguards and countermeasures** can be implemented **to eliminate vulnerabilities** or to block these threats. It is possible for the company **to assign or transfer the cost of the threat onto another entity** or organization by means of **purchasing insurance** or outsourcing. Sometimes it is better to accept the threat after cost evaluation of the countermeasure if it **outweighs** the possible cost of loss due to the threat.

**2. Match the paragraphs (1-5) with their titles (A-G).**

- A. Different kinds of security threats
- B. The way out if the threat was implemented
- C. The basic notions of information security
- D. Scientific approach to information security
- E. Possible damage to companies

**3. Answer the following questions.**

- 1. What is the purpose of information security?
- 2. What critical issues provoke the information security?
- 3. What are the information security specialists responsible for?
- 4. What are the current information security threats?
- 5. Is privacy viewed differently in various countries? Why?

**4. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

- 1. to be at the core of information security
- 2. computer malfunction
- 3. malicious cyber attacks
- 4. information assurance
- 5. home desktop
- 6. business continuity planning
- 7. confidentiality, integrity and availability
- 8. digital forensics

9. continual improvement
10. cost evaluation of the countermeasure

**5. Restore the following expressions with the word “theft”.**

1. theft of --n-- --- -- a --- -- o --- -- y
2. i --- -- y theft
3. theft of e — u --- e ---
4. theft of --- --r --- o —
5. theft of c--- -- a —y’s p --- p --- --y
6. theft p --- t — c--- -- n

**6. Read the definitions of information security and choose the most suitable. Give your grounds.**

1. Preservation of confidentiality, integrity and availability of information. Note: In addition, other properties, such as authenticity, accountability, non-repudiation and reliability can also be involved.

2. The protection of information and information systems from unauthorized access, use, disclosure, disruption, modification, or destruction in order to provide confidentiality, integrity, and availability.

3. Ensures that only authorized users (confidentiality) have access to accurate and complete information (integrity) when required (availability).

4. Information Security is the process of protecting the intellectual property of an organization.

5. Information security is a risk management discipline, whose job is to manage the cost of information risk to the business.

6. A well-informed sense of assurance that information risks and controls are in balance.

7. Information security is the protection of information and minimizes the risk of exposing information to unauthorized parties.

8. Information Security is a multidisciplinary area of study and professional activity. It concerns the development and implementation of security mechanisms of all available types (technical, organizational, human-oriented and legal) in order to keep information in its locations. It also deals with information systems, where information is created, processed, stored, transmitted and destroyed.

9. Information security, sometimes shortened to InfoSec, is the practice of preventing unauthorized access, use, disclosure, disruption, modification, inspection, recording or destruction of information. It is a general term that can be used regardless of the form the data may take (e.g., electronic, physical). Information security’s primary focus is the balanced protection of the confidentiality, integrity and availability of data (also known as the CIA triad) while maintaining a focus on efficient policy implementation, all without hampering organization productivity.

**7. Match the words (1-3) with their descriptions (a, b, c):**

**1. Confidentiality 2. Integrity 3. Availability**

\_\_\_\_\_ **a)** For any information system to serve its purpose, the information must be accessible when it is needed. This means the computing systems used to store and process the information, the security controls used to protect it, and the communication channels used to access it must be functioning correctly. This trait aim to remain accessible at all times, preventing service disruptions due to power outages, hardware failures, and system upgrades. Ensuring this characteristics also involves preventing denial-of-service attacks, such as a flood of incoming messages to the target system, essentially forcing it to shut down.

\_\_\_\_\_ **b)** In information security, it means “the property, that information is not made available or disclosed to unauthorized individuals, entities, or processes”. While similar to “privacy”, the two words aren’t interchangeable, rather, it is a component of privacy that implements to protect our data from unauthorized viewers. It happens when electronic data being compromised include laptop theft, password theft, or sensitive emails being sent to the incorrect individuals.

\_\_\_\_\_ **c)** In information security, it means maintaining and assuring the accuracy and completeness of data over its entire lifecycle. This means that data cannot be modified in an unauthorized or undetected manner. It can be viewed as a special case of consistency as understood in the classic ACID model of transaction processing. Information security systems typically provide message consistency in addition to data confidentiality.

**8. Solve the crossword puzzle:****Across:**

1. Assistance
2. Dangerous for computer
3. Hardware and .....
4. Against viruses
5. Is made by a terrorist
6. Singular for “these”
7. Opposite to “danger” 8. Illegal possession
9. Modern necessity
10. Cool
11. Software .....
12. Great ..... of professionals

**Aside:**

- a. Permission to enter another country
- b. Key to enter
- c. Opposite to “separation”
- d. Being not attentive

- e. Not ‘past’ but .....
- f. Position (Latin)
- g. Synonym to “manage” (Greek)
- h. Way
- i. Not “this”
- j. Viruses ..... dangerous to computers
- k. Twice ..... year

				11		i)				e)			j)		
										10					
	1			b)				d)							
				4		c)									
2a)												f)			
								8					g)		
		5h)						9							
							6						k)		
7															
										12					

## Unit 4. Cyber Security Law

### Lead-in

**Comment on the following statement.**

“The modern thief can steal more with a computer than with a gun. Tomorrow’s terrorist may be able to do more damage with a keyboard than with a bomb”.

National Research Council, Computers at Risk (1991)

### Vocabulary

1. Cyber Security Law — закон о кибербезопасности
2. safeguard for national cyberspace sovereignty — обеспечение суверенитета национального киберпространства
3. protection of individual privacy — защита личной конфиденциальности
4. highlight — основное положение

5. amidst — среди
6. telecom fraud — телекоммуникационное мошенничество
7. personal information leak — утечка персональных данных
8. network operator — сетевой оператор
9. to stipulate — обуславливать
10. sensitive data — конфиденциальная информация
11. suspension of business activities — приостановление деятельности компании
12. revocation of licenses — аннулирование/отзыв лицензий
13. water conservation — сохранение воды, охрана воды
14. public services — госуслуги
15. e-governance — электронное управление

### 1. Read the text.

The **Cyber Security Law** may be different in various countries, but it contains a number of similar cyber security requirements, including **safeguard for national cyberspace sovereignty**, protection of information infrastructure and **protection of individual privacy**. Being developed in different countries the Law usually specifies the cyber security obligations for all parties and commonly includes the following **highlights**:

- a. Amidst a growing focus on telecom fraud and personal information leaks, the Cyber Security Law introduces stricter requirements to the protection of personal information owned by organizations.
- b. Identifying personal information, its protecting, using technology and identifying potential information leak risks are becoming key priorities for enterprises.
- c. The Law standardizes the collection and usage of personal information.
- d. Enterprises should focus not only on “data security”, but also on “individual privacy protection”, which is of greater significance.
- e. The Law presents clear definitions of network operators and security requirements.
- f. Most of the larger financial institutions may become “network operators”.
- g. The Law specifies the scope of key information infrastructure.
- h. The Cyber Security Law stipulates that sensitive data must be stored domestically.
- i. Penalties for violating the Law are clearly stated and sometimes they may include the suspension of business activities.
- j. Serious illegal action, concerning Cyber Security, may lead to the closing of businesses or the revocation of licenses.
- k. Regarding cyber security protection, the state emphasizes the protection of critical information infrastructure in public communication and information services, energy, finance, transportation, water conservation,

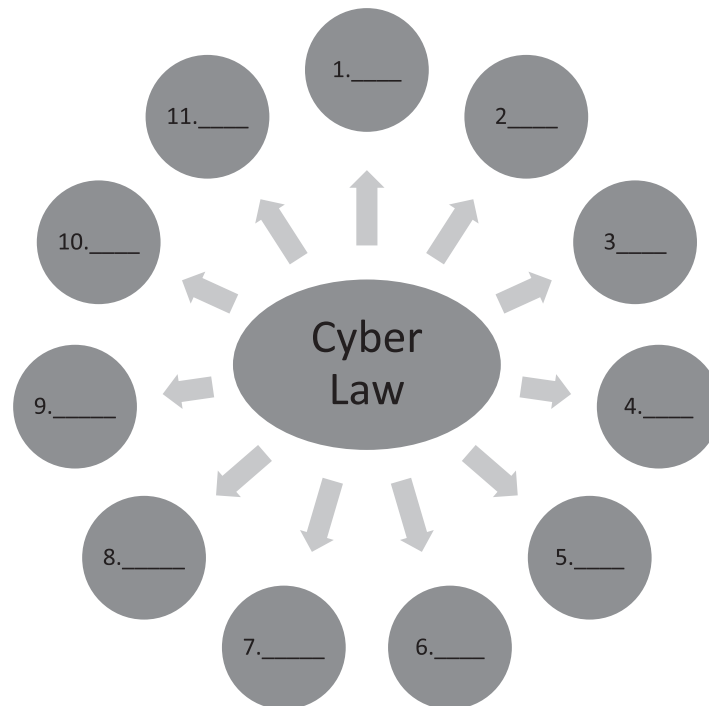


public services and e-governance, as well as other critical information infrastructure that could cause serious damage to national security, national economy and public interest if destroyed, lost or leaked.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What is the difference between IT law and Cyber Security Law?
2. What cyber security requirements are similar in all countries?
3. Where must sensitive data be stored according the Cyber Security Law?
4. What are possible consequences of a serious illegal act infringing Cyber Security?

**3. Fill in the cluster with the highlights from the text in regard to Russia. Place them in ascending order from 1 to 11. Justify your choice.**



**4. Fill in the text gaps (1-9) with the following word combinations (a-i).**

- a) are required to clarify
- b) must gather and store
- c) must not disclose, tamper with or destroy
- d) by backing up and encrypting
- e) to conduct security maintenance
- f) to prevent, combat and investigate
- g) are expected to be
- h) must take remedial action
- i) must ensure that.

### Network operators

“Network operators” and network service providers are the owners and administrators of networks. That is why their responsibility is the basic element of Cyber Security Law. It usually clarifies the following positions:

- Building an effective security administration system, finding rational technical solutions and improving data protection capabilities  
1. \_\_\_\_\_ key priorities for network operators.
- Network operators 2. \_\_\_\_\_ personal information in accordance with the Law, administrative regulations and their agreements with users.
- Network operators 3. \_\_\_\_\_ collected personal information. In an instance where a network operator has violated the Law’s provisions, individuals have the right to request the operator to delete their personal information.
- Departments with legal responsibilities for cyber security supervision  
4. \_\_\_\_\_ all personal information obtained is kept confidential.
- Network operators 5. \_\_\_\_\_ responsibilities within their organizations and ensure network security by implementing sound rules and regulations and operational processes.
- Network operators shall adopt various technologies 6. \_\_\_\_\_ cyber-attacks to mitigate network risks.
- Network operators shall ensure data availability and confidentiality  
7. \_\_\_\_\_ data.
- Network product or service providers must not set up malicious programs. Upon discovering a security flaw, vulnerability or other risk in their product or service, network providers 8. \_\_\_\_\_ immediately, inform users and report the issue to the relevant departments.
- Network product and service providers are required 9. \_\_\_\_\_ for their products and services. This security maintenance must not be terminated during the period stated in the agreements between parties.

#### 5. Match English word combinations with their Russian equivalents.

1. finding rational technical solutions and improving data protection capabilities	a) обеспечить доступность и конфиденциальность данных
2. agreements with users	b) создание рациональных технических решений и улучшение способности защиты информации
3. in an instance	c) уменьшить сетевые риски
4. cyber security supervision	d) соглашения с пользователями
5. by implementing sound rules	e) контроль над компьютерной безопасностью
6. to mitigate network risks	f) обнаружив утечку в системе безопасности

7. to ensure	g) в случае, если
8. upon discovering a security flaw	h) путем применения жестких правил

### 6. Use the following word combinations in the sentences of your own.

making a special system, keeping personal information, possible violations of law, implementing rules and regulations, mitigation of risks, malicious programs, conducting security maintenance.

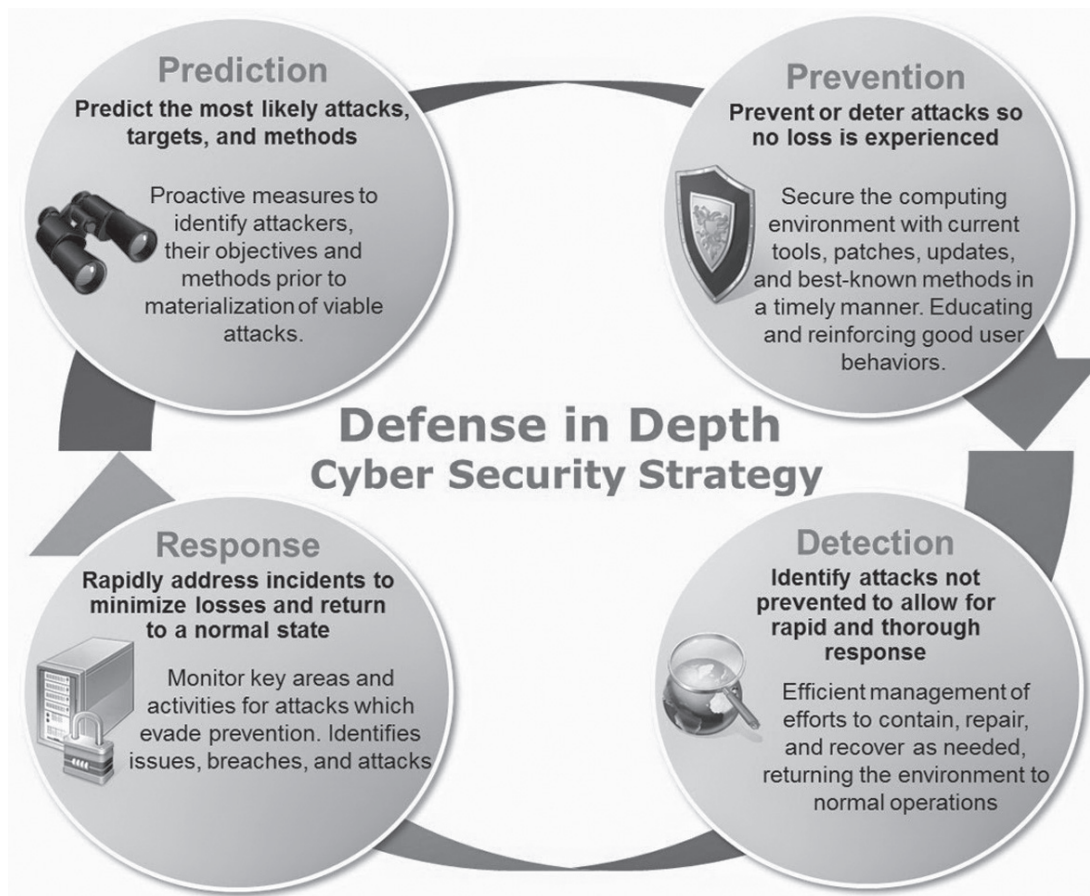
### 7. Translate from Russian into English.

1. В 2017 г. Госдума РФ приняла в третьем чтении правительственные законопроекты, которые касаются безопасности критической информационной инфраструктуры РФ, включая Закон о кибербезопасности. В рамках принятых поправок максимальные санкции за создание вредоносных программ для кибератак на критическую информационную инфраструктуру предусматривают до десяти лет лишения свободы.

2. В качестве основных источников киберпреступлений в сфере защиты персональных данных Роскомнадзор (Federal Supervision Agency for Information Technologies and Communications) выделяет следующие:

- принятие субъектом пользовательских соглашений по умолчанию (подобные соглашения могут предусматривать согласие пользователя на неограниченную передачу его персональных данных третьим лицам);
- использование «серых» мобильных приложений (установка непроверенных программ нередко становится причиной кражи учетных данных пользователя, а также появления на его устройстве вирусов, которые могут повлечь списание денег с мобильного счета и др.);
- фишинг (интернет-мошенничество, целью которого является получение доступа к конфиденциальным данным пользователей путем проведения массовых рассылок электронных писем от имени популярных компаний);
- передача персональных данных по незащищенным каналам связи;
- использование геолокационных сервисов (указание пользователем сведений о своей геолокации позволяет установить его местонахождение, что может быть использовано злоумышленниками);
- распространение своих персональных данных в открытых источниках;
- общение с незнакомыми людьми в соцсетях и др.

**8. Study the scheme. What cyber security measures are the most effective from your point of view? Give your grounds.**



## Unit 5. Personal Information Protection

### Lead-in

1. How do you protect your personal information?
2. Is your social network account open to the general public?

### Vocabulary

1. online-to-offline transaction — операция онлайн-оффлайн (технология, позволяющая совместить цифровой онлайн-мир и реальный офлайн-мир с помощью устройств, подключенных к интернету, и Wi-Fi роутеров на торговых объектах)
2. to catch up on the news — интересоваться последними новостями
3. safeguard — защита, мера предосторожности
4. phishing scams — мошенничество посредством фишинга
5. spoofed — поддельный
6. be cautious — быть осторожным
7. unfamiliar retailer — неизвестный продавец
8. unsuspecting shoppers — ничего не подозревающие покупатели
9. reputable businesses — надежные предприятия

10. package tracking — отслеживание отправленных покупок
11. merchandise — товар/ зд. покупка
12. Social Security number — номер социального страхования
13. mother's maiden name — девичья фамилия матери
14. to be concerned about — быть обеспокоенным чем-либо
15. seemingly innocent references — кажущиеся “невинными” ссылки
16. virus protection software — противовирусное программное обеспечение

### 1. Read the text.

“Personal information” refers to all kinds of information, recorded electronically or through other means, that can determine the identity of natural persons independently or in combination with other information, including, but not limited to, a natural person's name, date of birth, identification number, personal biometric information, address and telephone number. Citizens may provide personal information for many purposes, including education, healthcare, public transportation and **online-to-offline transactions**.

The Internet has become an integral part of our daily lives, yet you may find yourself asking, “How can I protect my personal information online?” Whether you're paying your bills or **catching up on the news**, passwords are one of the most important **safeguards** to protect your personal information on the Internet. For maximum security, choose passwords of at least ten characters that contain both letters and numbers. Avoid passwords that could easily be guessed, such as your child's name, your birthday, or your phone number. Don't use the same password for more than one website and get in the habit of changing your passwords every two to three months to protect your personal data online.

As you are checking your e-mail, learn to recognize the signs of **phishing scams**. “Phishing” occurs when someone creates e-mail requesting your personal information that appears to be from a bank or some other type of well-known business. If you click on the link in the message, it will take you to a “**spoofed**” or fake version of the reputable website. To protect your personal data online, always copy and paste web addresses into your browser window and call the company directly if you are asked to provide personal information via e-mail.

If you like to shop online, **be cautious** when doing business with **unfamiliar retailers**. Many **unsuspecting shoppers** have had their personal information stolen as the result of online shopping scams. Look for stores that have better business reputation. **Reputable businesses** should also offer **package tracking** and insurance to make sure that your **merchandise** is delivered safely. Don't give out any more information than what is truly necessary to complete your purchase; there's no legitimate reason for a store to need your **Social Security number** or **mother's maiden name** if you're simply trying to buy a birthday present for your spouse. If you're **concerned about**

buying from a particular website, call the customer service department to ask how you can better protect your personal information online, with their website.

Blogs and personal websites provide new ways for thieves to steal your personal information online. Even **seemingly innocent references** to your friends, family, or place of employment can give criminals the details they need to steal your identity or money from your bank account. For maximum security, sometimes it is necessary to refer to people by nicknames only and think twice about the content of any photos that you choose to post.

Of course, software developers are continually looking for new ways to help you protect your personal information online. Spam filters and phishing filters are being developed to help keep e-mail safe, while versions of Internet Explorer will always contain a number of improved security features. For this reason, it's important to make sure you check your web browser and **virus protection software** for updates on a regular basis.

## **2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What does personal information refer to?
2. In what cases may people provide personal information?
3. What measures can help to protect our personal information on the Internet?
4. How can one create a safe password?
5. What are the signs of phishing scams?
6. How can one make online shopping safe?
7. How do software developers protect us?

## **3. Give Russian equivalents to the following English word combinations from the text.**

1. identity of natural persons
2. provide personal information
3. an integral part of our daily lives
4. one of the most important safeguards to protect your personal information
5. get in the habit of changing your passwords
6. signs of phishing scams
7. e-mail requesting your personal information
8. "spoofed" or fake version of the reputable website
9. be cautious when doing business with unfamiliar retailers
10. unsuspecting shoppers
11. your merchandise is delivered safely
12. there's no legitimate reason

13. if you're concerned about buying from a particular website
14. new ways for thieves to steal your personal information online
15. place of employment
16. photos that you choose to post
17. check your web browser and virus protection software for updates on a regular basis

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. ищут новые способы защиты персональной информации
2. подумайте дважды о том, что изображено на фотографии
3. избегайте паролей, о содержании которых можно легко догадаться
4. всегда копируйте адрес, прежде чем разместить его в окне браузера
5. чтобы быть уверенным, что покупка совершена успешно
6. платите ли вы по счетам или интересуетесь последними новостями
7. граждане могут предоставлять личную информацию для различных целей
8. ваш идентификационный номер или девичья фамилия матери

**5. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. Outside of Europe, there are also instruments with similar provisions for dealing with personal data, such as the Personal Information Protection and Electronic Documents Act of Canada.
2. The European Commission has recognized that the Canadian Personal Information Protection and Electronic Documents Act provides adequate protection for certain personal data transferred from the EU to Canada.
3. Through the enactment of the Personal Information Protection Act and the establishment of the Personal Information Protection Commission, rules had been set for the protection of personal information in both the public and private spheres and standards had been set for the handling of personal information.
4. Protecting your personal information can help reduce your risk of identity theft.
5. There are three main ways to protect your personal information: 1) know who you share information with; 2) store and dispose of your personal information securely, especially your Social Security Number; and 3) maintain appropriate security on your computers and other electronic devices.

**6. Match the words and word combinations (1-7) with their antonyms (a-g):**

1. access	a) illegal penetration
2. to get passed	b) barrier
3. to take the advantage	c) systems engineers
4. developed	d) to show negligence
5. to guide the computer	e) to get paralyzed
6. cyber criminals	f) to implant logic bombs and key loggers
7. security	g) fallible
8. lapse	h) control

**7. What rules do you observe or neglect using the Internet? Report to the class.**

**8. Write a short essay “Provisions to be added to the Cyber Security Law.”**



## **Chapter XII**

### **ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION**

#### **Unit 1. Environmental Security Strategy of the Russian Federation**

##### **Lead-in**

1. What does Russia do for the environmental protection?
2. Do you personally care about the environment?

##### **Vocabulary**

1. law-enforcement practice — правоохранительная деятельность
2. environmental legislation — законодательство в области охраны окружающей среды
3. natural and manmade disasters — природные и техногенные катастрофы
4. environmental security strategy — стратегия экологической безопасности
5. to undergo a procedure of public hearings — проходить процедуру публичных слушаний
6. to ensure successful and sustainable development — обеспечивать успешное и устойчивое развитие
7. to face environmental concerns — сталкиваться с проблемами окружающей среды
8. to envisage — предусматривать
9. to ensure the environmental security — обеспечивать экологическую безопасность
10. waste disposal and recycling industry — предприятие для утилизации и переработки отходов
11. environmental permit — экологическое разрешение
12. to enhance environmental governance — усилить контроль за природоохранной деятельностью

### 1. Read the text. Identify the scope of environmental security strategy of the Russian Federation.

State policy in the field of national security protection includes the environmental component as a priority, which has increased public concern for the state of the environment, as well as for its conservation, restoration, and rational use. The **law-enforcement practice** in the Russian Federation faces many problems owing to the fact that functionaries and the heads of economic agents do not know the **environmental legislation**.

In Russian legislation, environmental security is a part of national security policy, and is defined as the ‘protection of environment and vital human interests from the possible negative impacts of economic and other kinds of actions, as well as from **natural and manmade disasters** and their consequences’.

On 19 April 2017, the President of Russia approved the national **environmental security strategy** until 2025. The project, which was worked out in order to fulfill the decision of the Security Council of Russia, **has undergone a procedure of public hearings** and was approved by all necessary ministries and departments.

The new strategy document aims **to ensure successful and sustainable development** in the long term. It brings together the main national and international environmental security priorities and allocates interconnected tasks across foreign and internal policy. The strategy defines Russia’s environmental security as an integral component of the country’s national security, which makes it a critical element of the national and foreign policy and evidences a consistent shift towards the sustainability-driven economic development model.

The strategy expressly declares that Russia is currently **facing a lot of environmental concerns**, including air and water pollution caused by industrial activities, a huge amount of unprocessed commercial and consumption waste, deforestation, agricultural pollution of inland waterways and seacoasts, soil depletion and contamination from improper application of agricultural chemicals.

The Strategy **envisages** the measures geared **to ensure the environmental security** including the introduction of innovative and environmentally clean technologies, development of the **waste disposal and recycling industry**, upgrading of treatment facilities and training of environmental safety specialists. The document also provides for the licensing of activities posing a potential threat to the public and environmental health and introduction of comprehensive **environmental permits** for polluting facilities employing the best available technologies.

The strategy is expected **to enhance the environmental governance** through controlling, supervision, and monitoring. Implementation of the strategy will improve the state of the environment in the Russian Federation which will boost the economic potential of the country and efficiency of the environmental safety system as part of national security system.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. How is environmental security defined in the Russian legislation?
2. When was the national environmental security strategy approved?
3. How does the new strategy define environmental security?
4. What environmental concerns should be addressed under the strategy?
5. What are the measures stipulated by the strategy aimed at?

**3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. conservation, restoration and rational use of the environment
2. national security policy
3. to face environmental concerns
4. introduction of environmentally clean technologies
5. upgrading of treatment facilities
6. to pose a potential threat
7. polluting facilities
8. to improve the state of the environment
9. to boost the economic potential

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. защита окружающей среды и жизненно важных интересов человека
2. негативное воздействие экономической деятельности
3. исполнить решение Совета безопасности
4. неотъемлемый компонент национальной безопасности
5. развитие предприятий для утилизации и переработки отходов
6. обучение специалистов по защите окружающей среды
7. лицензирование деятельности
8. введение комплексных экологических разрешений
9. усилить контроль за природоохранной деятельностью

**5. Match verbs and nouns to form word combinations from the text.**

**Translate them into Russian. Use them in the sentences of your own.**

1. to ensure	a. environmental concerns
2. to fulfill	b. a procedure of public hearings
3. to undergo	c. sustainable development
4. to face	d. the decision of the Security Council
5. to enhance	e. environmental permits
6. to introduce	f. environmental governance
7. to develop	g. environmental safety specialists
8. to train	h. waste disposal industry

## 6. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Экологическая безопасность Российской Федерации является составной частью национальной безопасности. Настоящая Стратегия — документ стратегического планирования в сфере обеспечения национальной безопасности Российской Федерации, определяющий основные вызовы и угрозы экологической безопасности, цели, задачи и механизмы реализации государственной политики в сфере обеспечения экологической безопасности.

2. Правовую основу настоящей Стратегии составляют Конституция Российской Федерации, Федеральный закон от 28 июня 2014 г. «О стратегическом планировании в Российской Федерации» и другие федеральные законы, Указ Президента Российской Федерации от 31 декабря 2015 г. «О Стратегии национальной безопасности Российской Федерации», Основы государственной политики в области экологического развития Российской Федерации на период до 2030 года, утвержденные Президентом Российской Федерации 30 апреля 2012 г., и иные нормативные правовые акты Президента Российской Федерации.

3. Настоящая Стратегия является основой для формирования и реализации государственной политики в сфере обеспечения экологической безопасности на федеральном, региональном, муниципальном и отраслевом уровнях.

4. Достижение целей экологической безопасности осуществляется путем проведения единой государственной политики, направленной на предотвращение и ликвидацию внутренних и внешних вызовов и угроз экологической безопасности.

## Unit 2. Environmental Security Strategy of the UK

### Lead-in

1. What are the most important environmental problems in the UK?
2. What legal documents (laws, programmes, conventions) provide environmental protection?

### Vocabulary

1. white paper — правительственный информационный документ по какому-либо вопросу
2. commitment — обязательство
3. Natural Capital Committee — Комитет по природному капиталу
4. Biodiversity Strategy for England — Стратегия биоразнообразия для Англии
5. low-carbon infrastructure — инфраструктура с низким уровнем выбросов углерода

6. offsetting — компенсация, взаимозачет
7. to reduce greenhouse gas emissions — сократить выбросы парниковых газов
8. rising sea levels — подъем уровня моря
9. increased frequency of extreme weather events — увеличившаяся частота экстремальных погодных явлений
10. flood, flooding — наводнение
11. resilience — способность к восстановлению, стойкость
12. heatwave planning — планирование тепловой энергии
13. sustainable development — устойчивое развитие
14. to mainstream — выдвинуть на передний план
15. procurement — закупка, поставка
16. Greening Government Commitments — государственные обязательства по озеленению

### 1. Read the text.

The UK 2011 **White paper** “The Natural Choice: Securing the Value of Nature” set out the government’s strategy on the natural environment. It included 90 **commitments** intended to protect and improve the natural environment, grow a green economy, reconnect people with nature, and demonstrate international and EU leadership. An October 2014 update concluded that three-quarters of commitments were complete, albeit that in many cases the commitments represent initial steps towards long-term ambitions.

Commitments completed include the establishment of an independent advisory body on natural capital (the **Natural Capital Committee**), and a new **Biodiversity Strategy for England**. Those in progress include research on **low-carbon infrastructure** and a new approach to **offsetting** biodiversity loss from development.

Under the 2008 Climate Change Act, government must **reduce greenhouse gas emissions** by 80% by 2050 from 1990 levels. The 2011 Carbon Plan is the latest summary of policies and measures in place to reduce these emissions. Further measures will be needed to meet the government’s interim carbon target for 2023–2027 (the 4th carbon budget).

The impact of past greenhouse gas emissions means that some climate change is inevitable, and is expected to lead to **rising sea levels**, higher temperatures and **increased frequency of extreme weather events**, including **flooding**.

The 2013 National Adaptation Programme set out actions planned and in progress to ensure **resilience** to a changing climate, including investment in flood defence, improved planning and design of major infrastructure projects, and health sector **heatwave planning**. The programme was aimed primarily for England but it also covers reserved, excepted and non-devolved matters.

The UK government’s 2011 vision for **sustainable development** set an ambition to “**mainstream**” it into all aspects of government activity including

policies and policymaking, **procurement**, and estates management. Since 2011-12, HM Treasury guidelines have required UK central government departments to report on sustainability issues in their annual reports. Government has reduced the environmental impact of buildings and travel covered by the **Greening Government Commitments**.

**2. Answer the following questions.**

1. What document determined the UK government's strategy on the natural environment in 2011?
2. How many commitments does it contain?
3. What is this document aimed at?
4. What independent advisory body was established?
5. What must the UK government do under the 2008 Climate Change Act?
6. What is the impact of past greenhouse gas emissions?
7. What did the 2013 National Adaptation Programme set out?

**3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.**

1. white paper
2. natural environment
3. commitment
4. reduce greenhouse gas emissions
5. to meet the government's target
6. climate change
7. inevitable
8. rising sea levels
9. extreme weather events
10. investment in flood defence
11. non-devolved matters
12. sustainable development
13. HM Treasury
14. Greening Government Commitments

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. защищать и улучшать окружающую среду
2. экологически ориентированная экономика
3. природный капитал
4. биологическое разнообразие
5. изменение климата
6. неизбежный
7. защита от наводнений
8. планирование тепловой энергии в секторе здравоохранения

9. охватывать запланированные, не включенные ранее и нерешенные вопросы
10. выдвинуть на передний план устойчивое развитие
11. управление недвижимостью
12. министерство финансов Великобритании
13. ежегодный отчет
14. инфраструктура с низким уровнем выбросов углерода

**5. Translate the text from English into Russian in writing.**

Protection of environment is a major issue in Great Britain. Global warming, ozone layer problem, air and water pollution, industrial wastes are in the centre of different state and public actions. Great Britain maintains careful checks on use of dangerous chemicals and collects information about new ones. Acid rains that kill enormous amounts of fish in Great Britain are also in the centre of attention. They are caused by smoke from factories and power stations and exhaust fumes from transport. It is produced when coal and oil are burnt. The government provides smoke control programmes. New power plants will have to meet very tight limits on emission of chemical gases. Britain works with Scandinavian countries in a project on the problem of acid rains. Over the last years local authorities are carrying on tests of drinking water in England and Wales. Nuclear waste from nuclear plants is discharged into the Irish Sea, making it one of the most radioactive seas in the world. There also have been numerous leaks of radioactive matter to the atmosphere. Water pollution from shipping and oil platforms, mostly in the North Atlantic, is great.

Water pollution programmes are being worked out in Great Britain nowadays. Ten National parks have been established in England and Wales, four — in Scotland. Their aims are to conserve the natural beauty, wildlife and cultural heritage. Each park is administered by an independent National Park Authority. Trees Preservation Orders enable local authorities to protect trees and woodlands. Responsibility for pollution control is divided between local authorities and central government. Local authorities are responsible for collection and disposal of wastes, keeping the streets clear of litter, control of air pollution. It is a criminal offence to leave litter in any public place in the open air except in designated places. The fines for it vary from 25 up to 2500 pounds.

- 6. Read this law firm senior partner's report on a current case. Fill in the gaps with the words from the box. The case deals with the 'polluter pays' principle. Under environmental law it makes the party producing pollution responsible for the damage done to the natural environment.**

- a) affected b) applied c) concentration d) criteria e) drain  
f) eliminating g) interpretation h) origin i) protection j) vulnerable

### Polluter pays

The High Court has referred one of our cases to the European Court on the (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and validity of Directive 91/676 EC of 12th December 1991. The Court has referred the case for a decision on the ‘polluter pays’ principle. Two issues came up during the case in relation to the application of the Directive. Firstly, community law cannot provide precise (2) \_\_\_\_\_ to establish in each case whether the discharge of nitrogen compounds of agricultural (3) \_\_\_\_\_ makes a significant contribution to the ‘polluter pays’ principle; and secondly, the Directive may be (4) \_\_\_\_\_ by the Member States in different ways. The Article in question is Article 2(j) and 3(1) of 91/676. It concerns (5) \_\_\_\_\_ of waters against pollution caused by nitrates. Annex 1 refers to identification of surface freshwaters as waters affected by pollution. (6) \_\_\_\_\_ zones are all known areas of land which (7) \_\_\_\_\_ into these waters and contribute to pollution. The Member State has an obligation to protect vulnerable lands. We believe, as a Member State, that the discharge of nitrogen compounds from agricultural sources makes a significant contribution to that overall (8) \_\_\_\_\_ of nitrates. Our main argument is that if there is pollution already, then the Directive does not mean that farmers must take on the burden of (9) \_\_\_\_\_ pollution that they didn’t contribute to. To put it another way, if the farmer didn’t contribute, why should he pay for it, even though his land borders the waters (10) \_\_\_\_\_? We are arguing that ‘the polluter pays’ does reflect the principle of proportionality.

#### 7. Translate from Russian into English.

1. Экологическая безопасность — это состояние защищенности общества и государства, биосферы и человека от угроз, возникающих в результате антропогенного и природного воздействия на окружающую среду.
2. Гринпис — влиятельное международное агентство, известное своими спорными, иногда агрессивными, но часто весьма эффективными акциями по защите флоры и фауны — представляет собой международную общественную организацию со штаб-квартирой в Англии, специализирующуюся на сохранении редких видов.
3. Хотя в Британии и развито общественное движение, помимо него существует много государственных (правительственных или финансируемых правительством) организаций, занимающихся качеством окружающей среды и охраной природы.
4. В Великобритании критики утверждают, что государственные меры неэффективны и недостаточны. Контроль и защита, предусмотренные стратегией экологической безопасности, не спасут окружающую среду: нарушители могут обойти закон



или откупиться небольшим штрафом, недостаточное давление оказывается на компании, которым необходимо модернизировать очистное оборудование, между местным и центральным управлением происходят конфликты на почве экологических катастроф.

5. Правительство контролирует выброс газов, которые разрушают озоновый слой. Например, Великобритания стремится уменьшить выбросы парниковых газов.
6. Стратегия устойчивого развития появилась в Великобритании в 1994 г. Четыре ключевых направления деятельности правительства в рамках Стратегии следующие: устойчивое потребление и производство; энергоэффективность и климатические изменения; охрана окружающей среды и ресурсов; стабильное общество.
7. Уже произведенные выбросы парниковых газов привели к тому, что некоторые изменения климата неизбежны и, как ожидается, станут причиной повышения уровня моря, повышения температуры воздуха и увеличения частоты экстремальных погодных явлений, включая наводнения.

### Unit 3. Environmental Security Strategy of the USA

#### Lead-in

Read the definitions of the term “environmental security”. Decide which of them is the most comprehensive and accurate.

- 1) The protection of people and the public interest from environmental risks.
- 2) Environmental security is environmental viability for life support consisting of three sub-elements: preventing or repairing military damage to the environment, preventing or responding to environmentally caused conflicts, and protecting the environment due to its inherent moral value.
- 3) The state of protection of vital interests of the individual, society and the natural environment from threats resulting from anthropogenic and natural impacts on the environment.
- 4) Environmental security, being central to national security, comprises the dynamics and interconnections among the natural resources base, the social fabric of the state, and the economic engine for local and regional stability.
- 5) Environmental security is a condition in which a nation or region, through sound governance, capable management, and sustainable utilization of its natural resources and environment, takes effective steps toward creating social, economic, and political stability, and ensuring the welfare of its population.

### Vocabulary

1. to encompass — включать в себя, охватывать
2. mitigation — смягчение
3. to address selected energy, environmental, and related national security concerns — содействовать решению некоторых вопросов обеспечения энергетической, экологической и других видов национальной безопасности
4. nuclear contamination — радиоактивное загрязнение
5. spent fuel and waste — отработанное топливо и отходы
6. degradation and depletion of essential environmental resources — ухудшение и истощение важнейших природных ресурсов
7. failing infrastructure — слабая инфраструктура
8. to undermine — подрывать
9. to heed national borders — учитывать государственные границы
10. to emphasize — подчеркивать, выделять
11. Environmental Security Initiative — Программа по обеспечению экологической безопасности
12. to promote prosperity and stability — способствовать процветанию и стабильности
13. legal authorities — юридические полномочия

#### 1. Read the text. Identify the main environmental security concerns of the United States today.

Environmental security is an element of regional and national security. It **encompasses** the **mitigation** and prevention of energy threats, including threats to sources and supply lines, and environmental risks that directly contribute to political and economic instability or conflict in foreign countries or regions of importance to the United States. Moreover, it **addresses selected energy, environmental, and related national security concerns** that pose a direct conflict with United States foreign policy. Although environmental security threats may not necessarily directly harm U. S. territory, they may still threaten national security because of potential harm to the territories of U. S. allies and other nations where the U. S. has strategic interests or due to indirect, adverse effects to the global economic system. Environmental security concerns include those from **nuclear contamination, spent fuel and waste**; threats to energy resources; contamination, **degradation or depletion of essential environmental resources**; or environmental problems from **failing infrastructure** that may threaten U. S. security or **undermine** foreign regional stability.

In 1991, environmental security concerns were identified in the National Security Strategy. The U. S. “National Security Strategy Report 2000” states, “Decisions today regarding the environment and natural resources can affect

our security for generations. Environmental threats do not **heed national borders**; environmental perils overseas pose long-term dangers to U. S. security and well-being”. It also emphasizes that “Responding aggressively to environmental threats remains a part of mainstream American foreign policy”. For the past decade, concern about environmental threats has been a part of the National Security Strategy.

An Environmental Security Initiative framework, formed in July 1996, has been established among the Department of Defense, the Department of Energy, and the Environmental Protection Agency and has been supported by the Department of State. The Memorandum of Understanding of the **Environmental Security Initiative** clearly recognizes the need to overcome the environmental legacy of the Cold War in order **to promote prosperity and stability**. The Scope of the memorandum directs that the Parties “shall develop and conduct cooperative activities relating to the international aspects of environmental security, consistent with United States foreign policy, and their individual mission responsibilities, utilizing their **legal authorities** and facilities appropriate to specific tasks directed at achieving mutually agreed upon goals”. Specific mention is made of a range of activities that may apply in reducing environmental security risks identified under the provisions of Public Law 106-255.

## 2. Answer the following questions.

1. What does the concept of the US environmental security include?
2. What threat may environmental challenges pose to national security of the USA?
3. When did the concept of environmental security become a part of the National Security Strategy?
4. What does the U. S. National Security Report outline?
5. What activities should be performed by the parties within the Environmental Security Initiative framework?

## 3. Give Russian equivalents to the following word combinations from the text.

1. element of regional and national security
2. supply lines
3. environmental security threat
4. to harm the territories of allies
5. to affect national security
6. security and well-being
7. to establish the framework
8. to promote prosperity and stability
9. to develop and conduct cooperative activities
10. mainstream foreign policy

**4. Find in the text English equivalents to the following Russian word combinations.**

1. наносить прямой вред территории
2. оказывать косвенное негативное воздействие
3. глобальная экономическая система
4. подрывать региональную стабильность
5. представлять долгосрочную угрозу безопасности и благосостоянию
6. внешние экологические риски
7. оставаться частью внешней политики
8. пережить экологические последствия Холодной войны
9. в соответствии с внешней политикой
10. направленные на достижение совместно согласованных целей

**5. Match adjectives and nouns to form word combinations from the text. Translate them into Russian.**

1. environmental	a. contamination
2. strategic	b. authorities
3. nuclear	c. risks
4. legal	d. stability
5. failing	e. activities
6. regional	f. effects
7. cooperative	g. interests
8. adverse	h. infrastructure

**6. Agree or disagree with the following statements.**

1. Environmental security is deemed to be a part of national security as it includes prevention of various environmental risks that may cause political and economic instability in the territory of the United States and its allies.

2. Environmental security concerns of the United States include only those arising within its national borders.

3. The U. S. National Security Strategy Report identifies environmental threats faced by the USA and outlines that addressing environmental concerns falls in the scope of American foreign policy.

4. Several U. S. agencies, such as the Department of Defense, the Department of Energy, and the Environmental Protection Agency have joined the forces to address environmental security concerns.

**7. Fill in the gaps with the words and word combinations from the box.**

a. bringing actions	b. pose a great threat
c. environmental security	d. national security
e. responsibilities	f. criminal prosecutions

Protecting \_\_\_\_\_ **1** \_\_\_\_\_ is the top priority of the U. S. Department of Justice. National security encompasses the national defense, foreign intelligence and counterintelligence, international and internal security, and foreign relations. This includes countering terrorism; combating espionage and economic espionage conducted for the benefit of any foreign government, foreign instrumentality, or foreign agent; enforcing export controls and sanctions; and disrupting cyber threats that are perpetrated by nation states, terrorists, or their agents or proxies.

\_\_\_\_\_ **2** \_\_\_\_\_ is an integral component of the U. S. national security. It examines the impact that the environment and environmental events has on national and international security. The environment has a direct link to the food security and the access to potable water sources in a country. Environmental events or natural disasters \_\_\_\_\_ **3** \_\_\_\_\_ to the stability of a country.

The U. S. Department of Justice is responsible for \_\_\_\_\_ **4** \_\_\_\_\_ in federal court to assure compliance with the nation's laws, including laws designed to prevent pollution and protect human health and the natural environment. Environment enforcement is one of the core \_\_\_\_\_ **5** \_\_\_\_\_ of the U. S. Department of Justice acting through the Environment and Natural Resource Division and the 94 United States Attorney's Offices located throughout the nation.

Because of the severity of the punishment, \_\_\_\_\_ **6** \_\_\_\_\_ of environmental violations usually focus on conduct that presents an endangerment, demonstrates a disregard for human safety or environmental integrity, or reflects a pattern of dishonest or false conduct.

**8. Round table.**

**Compare Environmental security strategies of the RF, the UK and the USA. Identify which of them is the most effective. Pass a resolution.**

**TEST QUESTIONS**

1. What is the main function of Interpol?
2. When and where was Interpol officially created?
3. In what way can international notices help Interpol activities?
4. What is extradition?
5. When may certain restrictions on extradition be imposed?
6. What is universal jurisdiction?

7. What is the purpose of International Criminal Law?
8. Why was Nuremberg Tribunal set up?
9. What is the difference between ethnic cleansing and genocide?
10. How can a war crime be defined?
11. What grievous crimes are considered war crimes?
12. Give examples of transnational crimes.
13. What's the difference between international and transnational crimes?
14. What does the term "piracy" mean?
15. How do ordinary downloaders accelerate the global spread of pirated movies?
16. Why is corruption considered to be one of the most serious crimes?
17. What is kleptocracy?
18. What does human trafficking as an international act include?
19. Who are child soldiers?
20. What is pimp-controlled trafficking?
21. Why is it difficult to give a precise definition of terrorism?
22. Why do terrorists use violence against non-combatants?
23. How does the term "quasi-terrorism" differ from the term "terrorism"?
24. What are the well-known sources of financing of terrorism?
25. What is a drug?
26. Give examples of mostly spread drugs.
27. What does second hand smoking mean?
28. What is Information Technology and what is the origin of this term?
  
29. What unlawful activities can be carried out by means of a computer?
30. What is the aim of information security?
31. What does personal information refer to?
32. How is environmental security defined in the Russian legislation?
33. What is the UK 'polluter pays' legislative principle aimed at?
34. What does the concept of the US environmental security include?

## Appendix I

### GLOSSARY

#### International law

to adopt (a resolution)	принимать (резолюцию)
adoption	принятие
acceptance	официальное принятие к сведению
accession	присоединение (к международному договору)
acquisition	приобретение, поглощение
to be vested with	быть наделенным (властью)
bilateral	двусторонний
(binding) source of law	(обязательный) источник права
commitment	обязательство, приверженность ч-л
conflict	конфликт, противоречие
conflict of laws	коллизионное право
conventional law	договорное право
custom	обычай
customary law	обычное право
entity	самостоятельное образование, сообщество
entry into force	вступление в силу
environment	окружающая среда, экология
extradition	экстрадиция, выдача (преступника)
instrument	международный договор
insurgent	мятежник, повстанец
legal entity	юридическое лицо
multilateral	многосторонний
party	сторона (в договоре, споре, уголовном/гражданском судопроизводстве)
peaceful settlement	мирное урегулирование

peremptory norm	императивная норма
private international law	международное частное право
public international law	международное публичное право
ratification	ратификация, скрепление подписью
settlement	урегулирование
signatory	сторона, подписавшая договор
source	источник
supranational law	наднациональное право
termination	прекращение срока действия, расторжение договора
to acquire	приобретать
to be in conflict	находиться в противоречии
to conclude a treaty	заключить международный договор
to enter into force	вступать в силу
to enter into legal commitments	вступать в договорные обязательства
to govern conflicts	регулировать конфликты
to maintain peace and security	поддерживать мир и безопасность
to settle	урегулировать
treatment (of)	обращение с
treaty	международный договор

## The United Nations Organization

agenda	повестка дня
on the agenda	на повестке дня
to put on the agenda	включить в повестку дня
to call on smb. to do smth.	призывать к-л. к чему-либо
to call on the UN members to furnish armed forces	призывать страны-члены ООН сформировать вооруженные силы
to convene a Summit	созывать Саммит
diplomatic relations	дипломатические отношения
to establish diplomatic relations	установить дипломатические отношения
to sever diplomatic relations	разорвать дипломатические отношения



severance of diplomatic relations	разрыв дипломатических отношений
human rights	права человека
pursuit (observance) of human rights	соблюдение прав человека
human rights violations	нарушения прав человека
to promote respect for human rights	содействовать уважению прав человека
to take up human rights issues	рассматривать вопросы о нарушениях прав человека
to maintain	сохранять
to maintain peace	сохранить мир
to maintain the truce	сохранять перемирие
mediation	посредничество
to undertake mediation	предпринять посреднические меры
international (world) peace	мир во всем мире
to achieve world peace	добиться глобального мира
to preserve world peace	сохранить мир во всем мире
to be a threat to peace	быть угрозой миру
to threaten peace	угрожать миру
to restore peace	восстановить мир
breach of peace	нарушение мира
to secure	обеспечить
to secure ceasefire	обеспечить прекращение огня
international security	международная безопасность
to settle disputes by peaceful means	решать споры мирным путем
to settle disputes through negotiations	решать спорные вопросы путем переговоров

## National security strategy

act of intimidation	акция устрашения
aircraft carriers	авианосцы
assassination	политическое, заказное убийство
cessation of hostilities	прекращение боевых действий
Chancellor of the Exchequer	министр финансов Великобритании
changing environment	изменяющаяся обстановка
consolidating the status	укрепление положения

---

contingency (planning) strategies	стратегия планирования в чрезвычайной ситуации
counterintelligence services	органы контрразведки
destruction	разрушение
disruption	разрушение, подрыв
disruption of functioning of state bodies	нарушение работы государственных органов
drug addiction	наркотическая зависимость
emissary	агент, шпион
enmity	вражда, враждебность
ensuring stability	обеспечение стабильности
extraordinary rendition	экстрадиция
illegal trafficking	незаконный оборот
improving economic competitiveness	повышение экономической конкурентоспособности
information on confidential activity	сведения о закрытой деятельности
instigation of “color revolutions”	подстрекательство к совершению “цветных революций”
intelligence-gathering	сбор разведывательной информации
military counterintelligence	военная контрразведка
military might	военная мощь
mutually beneficial partnership	взаимовыгодное партнерство
nuclear deterrence	средство ядерного сдерживания
nuclear deterrent	ядерный щит
nuclear weapons	ядерное оружие
offensive weapons	наступательные виды оружия
resolute combat	решительная борьба
resolving international problems	разрешение международных вопросов
safety	защищенность, безопасность
security	безопасность
self-determination	самоопределение
settlement process	процесс урегулирования
soft power	мягкая сила (дип.)
sovereignty	суверенитет
squadrons	зд. эскадрильи

state armament programme	госпрограмма вооружения
successor	преемник
swindler	жулик, мошенник
country's defenses	силы обороны страны
international relationship	международные отношения
prevention of threats of national security	предотвращение угроз национальной безопасности
threat	угроза
to accomplish	совершать, выполнять
to advance smth/smb	выдвигать довод, предложение
to be confronted by danger	сталкиваться с опасностью
to bring down	снизить, сократить
to confront a policy of constrain	противостоять политике сдерживания
to control domestic and foreign conditions	контролировать внутренние и внешние условия
to counteract threats	противодействовать угрозам
to deliver "a full-spectrum approach"	демонстрировать всесторонний подход
to deploy	развертывать (военные действия)
to destroy the unity and territorial integrity	уничтожать единство и территориальную целостность
to ensure development	обеспечить развитие
to envisage exerting pressure	предусматривать оказание давления
to escalate conflicts	обострять конфликт
to establish priorities	установить приоритеты
to exert	оказывать давление, влияние
to harness	использовать
to hunt down	выслеживать
to impinge on	посягать
to initiate counteraction	предпринимать меры противодействия
to maintain economic relations	поддерживать экономические отношения
to meet the NATO targets	выполнять обязательства перед НАТО
to observe the ceasefire	соблюдать режим прекращения огня
to overthrow legitimate political authorities	свержение законных политических режимов

to permeate both civilian and military sectors	охватывать гражданские и военные секторы
to place smth/smb on a statutory footing	подводить ч-л под законодательную базу
to preserve physical integrity	сохранять личную неприкосновенность
to preserve stability	сохранять стабильность
to prevent activity	пресечь деятельность
to pursue a policy of constrain	проводить политику сдерживания
to put one's life on the line	рисковать жизнью
to set tasks	определить задачи
to strengthen national security	укреплять национальную безопасность
to tighten monitoring of the refugee flows	усилить контроль над потоками беженцев
to underpin security	укрепить безопасность
to update	обновлять
to work hand in glove with	работать в тесном контакте
total black holes in the budget	дефицит бюджета
undermining the unity and integrity	подрыв единства и целостности
unlawful infringements	незаконные нарушения
weapons of mass destruction (WMD)	оружие массового уничтожения
widespread proliferation of weapons	широкомасштабное распространение вооружений

## International police organization

African Malagasy Common Organization	Общая Афро-Малагасийская Организация
asset recovery	возвращение активов
commitment to the rule of law	приверженность верховенству права
confiscation of criminal proceeds	конфискация доходов, полученных преступным путем
counterfeiting	производство контрафакта, фальшивомонетничество
divergences in approaches and priorities	различия в подходах и приоритетах
diversity of law enforcement structures	многообразие правоохранительных структур

for-profit entities	коммерческие организации
international notice	международное уведомление
money laundering	отмывание денег
non-profit bodies	некоммерческие организации
nuclear and explosive materials	ядерные и взрывчатые вещества
on a multilateral and a bilateral basis	на многосторонней и двусторонней основе
prerequisite	необходимый, обязательный
smuggling of migrants	незаконный ввоз мигрантов
to comply with new international standards	соответствовать новым международным стандартам
to coordinate and respond to inquiries	координировать и реагировать на запросы
to counter	противостоять
to encourage convergence	содействовать сближению
to ensure and promote mutual assistance	обеспечивать содействие и оказывать взаимопомощь
to inhibit crime / to suppress crimes	сдерживать преступность
to oversee the implementation of decisions	осуществлять контроль за решениями
to pose a threat to	представлять угрозу
to seek to evade detection	стремиться избежать обнаружения
World Customs Organization	Всемирная таможенная организация

## Extradition and Universal jurisdiction

dual criminality treaty	договор о двойной преступности
dubious evidence	сомнительные доказательства
erga omnes	лат. «всем в назидание», касаемо всех
European Arrest Warrant	Европейский ордер на арест
extrajudicial execution	казнь без суда и следствия
hurdle	препятствие
in accordance with domestic law and applicable treaties	в соответствии с внутренним законодательством и международными договорами
international community	международное сообщество
intrusion in the liberty of the person	посягательство на свободу личности

list treaty	договор-перечень
nationals	граждане
proponent of universal jurisdiction	сторонник универсальной юрисдикции
reciprocity	взаимный обмен
safe haven	зона безопасности
surrender of a suspected or convicted criminal	выдача подозреваемого или осужденного
to assert universal jurisdiction	устанавливать универсальную юрисдикцию
to claim criminal jurisdiction over an accused person	требовать применение уголовной юрисдикции к обвиняемому
to cover a pardon or an amnesty	распространяться на помилование или амнистию
to deny extradition	отказать в выдаче преступника/ отказать в экстрадиции
to exercise universal jurisdiction	осуществлять универсальную юрисдикцию
to grant extradition	предоставить возможность экстрадиции преступника
to impose certain restrictions on extradition	ввести определенные ограничения на выдачу преступника
to tolerate jurisdictional arbitrage	допускать юрисдикцию арбитражного суда
universal jurisdiction	универсальная юрисдикция

## International crime

affective	влиятельный
antitrust	антитрестовский, антимонопольный
arms trafficking	незаконный оборот оружия
bedrock	основной, краеугольный
bid rigging	сговор на торгах, торги
bookkeeping	бухгалтерский учет
child-soldier	ребенок — солдат
collusion	преступный сговор, пособничество
competitive	конкурентный, конкурентноспособный
conspiracy	заговор, сговор
contingency	чрезвычайный, непредвиденный

---

counterfeiting	подделка документов, выпуск контрафактной продукции, фальшивомонетничество
credit card fraud	мошенничество с кредитными картами
crime prevention strategy	стратегия предотвращения преступления
crimes against humanity	преступления против человечества
crimes of aggression	преступления агрессии
cronyism	кумовство, блат
database of the world wanted criminals	база данных разыскиваемых преступников
denial of medical treatment	лишение медицинской помощи
disturbances	волнения
DNA profiles and fingerprinting	анализ ДНК и снятие отпечатков пальцев
drug trafficking	торговля наркотиками, незаконный оборот наркотиков
economic integrity and political stability	экономическая и политическая стабильность
exploitation in spheres of production or service	эксплуатация в сфере производства и услуг
gang traffickers	банда торговцев
global market	мировой рынок
graft	взяточничество
human illegal exploitation	незаконная эксплуатация людей
human trafficking	незаконная продажа или перепродажа, торговля людьми
humiliation or degradation of human beings	унижение людей
immigrant	человек, приезжающий в страну на жительство
impact on socio-economic development	влияние на социально-экономическое развитие
indignities	унижение, оскорбление, пренебрежение
international investigation and subsequent extradition	международное расследование с последующей экстрадицией
juvenile delinquency	подростковая преступность, преступность несовершеннолетних

kleptocracy	клептократия
merchandise	товар
to merchandise	торговать
merger	слияние, объединение
migrant	мигрант, переселенец
money laundering	отмывание денег
nepotism	протекция, семейственность
organ trafficking	незаконная продажа человеческих органов
penologist	пенолог
people most affected by	люди наиболее подверженные влиянию
people smuggling	незаконный ввоз рабочей силы
pimp	сутенер, сводник
pimping	сводничество.
preparation for committing an offence	подготовка к совершению правонарушения
sex trafficking	незаконная продажа людей с целью вовлечения в занятие проституцией или другая форма сексуальной эксплуатации
slave labor	рабский труд
slave trade	работорговля
the conscience of mankind	совесть человечества
through force, fraud, coercion	с помощью силы, обмана, принуждения,
through unlawful recruitment	с помощью (путем) незаконного найма
to affect	влиять, воздействовать
to be sexually exploited in exchange for something	использоваться для предоставления сексуальных услуг в обмен на что-то
to cause mass political or military atrocities	вызывать (быть причиной) массовых политических и военных злодеяний
to complement national judicial system	дополнять национальную судебную систему
to eliminate racial discrimination	исключить расовую дискриминацию
to enforce international law	обеспечивать соблюдение норм международного права



to escape across a border	скрыться за границей
to exercise jurisdiction	осуществлять юрисдикцию
to exploit	использовать, эксплуатировать
to impose measures	налагать меры
to migrate	мигрировать, перемещаться
to pimp	сводничать, быть организатором сексуальной эксплуатации
to promote the observance of international standards and norms in criminal justice	содействовать соблюдению международных стандартов и норм уголовного правосудия
to pronounce judgment	выносить судебное решение
to restore dignity	восстанавливать достоинство
to tackle drug trafficking and organized crime	бороться с незаконным оборотом наркотиков и организованной преступностью
traffickers	торговцы незаконным товаром
use of child-soldiers	использование несовершеннолетнего, который является частью регулярного или нерегулярного вооруженного формирования, в любом качестве
vigor	рвение, энтузиазм
vulnerability	уязвимость
vulnerability of people facing recruiters	уязвимость людей, сталкивающихся с вербовщиками
vulnerable social groups	уязвимые социальные группы
within domestic jurisdiction	в пределах внутригосударственной юрисдикции

## Terrorism

abomination	отвращение, мерзость
bargaining chips	козырь в запасе (на переговорах)
casualty	жертва происшествия
combatant	участник сражения
compliance with	соблюдение (положений договора, конвенций, протоколов)
counter-terror measure	контртеррористическое мероприятие
Counter-Terrorism Committee	Антитеррористический комитет
criminal endeavors	покушение на преступление
felon	преступник, совершивший тяжкое преступление

---

hawala system	неформальная система денежных переводов, ассоциирующаяся в последнее время с отмыванием денег и финансированием терроризма
henchmen, accomplices	пособники, приспешники, соучастники
hostage taking operation	операция по захвату заложников
informal arrangement	неформальное соглашение
legal arrangements	юридические договоренности
massacre	бойня, резня
masterminds, ringleaders, instigators	заказчики, зачинщики
means of coercion	средство принуждения
nebulous	смутный, неясный
oppression	угнетение, гнет, тирания
perspective	взгляд, точка зрения
political contest	политическая борьба
preemption	уничтожение упреждающим ударом
preventive measure	предупредительная мера
psychological warfare	психологическая война
strong and merciless enemy	сильный и беспощадный враг
subterfuge	уловка, безнаказанность, махинация
suspicious money transfer operation	операции по переводу сомнительных денежных средств
terrorist front organizations	подставная организация, действующая в интересах террористов
the financing of terrorism	финансирование терроризма
The International Convention for the Suppression of the Financing of Terrorism	Международная конвенция по борьбе с финансированием терроризма
to cause an effect	оказать воздействие
to confer coercive power	утверждать власть силами принуждения
to counter terrorism	бороться с терроризмом
to counter vigorously	решительно противостоять
to curb the financing of terrorism	пресечь финансирование терроризма

to disguise	изменять внешний вид
to elicit response	получить отклик
to eliminate, destroy, wipe out, end	полностью искоренить, ликвидировать
to free hostages	освободить заложников
to further an objective	способствовать достижению цели
to intercept	перехватывать информацию
to keep abreast of	идти в ногу со временем
to maim	нанести увечье, причинить тяжкое телесное повреждение
to oppose	сопротивляться, быть против
to perpetrate	совершить преступление
to pursue extreme goals	преследовать крайние цели
to shut the flow of money	перекрыть поток денежных средств
to tackle terrorist financing	вести борьбу с финансированием терроризма
truism	прописная истина
violence and destruction	насилие и разрушения
weaponry	вооружение, боевая техника

## Combating drug abuse

abusable drugs	препараты, не разрешенные к применению, наркотики, незаконный оборот наркотиков
abuse	злоупотребление
addiction	наркомания, зависимость, пристрастие
alcohol abuse	злоупотребление алкоголем
available drugs	доступные наркотики
chocolate addiction	пристрастие, злоупотребление шоколадом
drug	наркотик, лекарство, средство, лекарственный препарат, медикамент
drug abuse	наркомания, злоупотребление наркотическими средствами
drug addiction treatment	лечение от наркотической зависимости

drug consumer	потребитель наркотиков
drug control	контроль над наркотиками
drug related crimes	преступления, связанные с наркотиками
drug taker	лицо, принимающее наркотики, наркоман
drug taking	употребление наркотиков
drug trafficking	незаконный оборот, транспортировка и продажа наркотиков, наркотрафик
evitable	очевидный, понятный
heavy user	человек, давно и в большом количестве употребляющий наркотики
illicit drugs	незаконный оборот наркотиков
inevitable	неизбежный, неминуемый, неотвратимый
inevitably will bring to trouble	неизбежно приведет к трагедии
misuse	злоупотребление, неправильное использование
non-abusable drugs	медицинские препараты, разрешенные к применению
substance abuse disorder	заболевания, связанные с употреблением наркотиков
to addict	увлекаться, пристраститься, подсесть на что-то
to use marijuana	использовать, употреблять марихуану
tobacco addiction	зависимость от табакокурения
vital	насущный, жизненно важный

## **Cyber and informational security**

binary code	двоичный код
black hat hacker	хакер, взломщик кодов
cloud computing	облачная обработка данных
cyber defamation	кибер-диффамация, распространение порочащей информации через Интернет
Cyber Security Law	закон о кибербезопасности

cybercrime	киберпреступность
data diddling	обработка данных (тип атаки с изменением исходных данных непосредственно перед их обработкой компьютером, а затем возвращением их в исходное состояние после завершения обработки)
data storage	хранение данных, информации
digital dissemination	цифровой метод распространения
digital forensics	компьютерная криминалистика
e-governance	электронное управление
e-mail spoofing	подделка электронного адреса или письма
electronic record discovery	обнаружение электронных записей
encryption software	программное обеспечение для шифрования
general purpose computing machines	универсальные компьютеры
hardware	аппаратные компьютерные средства, комплектующие
information assurance	обеспечение целостности и безопасности информации
information extortion	вымогательство информации
information systems auditing	проверка информационных систем
irreparable financial loss	невозполнимый финансовый ущерб
IT architectures	схемы построений в области ИТ
laptop	ноутбук
livelihood	средства к существованию
logic bomb	логическая бомба, программа намеренного искажения данных
malicious cyber-attack	злонамеренная кибер-атака
misuse of computers	неправомерное использование компьютеров
morphing	морфинг, технология компьютерной графики, создающая плавный переход изображений от одного объекта к другому
network operator	сетевой оператор
nonvolatile tape	энергонезависимый ленточный накопитель

---

online-to-offline transaction	операция онлайн-оффлайн (технология, позволяющая совместить цифровой онлайн-мир и реальный офлайн-мир с помощью устройств, подключенных к интернету, и Wi-Fi роутеров на торговых объектах)
package tracking	отслеживание отправленных покупок
peripherals	подключаемое оборудование, внешние устройства
personal information leak	утечка персональных данных
phishing attack	фишинговая атака (отправка мошеннического сообщения с целью получения конфиденциальных личных данных)
protection of individual privacy	защита личной конфиденциальности
purpose built machines	специализированные машины
safeguard for national cyberspace sovereignty	обеспечение суверенитета национального киберпространства
salami attacks	атака “салами”, вид компьютерного мошенничества в банковской сфере, при котором мелкие, трудно-отслеживаемые суммы снимаются в ходе безналичных операций и накапливаются на счете, указанном преступником
securing networks and allied infrastructure	обеспечение безопасности сетей и смежной инфраструктуры
sensitive data	конфиденциальная информация
Social Security number	номер социального страхования
software	программное обеспечение
solid state flash drive	твердотельный флеш-накопитель
spoofed	поддельный
storage	хранилище
telecom fraud	телекоммуникационное мошенничество
to amass	накапливать
to avoid a protective firewall	избегать установки защитной антивирусной программы
to be not compromised	не подвергаться риску

to discourage	препятствовать
to perpetuate	увековечить
to reduce or mitigate threats	уменьшить или смягчить угрозы
virus protection software	противовирусное программное обеспечение
volatile random-access memory	энергозависимое оперативное запоминающее устройство
web jacking	ограбление посредством Интернета
worm	вирусная программа-червь

## Environmental protection

Biodiversity Strategy for England	Стратегия биоразнообразия для Англии
degradation and depletion of essential environmental resources	ухудшение и истощение важнейших природных ресурсов
environmental legislation	законодательство в области охраны окружающей среды
environmental permit	экологическое разрешение
Environmental Security Initiative	программа по обеспечению экологической безопасности
environmental security strategy	стратегия экологической безопасности
flood, flooding	наводнение
Greening Government Commitments	государственные обязательства по озеленению
heatwave planning	планирование тепловой энергии
increased frequency of extreme weather events	увеличившаяся частота экстремальных погодных явлений
law enforcement practice	правоохранительная деятельность
low-carbon infrastructure	инфраструктура с низким уровнем выбросов углерода
mitigation	смягчение
natural and manmade disasters	природные и техногенные катастрофы
Natural Capital Committee	Комитет по природному капиталу
nuclear contamination	радиоактивное загрязнение
rising sea levels	подъем уровня моря

spent fuel and waste	отработанное топливо и отходы
to address selected energy, environmental, and related national security concerns	содействовать решению некоторых вопросов обеспечения энергетической, экологической и других видов национальной безопасности
to enhance environmental governance	усилить контроль за природоохранной деятельностью
to ensure successful and sustainable development	обеспечивать успешное и устойчивое развитие
to ensure the environmental security	обеспечивать экологическую безопасность
to face environmental concerns	сталкиваться с проблемами окружающей среды
to reduce greenhouse gas emissions	сократить выбросы парниковых газов
waste disposal and recycling industry	предприятие для утилизации и переработки отходов



## **Appendix II**

### **READER**

#### **Text 1. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights**

##### **Preamble**

Whereas recognition of the inherent dignity and of the equal and inalienable rights of all members of the human family is the foundation of freedom, justice and peace in the world,

Whereas disregard and contempt for human rights have resulted in barbarous acts which have outraged the conscience of mankind, and the advent of a world in which human beings shall enjoy freedom of speech and belief and freedom from fear and want has been proclaimed as the highest aspiration of the common people,

Whereas it is essential, if man is not to be compelled to have recourse, as a last resort, to rebellion against tyranny and oppression, that human rights should be protected by the rule of law,

Whereas it is essential to promote the development of friendly relations between nations,

Whereas the peoples of the United Nations have in the Charter reaffirmed their faith in fundamental human rights, in the dignity and worth of the human person and in the equal rights of men and women and have determined to promote social progress and better standards of life in larger freedom,

Whereas Member States have pledged themselves to achieve, in co-operation with the United Nations, the promotion of universal respect for and observance of human rights and fundamental freedoms,

Whereas a common understanding of these rights and freedoms is of the greatest importance for the full realization of this pledge,

Now, Therefore THE GENERAL ASSEMBLY proclaims THIS UNIVERSAL DECLARATION OF HUMAN RIGHTS as a common standard of achievement for all peoples and all nations, to the end that every individual and every organ of society, keeping this Declaration constantly in mind, shall strive by teaching and education to promote respect for these rights and

freedoms and by progressive measures, national and international, to secure their universal and effective recognition and observance, both among the peoples of Member States themselves and among the peoples of territories under their jurisdiction.

<p>Article 1 All human beings are born free and equal in dignity and rights. They are endowed with reason and conscience and should act towards one another in a spirit of brotherhood.</p>	<p>Статья 1</p> <p>Все люди рождаются свободными и равными в своем достоинстве и правах. Они наделены разумом и совестью и должны поступать в отношении друг друга в духе братства.</p>
<p>Article 2 Everyone is entitled to all the rights and freedoms set forth in this Declaration, without distinction of any kind, such as race, colour, sex, language, religion, political or other opinion, national or social origin, property, birth or other status. Furthermore, no distinction shall be made on the basis of the political, jurisdictional or international status of the country or territory to which a person belongs, whether it be independent, trust, non-self-governing or under any other limitation of sovereignty.</p>	<p>Статья 2</p> <p>Каждый человек должен обладать всеми правами и всеми свободами, провозглашенными настоящей Декларацией, без какого бы то ни было различия, как-то в отношении расы, цвета кожи, пола, языка, религии, политических или иных убеждений, национального или социального происхождения, имущественного, сословного или иного положения.</p> <p>Кроме того, не должно проводиться никакого различия на основе политического, правового или международного статуса страны или территории, к которой человек принадлежит, независимо от того, является ли эта территория независимой, подопечной, самоуправляющейся или как-либо иначе ограниченной в своем суверенитете.</p>
<p>Article 3 Everyone has the right to life, liberty and security of person.</p>	<p>Статья 3</p> <p>Каждый человек имеет право на жизнь, на свободу и на личную неприкосновенность.</p>
<p>Article 4 No one shall be held in slavery or servitude; slavery and the slave trade shall be prohibited in all their forms.</p>	<p>Статья 4</p> <p>Никто не должен содержаться в рабстве или в подневольном состоянии; рабство и работорговля запрещаются во всех их видах.</p>

<p>Article 5 No one shall be subjected to torture or to cruel, inhuman or degrading treatment or punishment.</p>	<p>Статья 5 Никто не должен подвергаться пыткам или жестоким, бесчеловечным или унижающим его достоинство обращению и наказанию.</p>
<p>Article 6 Everyone has the right to recognition everywhere as a person before the law.</p>	<p>Статья 6 Каждый человек, где бы он ни находился, имеет право на признание его правосубъектности.</p>
<p>Article 7 All are equal before the law and are entitled without any discrimination to equal protection of the law. All are entitled to equal protection against any discrimination in violation of this Declaration and against any incitement to such discrimination.</p>	<p>Статья 7 Все люди равны перед законом и имеют право, без всякого различия, на равную защиту закона. Все люди имеют право на равную защиту от какой бы то ни было дискриминации, нарушающей настоящую Декларацию, и от какого бы то ни было подстрекательства к такой дискриминации.</p>
<p>Article 8 Everyone has the right to an effective remedy by the competent national tribunals for acts violating the fundamental rights granted him by the constitution or by law.</p>	<p>Статья 8 Каждый человек имеет право на эффективное восстановление в правах компетентными национальными судами в случаях нарушения его основных прав, предоставленных ему конституцией или законом.</p>
<p>Article 9 No one shall be subjected to arbitrary arrest, detention or exile.</p>	<p>Статья 9 Никто не может быть подвергнут произвольному аресту, задержанию или изгнанию.</p>
<p>Article 10 Everyone is entitled in full equality to a fair and public hearing by an independent and impartial tribunal, in the determination of his rights and obligations and of any criminal charge against him.</p>	<p>Статья 10 Каждый человек, для определения его прав и обязанностей и для установления обоснованности предъявленного ему уголовного обвинения, имеет право, на основе полного равенства, на то, чтобы его дело было рассмотрено гласно и с соблюдением всех требований справедливости независимым и беспристрастным судом.</p>

<p>Article 11</p> <p>(1) Everyone charged with a penal offence has the right to be presumed innocent until proved guilty according to law in a public trial at which he has had all the guarantees necessary for his defence.</p> <p>(2) No one shall be held guilty of any penal offence on account of any act or omission which did not constitute a penal offence, under national or international law, at the time when it was committed. Nor shall a heavier penalty be imposed than the one that was applicable at the time the penal offence was committed.</p>	<p>Статья 11</p> <p>1. Каждый человек, обвиняемый в совершении преступления, имеет право считаться невиновным до тех пор, пока его виновность не будет установлена законным порядком путем гласного судебного разбирательства, при котором ему обеспечиваются все возможности для защиты.</p> <p>2. Никто не может быть осужден за преступление на основании совершения какого-либо деяния или за бездействие, которые во время их совершения не составляли преступления по национальным законам или по международному праву. Не может также налагаться наказание более тяжкое, нежели то, которое могло быть применено в то время, когда преступление было совершено.</p>
<p>Article 12</p> <p>No one shall be subjected to arbitrary interference with his privacy, family, home or correspondence, nor to attacks upon his honour and reputation. Everyone has the right to the protection of the law against such interference or attacks.</p>	<p>Статья 12</p> <p>Никто не может подвергаться произвольному вмешательству в его личную и семейную жизнь, произвольным посягательствам на неприкосновенность его жилища, тайну его корреспонденции или на его честь и репутацию. Каждый человек имеет право на защиту закона от такого вмешательства или таких посягательств.</p>
<p>Article 13</p> <p>(1) Everyone has the right to freedom of movement and residence within the borders of each state.</p> <p>(2) Everyone has the right to leave any country, including his own, and to return to his country.</p>	<p>Статья 13</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет право свободно передвигаться и выбирать себе местожительство в пределах каждого государства.</p> <p>2. Каждый человек имеет право покидать любую страну, включая свою собственную, и возвращаться в свою страну.</p>

<p>Article 14</p> <p>(1) Everyone has the right to seek and to enjoy in other countries asylum from persecution.</p> <p>(2) This right may not be invoked in the case of prosecutions genuinely arising from non-political crimes or from acts contrary to the purposes and principles of the United Nations.</p>	<p>Статья 14</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет право искать убежища от преследования в других странах и пользоваться этим убежищем.</p> <p>2. Это право не может быть использовано в случае преследования, в действительности основанного на совершении неполитического преступления, или деяния, противоречащего целям и принципам Организации Объединенных Наций.</p>
<p>Article 15</p> <p>(1) Everyone has the right to a nationality.</p> <p>(2) No one shall be arbitrarily deprived of his nationality nor denied the right to change his nationality.</p>	<p>Статья 15</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет право на гражданство.</p> <p>2. Никто не может быть произвольно лишен своего гражданства или права изменить свое гражданство.</p>
<p>Article 16</p> <p>(1) Men and women of full age, without any limitation due to race, nationality or religion, have the right to marry and to found a family. They are entitled to equal rights as to marriage, during marriage and at its dissolution.</p> <p>(2) Marriage shall be entered into only with the free and full consent of the intending spouses.</p> <p>(3) The family is the natural and fundamental group unit of society and is entitled to protection by society and the State.</p>	<p>Статья 16</p> <p>1. Мужчины и женщины, достигшие совершеннолетия, имеют право без всяких ограничений по признаку расы, национальности или религии вступать в брак и основывать свою семью. Они пользуются одинаковыми правами в отношении вступления в брак, во время состояния в браке и во время его расторжения.</p> <p>2. Брак может быть заключен только при свободном и полном согласии обеих вступающих в брак сторон.</p> <p>3. Семья является естественной и основной ячейкой общества и имеет право на защиту со стороны общества и государства.</p>
<p>Article 17</p> <p>(1) Everyone has the right to own property alone as well as in association with others.</p> <p>(2) No one shall be arbitrarily deprived of his property.</p>	<p>Статья 17</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет право владеть имуществом как единолично, так и совместно с другими.</p> <p>2. Никто не должен быть произвольно лишен своего имущества.</p>

<p>Article 18</p> <p>Everyone has the right to freedom of thought, conscience and religion; this right includes freedom to change his religion or belief, and freedom, either alone or in community with others and in public or private, to manifest his religion or belief in teaching, practice, worship and observance.</p>	<p>Статья 18</p> <p>Каждый человек имеет право на свободу мысли, совести и религии; это право включает свободу менять свою религию или убеждения и свободу исповедовать свою религию или убеждения как единолично, так и сообща с другими, публичным или частным порядком в учении, богослужении и выполнении религиозных и ритуальных обрядов.</p>
<p>Article 19</p> <p>Everyone has the right to freedom of opinion and expression; this right includes freedom to hold opinions without interference and to seek, receive and impart information and ideas through any media and regardless of frontiers.</p>	<p>Статья 19</p> <p>Каждый человек имеет право на свободу убеждений и на свободное выражение их; это право включает свободу беспрепятственно придерживаться своих убеждений и свободу искать, получать и распространять информацию и идеи любыми средствами и независимо от государственных границ.</p>
<p>Article 20</p> <p>(1) Everyone has the right to freedom of peaceful assembly and association.</p> <p>(2) No one may be compelled to belong to an association.</p>	<p>Статья 20</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет право на свободу мирных собраний и ассоциаций.</p> <p>2. Никто не может быть принуждаем вступать в какую-либо ассоциацию.</p>
<p>Article 21</p> <p>(1) Everyone has the right to take part in the government of his country, directly or through freely chosen representatives.</p> <p>(2) Everyone has the right of equal access to public service in his country.</p> <p>(3) The will of the people shall be the basis of the authority of government; this will shall be expressed in periodic</p>	<p>Статья 21</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет право принимать участие в управлении своей страной непосредственно или через посредство свободно избранных представителей.</p> <p>2. Каждый человек имеет право равного доступа к государственной службе в своей стране.</p>

<p>and genuine elections which shall be by universal and equal suffrage and shall be held by secret vote or by equivalent free voting procedures.</p>	<p>3. Воля народа должна быть основой власти правительства; эта воля должна находить себе выражение в периодических и не-фальсифицированных выборах, которые должны проводиться при всеобщем и равном избирательном праве путем тайного голосования или же посредством других равнозначных форм, обеспечивающих свободу голосования.</p>
<p>Article 22 Everyone, as a member of society, has the right to social security and is entitled to realization, through national effort and international co-operation and in accordance with the organization and resources of each State, of the economic, social and cultural rights indispensable for his dignity and the free development of his personality.</p>	<p>Статья 22 Каждый человек, как член общества, имеет право на социальное обеспечение и на осуществление необходимых для поддержания его достоинства и для свободного развития его личности прав в экономической, социальной и культурной областях через посредство национальных усилий и международного сотрудничества и в соответствии со структурой и ресурсами каждого государства.</p>
<p>Article 23 (1) Everyone has the right to work, to free choice of employment, to just and favourable conditions of work and to protection against unemployment. (2) Everyone, without any discrimination, has the right to equal pay for equal work. (3) Everyone who works has the right to just and favourable remuneration ensuring for himself and his family an existence worthy of human dignity, and supplemented, if necessary, by other means of social protection. (4) Everyone has the right to form and to join trade unions for the protection of his interests.</p>	<p>Статья 23 1. Каждый человек имеет право на труд, на свободный выбор работы, на справедливые и благоприятные условия труда и на защиту от безработицы. 2. Каждый человек, без какой-либо дискриминации, имеет право на равную оплату за равный труд. 3. Каждый работающий имеет право на справедливое и удовлетворительное вознаграждение, обеспечивающее достойное человека существование для него самого и его семьи, и дополняемое, при необходимости, другими средствами социального обеспечения. 4. Каждый человек имеет право создавать профессиональные союзы и входить в профессиональные союзы для защиты своих интересов.</p>

<p>Article 24</p> <p>Everyone has the right to rest and leisure, including reasonable limitation of working hours and periodic holidays with pay.</p>	<p>Статья 24</p> <p>Каждый человек имеет право на отдых и досуг, включая право на разумное ограничение рабочего дня и на оплачиваемый периодический отпуск.</p>
<p>Article 25</p> <p>(1) Everyone has the right to a standard of living adequate for the health and well-being of himself and of his family, including food, clothing, housing and medical care and necessary social services, and the right to security in the event of unemployment, sickness, disability, widowhood, old age or other lack of livelihood in circumstances beyond his control.</p> <p>(2) Motherhood and childhood are entitled to special care and assistance. All children, whether born in or out of wedlock, shall enjoy the same social protection.</p>	<p>Статья 25</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет право на такой жизненный уровень, включая пищу, одежду, жилище, медицинский уход и необходимое социальное обслуживание, который необходим для поддержания здоровья и благосостояния его самого и его семьи, и право на обеспечение на случай безработицы, болезни, инвалидности, вдовства, наступления старости или иного случая утраты средств к существованию по не зависящим от него обстоятельствам.</p> <p>2. Материнство и младенчество дают право на особое попечение и помощь. Все дети, родившиеся в браке или вне брака, должны пользоваться одинаковой социальной защитой.</p>
<p>Article 26</p> <p>(1) Everyone has the right to education. Education shall be free, at least in the elementary and fundamental stages. Elementary education shall be compulsory. Technical and professional education shall be made generally available and higher education shall be equally accessible to all on the basis of merit.</p> <p>(2) Education shall be directed to the full development of the human personality and to the strengthening</p>	<p>Статья 26</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет право на образование. Образование должно быть бесплатным по меньшей мере в том, что касается начального и общего образования. Начальное образование должно быть обязательным. Техническое и профессиональное образование должно быть общедоступным, и высшее образование должно быть одинаково доступным для всех на основе способностей каждого.</p>



<p>of respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms. It shall promote understanding, tolerance and friendship among all nations, racial or religious groups, and shall further the activities of the United Nations for the maintenance of peace.</p> <p>(3) Parents have a prior right to choose the kind of education that shall be given to their children.</p>	<p>2. Образование должно быть направлено к полному развитию человеческой личности и к увеличению уважения к правам человека и основным свободам. Образование должно содействовать взаимопониманию, терпимости и дружбе между всеми народами, расовыми и религиозными группами, и должно содействовать деятельности Организации Объединенных Наций по поддержанию мира.</p> <p>3. Родители имеют право приоритета в выборе вида образования для своих малолетних детей.</p>
<p>Article 27</p> <p>(1) Everyone has the right freely to participate in the cultural life of the community, to enjoy the arts and to share in scientific advancement and its benefits.</p> <p>(2) Everyone has the right to the protection of the moral and material interests resulting from any scientific, literary or artistic production of which he is the author.</p>	<p>Статья 27</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет право свободно участвовать в культурной жизни общества, наслаждаться искусством, участвовать в научном прогрессе и пользоваться его благами.</p> <p>2. Каждый человек имеет право на защиту его моральных и материальных интересов, являющихся результатом научных, литературных или художественных трудов, автором которых он является.</p>
<p>Article 28</p> <p>Everyone is entitled to a social and international order in which the rights and freedoms set forth in this Declaration can be fully realized.</p>	<p>Статья 28</p> <p>Каждый человек имеет право на социальный и международный порядок, при котором права и свободы, изложенные в настоящей Декларации, могут быть полностью осуществлены.</p>
<p>Article 29</p> <p>(1) Everyone has duties to the community in which alone the free and full development of his personality is possible.</p> <p>(2) In the exercise of his rights and freedoms, everyone shall be subject</p>	<p>Статья 29</p> <p>1. Каждый человек имеет обязанности перед обществом, в котором только и возможно свободное и полное развитие его личности.</p> <p>2. При осуществлении своих прав и свобод каждый человек должен подвергаться только таким ограничениям, какие установлены</p>

<p>only to such limitations as are determined by law solely for the purpose of securing due recognition and respect for the rights and freedoms of others and of meeting the just requirements of morality, public order and the general welfare in a democratic society.</p> <p>(3) These rights and freedoms may in no case be exercised contrary to the purposes and principles of the United Nations.</p>	<p>законом исключительно с целью обеспечения должного признания и уважения прав и свобод других и удовлетворения справедливых требований морали, общественного порядка и общего благосостояния в демократическом обществе.</p> <p>3. Осуществление этих прав и свобод ни в коем случае не должно противоречить целям и принципам Организации Объединенных Наций.</p>
<p>Article 30</p> <p>Nothing in this Declaration may be interpreted as implying for any State, group or person any right to engage in any activity or to perform any act aimed at the destruction of any of the rights and freedoms set forth herein.</p>	<p>Статья 30</p> <p>Ничто в настоящей Декларации не может быть истолковано, как предоставление какому-либо государству, группе лиц или отдельным лицам права заниматься какой-либо деятельностью или совершать действия, направленные к уничтожению прав и свобод, изложенных в настоящей Декларации.</p>

## **Text 2. President's speech at a meeting of the Federal Security Service board**

President of Russia Vladimir Putin:

Good afternoon, we are here today to review the results of the Federal Security Service's work in 2015 and set the tasks for the upcoming period.

Let me start by thanking all of you, everyone working in the central office and the regional offices and special subdivisions, for your competent work to ensure Russia's security and stable development. This includes the efforts of our colleagues working in military counterintelligence, ensuring, for example, the safety of our pilots carrying out counterterrorist operations in Syria and the anti-terrorist units working here inside Russia. To say a few more words about the Syrian issue, as you know, on February 22, Russia and the United States of America adopted a joint statement on cessation of hostilities in Syria. The purpose of this document is to give impetus to the efforts to resolve the Syrian conflict, more precisely, to boost the efforts to find a political solution and put in place the conditions for starting the settlement process.

Of course, we are fully aware that this will be a difficult and perhaps even contradiction-filled peace process, but peaceful settlement is the only possible way out of the crisis. We must put in place conditions for bringing a swift end to the bloodshed and then starting a full-fledged intra-Syrian dialogue with all constructive political forces taking part.

Russia and the United States of America adopted a joint statement on cessation of hostilities in Syria. This ceasefire does not apply to ISIS, Jabhat al-Nusra, or other terrorist organizations recognized as such by the UN Security Council. We will certainly continue our resolute combat against these groups.

As you know, today, all parties to the conflict have until midday Damascus time to confirm to either our American partners or us their commitment to the ceasefire. We are already receiving news to this effect. On February 27, starting at midnight Damascus time, the Syrian armed forces, Russia, and the US-led coalition will not conduct hostilities against those armed groups that declare their readiness to observe the ceasefire.

I hope that our American partners will take the same position. This is what is reflected in our joint statement. No one will forget that aside from ISIS, there are also other groups, as I said, that have been recognized as such by the UN Security Council.

It is important now to effectively seal off Russia's territory from these terrorists trying to enter from the Middle East or other regions, and act swiftly to identify and neutralize those who are involved in terrorist activities abroad. In this respect, Russia in general and its armed forces took timely action in starting our operations in Syria. Your work here in Russia itself also confirms this. Your efforts have put a stop to the activities of underground groups that were planning attacks against our country. We all see your successes in organizing preventive work in this area. I particularly want to thank the colleagues responsible for these successes.

I hope you will continue to work in this same spirit and prevent the actions of not only those who plan attacks, but also those who recruit our citizens to terrorist organizations and spread extremist ideology.

We should tighten monitoring of the refugee flows coming into Russia or transiting onwards to European countries. In this respect, I want to add that this refugee crisis began long before Russia began its antiterrorist operation in Syria. At the root of this refugee crisis is the destabilization of entire regions of the world, especially the Middle East. We see full well today what is happening with some refugees, on the Macedonian border, for example. They are refugees from Afghanistan. What have Russia's operations in Syria got to do with them? Their situation is totally unconnected to our operations. Our operations have one sole aim: to stabilize the situation in these countries and create conditions for people from these countries to be able to return to their homes.

To fight terrorism more effectively, it's also important to develop our cooperation with partners abroad, especially through the UN, Shanghai Cooperation Organization, and Collective Security Treaty Organization.

We should make use of all existing contacts and develop new forms of cooperation in this work, all the more so, as security agencies abroad are increasingly interested in developing such partnership, as we see well.

The counterintelligence services have important tasks today. At the last board meeting, you recall that we noted that foreign intelligence organizations have stepped up their activity in Russia, and this was convincingly confirmed over the last year. Over this time, we put a stop to the activity of more than 400 foreign intelligence officers and agents, with criminal charges brought against 23 of these people.

We need to ensure reliable protection of information on confidential activity and personnel in government organizations, military facilities, defense industry companies, the fuel and energy sector, and our leading research centers. We need to cut off all channels of access to confidential information.

The FSB and other agencies have the task of doing everything necessary to prevent the activity of those who attempt or might attempt to use nationalist, xenophobic or radical slogans to divide our society.

Of course, you must also prevent any attempts from outside to intervene in our election and our country's political life. As you know, such methods exist and have been put to use in a number of countries.

Let me say again that this is a direct threat to our sovereignty and we will respond accordingly. I read the regular documents you prepare, read the summaries, and see the concrete indications that, regrettably, our ill-wishers abroad are preparing for these elections. Everyone should therefore be aware that we will defend our interests with determination and in accordance with our laws. Our country's economic security is also very important. Last year, the fight against organized crime put a stop to the activities of 98 groups. The security agencies' information shows that 2,200 people were charged under criminal law and found guilty of economic crimes.

Our country's economic security is also very important. I ask you to step up this work and concentrate on fighting corruption, and misappropriation and embezzlement of budget money, especially the funds allocated for the state armament programme and the state defense procurement programme.

It is important to prevent any misappropriation of state funds, of course. But we should all be well aware that the large sums, enormous resources, you could say, that the country is investing in its defense capability not just today, but for the future, must be reliably protected from swindlers and schemers.

You should continue to give your attention to the question of ensuring our information security and neutralizing new threats emerging in this area.

More than 24 million cyber-attacks against Russian government official sites and information systems were registered in the last year alone. More than 1,600 internet resources that conducted activities harmful to our security, including terrorist and extremist activity, were shut down.

It is clear that we need to improve the level of protection of our information and communication resources, especially those used for defense and national security needs, law and order, for our economic and financial system's stable functioning.

Colleagues, the state authorities will continue to do everything possible to bolster the security service personnel's social status, of course.

In 2015, for example, 98 apartment buildings for security agency personnel, with nearly 7,300 apartments, were completed. The total amount of service housing has been growing steadily.

Of course, the families of service personnel who lost their lives while performing their duty should receive our special care and attention.

In conclusion, I want to thank the FSB heads and personnel once more for the work done.

I am sure that you will continue to carry out all your duties to protect Russia's national interests in the most professional fashion.

Thank you for your attention.

### **Text 3. Shaun Walker**

April 2016

The FSB is much more than just an ordinary security service. Combining the functions of an elite police force with those of a spy agency, and wielding immense power, it has come a long way since the early 1990s, when it was on the brink of imploding.

Today's agency draws a direct line of inheritance from the Cheka, set up by Vladimir Lenin in the months after the Bolshevik revolution, to the NKVD, notorious for the purges of the 1930s in which hundreds of thousands were executed, and then the KGB. As the Soviet Union disbanded, the KGB was dismembered into separate agencies, and humiliated. The security services were forced into a new era of openness and researchers were allowed into the archives for the first time to investigate the crimes of the Stalin period.

Many of the brighter or entrepreneurial KGB operatives left the agency in the chaos of the 1990s, using their contacts and know-how to enter the business world as security consultants, fixers or businessmen in their own right. They included the current owner of the Evening Standard and the Independent, Alexander Lebedev, previously a junior officer working out of the Soviet embassy in London, who used his knowledge of how international financial markets to make his fortune.

As the 1990s wore on the agency got back on its feet and in 1999 Boris Yeltsin asked its then director, Vladimir Putin, who had recently been catapulted into the top job after a career in the service's lower echelons, to become prime minister.

With Putin as PM and then president, much of the FSB's power was restored. Many of his former KGB colleagues ended up in senior positions in government or at the helm of state-controlled companies. Lower down the chain of command, a blind eye was turned to FSB generals enriching themselves: it was no longer necessary to leave to earn a good living. One top officer complained that the secret service "warriors" had become "traders".

Despite its reputation as a slow-moving bureaucracy, the FSB has long taken on geeks who can help it stay ahead of the game technologically. In a time-honored tradition, the agency trawling the final-year students of the country's top technology institutes and inviting the best graduates to apply.

The agency has its own special institute known as IKSI, the Institute of Cryptography and Protection of Information, which used to work on code breaking but now focuses on information security. Its page on the FSB website boasts that more than 200 professors work at the IKSI, teaching students everything there is to know about computer systems and security. The only downside for computer whiz-kids is that salaries in the FSB, officially at least, are far lower than they would be at major tech firms.

Unlike the KGB, the FSB is not in charge of foreign spies. The responsibility for running agents like such as Anna Chapman and the nine other spies caught by US authorities, has passed to a separate agency, the SVR. But internally, the FSB has an extraordinarily wide remit.

When alleged CIA operative Ryan Fogle was caught with a blond wig and a compass, apparently attempting to recruit Russian counterintelligence officers for the US this year, it was the FSB who picked him up, interrogated him and released a humiliating video.

Its border guards, who have been under FSB control since 2003, stormed Greenpeace ship the Arctic Sunrise in September, descending from helicopters wielding guns and knives. The agency is also strongly involved in combating "economic crimes", and is responsible for most counterintelligence operations. Western diplomats report a huge rise in surveillance and harassment from people they presume to be FSB agents, with foreign journalists and businesses also targeted.

The agency still operates from the Lubyanka, the central Moscow building notorious during the Soviet era for interrogations in its basement cells. There are no official figures on how many people the FSB employs, but the security services expert Andrei Soldatov estimates the number to be at least 200,000.

After the 2006 death of former FSB officer Alexander Litvinenko from polonium poisoning, in which Scotland Yard strongly suspected some level

of state involvement, Britain announced a moratorium on all co-operation between the FSB and British security services. This stayed in place until May, when David Cameron paid a call on Putin at his summer home near Sochi. The leaders agreed that with the Sochi Olympics approaching, Britain would resume “limited” co-operation to ensure the security of competitors and spectators.

#### **Text 4. The UK Armed Forces**

First, the bottom line of our National Security Strategy must always be the willingness and capability to use force where necessary.

On Friday evening the United Nations Security Council unanimously agreed Resolution 2249 calling on Member States to take “all the necessary measures” against ISIL in both Syria and Iraq.

Mr Speaker, I have said I will make the case for Britain to join our international allies in going after ISIL at their headquarters in Syria, not just Iraq.

And I will explain how such action would be one element of a comprehensive and long-term strategy to defeat ISIL, in parallel with a major international effort to bring an end to the war in Syria.

But today I want to set out how we will ensure that our Armed Forces have the capabilities to carry out such a task and indeed any other tasks that might be needed in the years ahead.

We will invest more than £178 billion in buying and maintaining equipment over the next decade including doubling our investment in equipment to support our Special Forces.

And we will increase the size of our deployable Armed Forces. In 2010 we committed to an expeditionary force of 30,000. Today I can tell the House that by 2025 we are increasing that number to 50,000.

And as part of this, we will create two new Strike Brigades, forces of up to 5,000 personnel fully equipped to deploy rapidly and sustain themselves in the field. We will establish two additional Typhoon squadrons and an additional squadron of F35 Lightning combat aircraft to operate from our new aircraft carriers.

We will maintain our ultimate insurance policy as a nation — our Continuous At Sea Nuclear Deterrent — and replace our four ballistic missile submarines.

We will buy nine new Maritime Patrol Aircraft, based in Scotland, to protect our nuclear deterrent, hunt down hostile submarines and enhance our maritime search and rescue.

And we will buy at least thirteen new frigates and two new offshore patrol vessels. These will include eight Type 26 anti-submarine warfare frig-

ates. We will design and build a new class of light, flexible general purpose frigates.

These will be more affordable than the Type 26, which will allow us to buy more of them for the Royal Navy so that by the 2030s we can further increase the total number of Royal Navy frigates and destroyers.

Mr Speaker, not one of these capabilities is an optional extra. These investments are an act of clear-eyed self-interest to ensure our future prosperity and security.

### **Text 5. David Cameron's statement on the Strategic Defense and Security Review**

23 November 2015

Mr. Speaker, this is vital at a time when the threats to our country are growing. This morning I was in Paris with President Hollande discussing how we can work together to defeat the evil of ISIL. As the murders on the streets of Paris reminded us so starkly, ISIL is not some remote problem thousands of miles away.

It is a direct threat to our security at home and abroad. It has already taken the lives of British hostages and carried out the worst terrorist attack against British people since 7/7 on the beaches of Tunisia to say nothing of the seven terrorist plots right here in Britain that have been foiled by our security services over the past year.

And of course, Mr. Speaker, the threats we face today go beyond this evil death cult. From the crisis in Ukraine to the risk of cyber-attacks and pandemics the world is more dangerous and uncertain today than five years ago.

So, while every Government must choose how to spend the money it has available every penny of which is hard-earned by taxpayers this Government has taken a clear decision to invest in our security and safeguard our prosperity.

As a result, the United Kingdom is the only major country in the world today which is simultaneously going to meet the NATO target of spending 2% of our GDP on defense and the UN target of spending 0.7% of our GNI on development while also increasing investment in our security and intelligence agencies and in counter-terrorism.

Mr. Speaker, in ensuring our national security, we will also protect our economic security. As a trading nation with the world's fifth biggest economy, we depend on stability and order in the world.

With 5 million British nationals living overseas and our prosperity depending on trade around the world, engagement is not an optional extra, it is fundamental to the success of our nation. We need the sea lanes to stay open and the arteries of global commerce to remain free flowing.



So, the strategy which I am presenting to the House today sets out a clear vision for a secure and prosperous United Kingdom, with global reach and global influence. At its heart is an understanding that we cannot choose between conventional defenses against state-based threats and the need to counter threats that do not recognize national borders.

Today we face both and we must respond to both. So over the course of this Parliament our priorities are to deter state-based threats to tackle terrorism to remain a world leader in cyber security and ensure we have the capability to respond rapidly to crises as they emerge.

And to meet these priorities we will continue to harness all the tools of national power available to us, coordinated through the National Security Council, to deliver a ‘full-spectrum approach’.

This includes support for our Armed Forces, counter-terrorism, international aid and diplomacy and working with our allies to deal with the common threats that face us all. Let me take each in turn.

## **Text 6. The US National security strategy**

We will lead with a long-term perspective. Around the world, there are historic transitions underway that will unfold over decades. This strategy positions America to influence their trajectories, seize the opportunities they create, and manage the risks they present. Five recent transitions, in particular, have significantly changed the security landscape, including since our last strategy in 2010.

First, power among states is more dynamic. The increasing use of the G-20 on global economic matters reflects an evolution in economic power, as does the rise of Asia, Latin America, and Africa. As the balance of economic power changes, so do expectations about influence over international affairs. Shifting power dynamics create both opportunities and risks for cooperation, as some states have been more willing than others to assume responsibilities commensurate with their greater economic capacity.

Second, power is shifting below and beyond the nation-state. Governments once able to operate with few checks and balances are increasingly expected to be more accountable to sub-state and non-state actors — from mayors of mega-cities and leaders in private industry to a more empowered civil society. They are also contending with citizens enabled by technology, youth as a majority in many societies, and a growing global middle class with higher expectations for governance and economic opportunity. While largely positive, these trends can foster violent non-state actors and foment instability — especially in fragile states where governance is weak or has broken down — or invite backlash by authoritarian regimes determined to preserve the power of the state.

Third, the increasing interdependence of the global economy and rapid pace of technological change are linking individuals, groups, and governments in unprecedented ways. This enables and incentivizes new forms of cooperation to establish dynamic security networks, expand international trade and investment, and transform global communications. It also creates shared vulnerabilities, as interconnected systems and sectors are susceptible to the threats of climate change, malicious cyber activity, pandemic diseases, and transnational terrorism and crime.

Fourth, a struggle for power is underway among and within many states of the Middle East and North Africa. This is a generational struggle in the aftermath of the 2003 Iraq war and 2011 Arab uprisings, which will redefine the region as well as relationships among communities and between citizens and their governments. This process will continue to be combustible, especially in societies where religious extremists take root, or rulers reject democratic reforms, exploit their economies, and crush civil society.

Fifth, the global energy market has changed dramatically. The United States is now the world's largest natural gas and oil producer. Our dependence on foreign oil is at a 20-year low — and declining — and we are leading a new clean energy economy. While production in the Middle East and elsewhere remains vitally important for the global market, increased U. S. production is helping keep markets well-supplied and prices conducive to economic growth. On the other hand, energy security concerns have been exacerbated by European dependence on Russian natural gas and the willingness of Russia to use energy for political ends. At the same time, developing countries now consume more energy than developed ones, which is altering energy flows and changing consumer relationships.

Today's strategic environment is fluid. Just as the United States helped shape the course of events in the last century, so must we influence their trajectory today by evolving the way we exercise American leadership. This strategy outlines priorities based on a realistic assessment of the risks to our enduring national interests and the opportunities for advancing them. This strategy eschews orienting our entire foreign policy around a single threat or region. It establishes instead a diversified and balanced set of priorities appropriate for the world's leading global power with interests in every part of an increasingly interconnected world.

### **Text 7. International Criminal Court (ICC)**

Universal jurisdiction asserted by a state must be distinguished from the jurisdiction of an international tribunal, such as the International Criminal Court (ICC), established in 2002. The International Criminal Court is an intergovernmental organization and international tribunal that sits in the Hague

in the Netherlands. The ICC, made up of the 123 states, has the jurisdiction to prosecute individuals for such international crimes as genocide, crimes against humanity, and war crimes.

Besides, the ICC is intended to complement existing national judicial systems and that's why this Court may only exercise its jurisdiction when certain conditions are met. For example, when national courts are unable to prosecute criminals or when the United Nations Security Council or individual states refer investigations to the Court.

The Court has four principal organs. They are: the Presidency, the Judicial Divisions, the Office of the Prosecutor and the Registry.

The Presidency is responsible for the proper administration of the Court. It comprises the President and the First and Second Vice-Presidents—three judges of the Court who are elected to the Presidency by their fellow judges for a maximum of two three-year terms.

The Judicial Divisions consist of 18 judges of the Court, organized into three chambers—the Pre-Trial Chamber, Trial Chamber and Appeals Chamber—which carry out the judicial functions of the Court.

The Office of the Prosecutor is responsible for conducting investigations and prosecutions. The Office of the Prosecutor is headed by the Chief Prosecutor, who is assisted by one or more Deputy Prosecutors. The Rome Statute provides that the Office of the Prosecutor shall act independently.

The Registry is headed by the Registrar, who is elected by the judges for a five-year term. This organ is responsible for the non-judicial aspects of the administration and servicing of the Court. This includes, among other things, the administration of legal aid matters, court management, victims and witnesses matters, defense counsel, detention unit and the traditional services, that is the administration of finance, translation and building management.

## **Text 8. Terrorism**

As we know, a terrorist act can include two, three or more traditional crimes: bombing, murder, kidnapping, taking a hostage, extortion and hijacking, etc. These crimes are usually committed by well-armed and prepared groups. The usual weapons of terrorists from the 1960s to the 1980s were guns, knives, poison gas and car bombs. The ease of intercontinental transportation enables modern terrorist organisations to more easily acquire, manufacture, and deploy chemical, biological, radiological, or nuclear weapon, or high-yield explosives. While new instruments of terror such as cyber attacks are on the rise, explosives and bioterrorism (e.g. the Aum Shinrikyo's efforts to deploy biological weapons and the lethal sarin gas attack in the Tokyo subway in 1995, the contaminated letters in the USA in 2001) have become the urgent problem for the international community.

Today's terrorist activity is different from that of the past. Modern technology, advanced telecommunications and new Weapons of Mass Destruction (WMD) have changed the nature of terrorism. Nowadays terrorist organizations have a flexible, transnational structure. They work together in funding, sharing intelligence, training, planning, and executing attacks. Terrorist groups in one country or region can draw strength and support from groups in other countries or regions. As the al Qaida network demonstrates, this multinational enterprise has its branches in more than 60 countries. Its global activities are co-ordinated through the use of personal couriers and communication technologies — cellular and satellite phones, e-mail, internet chat rooms, videotape. Members of terrorist groups travel from continent to continent with the ease of a vacationer or business traveller. They pay their way with funds raised through drug trafficking, credit card fraud, extortion, and money; from covert supporters. They use charitable organizations and nongovernmental organizations for funding and recruitment. Money for their operations is transferred through numerous banks, money exchanges. The terrorist organizations structure, membership, resources (safe houses, training grounds, reliable communication and financial networks) and security determine its capabilities and reach.

The roots of terrorism are in the activities of racial and religious fanatics in the 1930s. Many terrorist movements arose in the 1960s as a part of the world-wide student protest against US participation in the Vietnam War. They started with non-lethal activities — demonstrations, occasional arsons or sabotage. Later terrorist tactics were frequently employed and “improved” by racist groups as the Ku Klux Klan and religious and nationalist groups like the Hezbollah (“the army of God”), the Palestine Liberation Front, Red Brigades in Italy, Irish Republican Army, etc. The bloodiest operations have been carried out by Arab and Palestinian terrorists since the 1970s: the massacre of 11 Israeli athletes at the Munich Olympics in 1972, more than 60 bombings and hijacks. The hostages, victims and their targets for extortion were US and European citizens.

### **Text 9. Terms for Describing Terrorism**

*Lynn Visson*

Since in today's world newspapers, radio and television programs around the globe are all too often filled with accounts of terrorist attacks, suicide bombings and other such horrific acts, the Russian-English/ English- Russian translator or interpreter is well advised to have a variety of synonyms in his active linguistic baggage. “Shocking,” a word commonly used to describe terrorist acts, can be supplemented or replaced by a wide variety of negative

adjectives such as “abominable” (*отвратительный*), “appalling” (*жуткий*), “atrocious” (*зверский, гнусный*), “brutal” (*жестокий*), “frightful” (*ужасный, страшный*), “hateful” (*ненавистный*), “heinous” (*омерзительный*), “hideous” (*безобразный*), “horrible” (*ужасный*), “monstrous” (*чудовищный*), “obnoxious” (*противный, несносный*), “odious” (*ненавистный, противный*), “outrageous” (*безобразный, возмутительный*), “repugnant,” (*отвратительный*), “repulsive” (*отталкивающий*), “sickening” (*тошнотворный*), “terrible” (*страшный, ужасный*), “vile” (*гнусный*). Another useful word is “unspeakable” — “unspeakable acts” imply actions so awful that one is loath to even talk of them. These deeds may also be “brazen” (*дерзкие*). A common Russian adjective describing such acts is *коварный*, as *коварная изощренность террористов*.

While the dictionary defines *коварный* as “treacherous” or “perfidious,” in many contexts these may not be appropriate translations. In the given phrase, “the insidious” or “fiendish” sophistication of the terrorists would successfully render the phrase’s meaning.

“Reprehensible” implies something which is both *предосудительный* and *отвратительный* — “revolting”. “Disgusting” is somewhat too colloquial for such situations. And the correct adjective to render *варварский* is “barbaric,” not “barbarian,” as in “barbaric bombings” or “the barbaric and sick individuals who committed these acts”.

The individual who carries out such acts is the “perpetrator”, and he “commits”, “carries out” or “perpetrates” his evil deeds. The individuals who order him to do so, *заказчики* or *зачинщики* are the “masterminds”, “ringleaders” or “instigators” of violence. While the word *бандиты* often comes up in reference to terrorists, the English word “bandits” should be avoided. A far better translation is “thug;” the *пособники* or *приспешники* of terrorists are their “henchmen,” “accomplices,” or “those who aid and abet terrorists.” *Преступные банды террористов* is better translated as “criminal gangs” than as “bands.” Но дело (“cause”) can justify the actions of any *заблудившиеся* (“misguided”, “deluded”) individuals, would-be martyrs (*мученики*) or fanatics.

While *сильный и беспощадный враг*, as terrorists are often called, can be translated as “a strong and merciless enemy,” “ruthless” is a more idiomatic translation of *беспощадный*, and a very useful word to describe someone who has no scruples/moral principles/will stop at nothing/will not shrink/shirk from perpetrating any kind of terrorist act.

*Вопрос о дальнейшей активизации и повышении сотрудничества в борьбе с терроризмом* is the “vital”, “critically important” or “crucial” issue of the continuous/continued further revitalization (“activization” is not a good choice here) of effective cooperation in combating terrorism. *Борьба с терроризмом* can be rendered in several ways: the war on terrorism/

campaign against terrorism/ struggle/fight against terrorism. And *решение приоритетной задачи борьбы с терроризмом* can be rendered as “the high(est) priority objective of resolving (not solving!) the challenge/issue/problem of the fight/ struggle against terrorism.”

*Террористические акты*, потрясшие мир, are acts which “shocked,” “stunned,” “rocked,” or “convulsed” the world, or “made the world reel”. While *террористические очаги* are often translated as “hotbeds” or “flash-points” of terrorism, in some contexts these can be “strongholds” or “bastions”.

We often hear about the *главное условие успеха* — “the key to” or “prerequisite for” success in the war on terrorism. *Враг* — “enemy/adversary/opponent” — *далеко не сломлен* — “has by no means/has not yet been defeated/conquered/smashed”. The forces of evil *рвутся к обладанию оружием массового уничтожения* — “are (desperately) trying/eager/out/to acquire weapons of mass destruction”. There are also *многочисленные неопровержимые доказательства* — “a great deal of/a plethora of/ incontrovertible/ irrefutable evidence” regarding terrorist activities.

*Терроризм нужно полностью искоренить/ликвидировать* can be translated as “Terrorism must be eliminated/destroyed/wiped out/ended”. This also requires putting an end to its *питательная среда*, or “breeding grounds.” *Совместные усилия* — “joint” or “common” efforts are needed to defeat the terrorists, and those involved in this struggle must “pool” or “unite” (not “share”) their efforts. What is required is a *комплексный подход к противодействию терроризму*. Better than a “comprehensive” approach would be “multipronged” or “multifaceted.” Also needed are *решительные, сплоченные и выверенные действия международного сообщества* — “vigorous/resolute (much better than “firm”), united and considered actions on the part of the international community.”

*Использование методов террора ставит крест на политических амбициях тех, кто этим занимается, однозначно превращает их в преступников и подлинных изгоев. Не может быть никакого оправдания их действиям. И сами мы должны действовать в отношении их соответственно: преступники обязаны нести наказание за содеянное.*

The translator here is presented with plenty of interesting possibilities. The use of terror can either “doom” or “put an end to” the political “strivings” (better than “ambitions”) of those engaged/involved in terrorism, and (“and” is necessary in English!) clearly/unequivocally/stamps/marks/brands them as criminals and utter/absolute pariahs/the lowest of the low/places them beyond the pale. There can be no justification (whatever) for their actions. And we must take appropriate action against them: the criminals must be punished/ punishment must be meted out for their actions (or, much better) — for what they have wrought. In other words, they cannot

be allowed to act *безнаказанно* — “with impunity.” Terrorists must not be allowed to *уйти от правосудия* — “to escape from justice”.

Those who *укрывают террористов*, “harbor/give refuge” to terrorists must also be punished. All those who are fighting terrorism must *нумать надежду* — “harbor/cherish the hope” that terrorism will be eliminated.

And the translator/interpreter must take care to keep abreast of the growing vocabulary of political, military and humanitarian terminology so frequently used in discussion of this scourge of the twenty-first century.

### **Text 10. G20 Leaders Strengthen Their Efforts to Tackle Terrorist Financing Together**

Paris, 10 July 2017. G20 Leaders at the summit in Hamburg on 7–8 July, expressed their determination to fight terrorist financing. The FATF (Financial Action Task Force) reported to the G20 on its ongoing efforts in this area, including work to increase transparency and beneficial ownership of legal persons and legal arrangements, and to strengthen the FATF’s governance and institutional basis.

G20 leaders issued a detailed statement on Countering Terrorism. On fighting terrorist financing, the statement highlights a number of issues that the FATF is focusing on, and that are priorities for the Argentine Presidency of the FATF over the next year.

The G20 calls on all countries to shut down all alternative sources of financing of terrorism, including dismantling the possible connections between terrorism and organized crime, such as through human trafficking. In line with this and following the call by the United Nations in Security Council Resolution 2331, for the FATF and FATF-Style Regional Bodies to analyze the links between human trafficking and terrorist financing, the FATF will update and deepen its understanding of financial flows associated with human trafficking, including those that are ending up in the hands of terrorist organizations.

The G20 will focus on Fintech, Financial Intelligence Units and Banks in developing new tools and technologies to track terrorist financing. This echoes the efforts that FATF has undertaken over the last year, which resulted in the San Jose Principles, and which will remain an important issue during the Argentinean Presidency of the FATF.

The G20 recognizes that FATF has evolved since it was created as a temporary forum 27 years ago and it supports FATF’s focus on strengthening its institutional basis, especially by empowering the President’s role while interacting with member countries, other stakeholders and the general public. FATF will continue these discussions at its next Plenary.

The G20 Hamburg Action Plan highlights G20 support for FATF work on improving transparency and access to beneficial ownership through the effective implementation of the FATF Standard. This work includes:

- A recent report on inter-agency information sharing and guidance for private sector information sharing that is currently open to a public consultation.
- Ongoing research into the vulnerabilities linked to beneficial ownership, in collaboration with the Egmont Group of Financial Intelligence Units.
- A study on the effective enforcement and supervision of beneficial ownership obligations.

G20 Leaders called on FATF to provide a further progress report in early 2018.

The G20 welcomed FATF efforts to assess and address the decline in correspondent banking relationships, and financial access for money remittance providers, in collaboration with the FSB and Global Partnership for Financial Inclusion (GPII).

Continued support by the G20 and its members, and their commitment to lead by example and ensure that they have fully and effectively implemented the FATF Standards will protect the integrity of the financial system and contribute to safety and security.

**Text 11. Federal Law No 35-Fz Of 6 March 2006  
On Counteraction Against Terrorism  
“On Counteraction to Terrorism” adopted by the State  
Duma on February 26, 2006**

This Federal Law shall establish the fundamental principles of counteraction to terrorism, the legal and organizational basics of preventing terrorism and struggling against it, of reducing to a minimum and (or) liquidating the consequences of manifestations thereof, as well as the legal and organizational basics of using the Armed Forces of the Russian Federation in struggling against terrorism.

**ARTICLE 1. LEGAL BASIS OF COUNTERACTION  
TO TERRORISM**

The legal basis of counteraction to terrorism shall be the Constitution of the Russian Federation, generally recognized principles and rules of international law, international treaties made by the Russian Federation, this Federal Law and other federal laws, normative legal acts of the President of the Russian Federation, normative legal acts of the Government of the Russian Federation, as well as normative legal acts of other bodies of state power adopted in compliance with them.



## ARTICLE 2. FUNDAMENTAL PRINCIPLES OF COUNTERACTION TO TERRORISM

Counteraction to terrorism in the Russian Federation shall be based on the following fundamental principles: 1) ensuring and protecting fundamental civil and human rights and freedoms; 2) lawfulness; 3) prioritizing the protection of the rights and legitimate interests of persons at risk of being affected by terrorism; 4) inevitability of punishment for the exercise of terrorist activity; 5) systematic approach and complex use of political, informational-propagandistic, socioeconomic, legal, special and other measures of counteraction to terrorism; 6) cooperation of the State with public and religious associations, international and other organizations, as well as with citizens, in counteraction to terrorism; 7) priority of preventive measures against terrorism; 8) undivided authority in directing the personnel and materiel involved in conducting counterterrorism operations; 9) combination of public and private methods of counteraction to terrorism; 10) confidentiality of information concerning special means, techniques and tactics of taking measures against terrorism, as well as concerning the identity of those taking part in the said measures; 11) inadmissibility of political concessions to terrorists; 12) reduction to minimum and (or) liquidation of the consequences of terrorist manifestations; 13) adequacy of measures aimed at counteraction to terrorism to the degree of terrorist danger.

### **Text 12. Directive (Eu) 2017/541 Of The European Parliament And Of The Council of 15 March 2017 on combating terrorism and replacing Council Framework Decision 2002/475/JHA and amending Council Decision 2005/671/JHA**

#### **TITLE I. SUBJECT MATTER AND DEFINITIONS**

##### ARTICLE 1. Subject matter

This Directive establishes minimum rules concerning the definition of criminal offences and sanctions in the area of terrorist offences, offences related to a terrorist group and offences related to terrorist activities, as well as measures of protection of, and support and assistance to, victims of terrorism.

##### ARTICLE 2. Definitions

For the purposes of this Directive, the following definitions apply:

(1) ‘funds’ means assets of every kind, whether tangible or intangible, movable or immovable, however acquired, and legal documents or instruments in any form, including electronic or digital, evidencing title to, or in-

terest in, such assets, including, but not limited to, bank credits, travellers cheques, bank cheques, money orders, shares, securities, bonds, drafts, letters of credit,

(2) ‘legal person’ means any entity having legal personality under the applicable law, except for States or public bodies in the exercise of State authority and for public international organisations,

(3) ‘terrorist group’ means a structured group of more than two persons, established for a period of time and acting in concert to commit terrorist offences; ‘structured group’ means a group that is not randomly formed for the immediate commission of an offence and that does not need to have formally defined roles for its members, continuity of its membership or a developed structure.

### **Text 13. International crime**

The development of increasingly sophisticated facilities for rapid travel has made it far easier for criminals to move around the world. At the same time, the complex structures of modern societies and the constant growth of international exchanges provide more and more opportunities for international criminal activity (offence), which has now reached alarming proportions. Some offences are covered by international conventions, for instance currency counterfeiting (1929 Convention), and drug trafficking (1988 Convention).

The term “international crime”, although in common use, does not necessarily refer to a specific category of offence defined in law. Such offences can be classified as “international” because of the behavior of the offenders. For instance, preparations for committing an offence may be made in one country while the actual offence is committed in one or more other countries. To take another example, similar offences may be committed one after the other in several different countries. Thus, an offender may escape across a border after committing his offence. He may transfer his illicit gains abroad or he may conceal objects or documents used to commit the offence in another country.

Tracing and arresting such offenders may prove extremely difficult problems. They can arise in connection with exchanging information, identification, international investigations and subsequent extradition. Because of these problems, police departments in different countries must work together if they are to combat international crime successfully.

United Nations work in the field of crime prevention and criminal justice has two main purposes: to lessen the human and material cost of crime and its impact on socio-economic development and to promote the observance of international standards and norms in criminal justice. To this end, The

United Nations furthers the dissemination and exchange of information, the training of personnel and direct aid to Governments at their request. United Nations research and training activities in the field of crime prevention and control are furthered by the United Nations Social Defense Research Institute, headquartered in Rome, by regional institutions in Asia and Far East, Latin America, the Arab States and Europe.

To promote a forum for the presentation of policies and to stimulate progress, the General Assembly in 1950 authorized the convening every five years of a United Nations Congress on the Prevention of Crime and the Treatment of Offenders. Participants in the congresses include criminologists, penologists and senior police officers, as well as experts in criminal law, human rights and rehabilitation. The First Congress held in Geneva in 1955, approved a set of Standard Minimum Rules for the Treatment of Prisoners. The Sixth Congress (Caracas, 1980) dealt with such topics as crime trends and crime prevention strategies, juvenile delinquency, crime and abuse of power.

### **Text 14. Cybernetics**

There are many definitions of cybernetics and many individuals, who have influenced the definition and direction of cybernetics. Norbert Wiener, a mathematician, engineer and social philosopher, coined the word “cybernetics” from the Greek word meaning “steersman.” He defined it as “the science of control and communication in the animal and the machine”. Ampere, before him, wanted cybernetics “to be the science of government”. For philosopher Warren McCulloch, cybernetics was “an experimental epistemology concerned with the communication within an observer and between the observer and his environment”. Stafford Beer, a management consultant, defined cybernetics as “the science of effective organization”. Anthropologist Gregory Bateson noted “whereas previous sciences dealt with matter and energy, the new science of cybernetics focuses on form and pattern”. For educational theorist Gordon Pask, “cybernetics is the art of manipulating defensible metaphors, showing how they may be constructed and what can be inferred as a result of their existence”.

The American mathematician Norbert Wiener published his book *Cybernetics* in 1948. In that book, Wiener made reference to an 1868 article by the British physicist James Clerk Maxwell on governors and pointed out that the term “governor” is derived, via Latin, from the same Greek word that gives rise to cybernetics. The date of Wiener’s publication is generally accepted as marking the birth of cybernetics as an independent science.

Cybernetics takes as its domain the design or discovery and application of principles of regulation and communication. Cybernetics treats not things but ways of behaving. It does not ask “what is this thing?” but “what does

it do?” and “what can it do?” As numerous systems in the living, social and technological world may be understood in this way, cybernetics cuts across many traditional disciplinary boundaries. Thus, the concepts, which cyberneticists develop, form a metadisciplinary language by which we may better understand and modify our world.

Cybernetics control theory as it is applied to complex systems. Cybernetics is associated with models in which a monitor compares what is happening to a system at various sampling times with some standard of what should be happening, and a controller adjusts the system’s behavior accordingly. That is called the feedback loop.

In subsequent years the computer and the areas of mathematics related to it (e.g., mathematical logic) had a great influence on the development of cybernetics—for the simple reason that computers can be used not only for automatic calculation but also for all conversions of information, including the various types of information processing used in control systems. This enhanced ability of computers has made possible two different views of cybernetics. The narrower view defines cybernetics as the science of the control of complex systems of various types—technical, biological, or social.

In many Western countries particular emphasis is given to aspects of cybernetics used in the generation of control systems in technology and in living organisms. A broader view of cybernetics arose in Russia and prevailed there for many years. In this broader definition, cybernetics includes not only the science of control but all forms of information processing as well. In this way computer science, considered a separate discipline, is included as one of the component parts of cybernetics.

### **Text 15. How to Find the Main Idea**

Finding the main idea of a paragraph or longer passage of text, along with making an inference, finding the author’s purpose, or understanding vocabulary words in context, is one of the reading skills important to master.

#### **What is the Main Idea?**

The main idea of a paragraph is the *point of the passage, minus all the details*. It is the main point or concept that the author wants to communicate to the readers about the topic. Hence, in a paragraph, when the main idea is stated directly, it is expressed in what is called the *topic sentence*.

The main idea is the brief, but all-encompassing summary. It covers everything the paragraph talks about in a general way but does not include the specifics.

When an author does not state the main idea directly, it should still be implied, and is called an *implied main idea*. This requires that the reader looks

closely at the content - at specific words, sentences, images that are used and repeated - to deduce what the author is communicating.

Finding the main idea is critical to understanding what you are reading. It helps the details make sense and have relevance, and provides a framework for remembering the content.

### **How to Find the Main Idea**

#### ***Identify the Topic***

Read the passage through completely, then try to identify the topic. Who or what is the paragraph about?

#### ***Summarize the Passage***

After reading the passage through thoroughly, summarize it in your own words in **one sentence** that includes the gist of every idea from the paragraph. A good way to do this is to pretend you have just ten words to tell someone what the passage is about.

#### ***Look at the First and Last Sentences of the Passage***

Authors often put the main idea in or near either the first or last sentence of the paragraph or article.

Determine whether either of these sentences capture the main idea. Sometimes, however, the author will use what is called a *reversal transition* in the second sentence - words like *but*, *however*, *in contrast*, *nevertheless*, etc. - that indicate that the second sentence is the main idea. If you see one of these words that negate or qualify the first sentence, that is a clue that the second sentence is the main idea.

#### ***Look for Repetition of Ideas***

If you read through a paragraph and you have no idea how to summarize it because there is so much information, start looking for repeated words, phrases, ideas or similar ideas.

#### **Avoid Main Idea Mistakes**

Choosing the main idea from answer choices is different than composing the main idea on your own. By reading the passage through thoroughly, using your skills, and identifying the main idea on your own, though, you can avoid making these 3 common mistakes — 1) selecting an answer that is too narrow in scope;

2) selecting an answer that is too broad; 3) or selecting an answer that is complex but contrary to the main idea.

## **Text 16. Writing a summary**

### **I. Three principal requirements.**

1. It should offer a balanced coverage of the original.
2. It should present the source material in a neutral fashion. (No evaluations of any kind are allowed).

3. It should condense the source material and be presented in the summary in writer's own words.

## **II. Steps in writing a summary.**

1. Skim the text, noting in your mind the subheadings. If there are no subheadings, try to divide the text into subsections. Try to determine what type of a text you are dealing with. This can help you identify important information.

2. Read the text, highlighting important information or taking notes.

3. In your own words, write down the main points of each section. Try to write down one sentence of each section.

4. Write down the key support points for the main topic, but do not include the minor detail.

5. Go through the process again, making changes as appropriate.

### **Check List**

1. The first sentence of your summary includes the name of the author of the original, its title, date of publishing and the main idea.

2. Your summary is of the required length; it is considerably shorter than the original text.

3. Your summary doesn't include the minor details of the text.

4. The summary covers all the parts of the original.

5. You don't include your own comments or evaluation.

6. You don't copy portions of the original. Instead you paraphrase the material (except specialized vocabulary or technical terms).

7. When necessary you use quotations.

— Quote accurately. Be careful to avoid mistakes of any kind. After copying a passage always proofread your version, comparing it with the original.

— Use quotation marks to indicate the beginning and the end of the quotation.

— Use ellipses/dots ( ... ) to indicate that you have deliberately omitted words in writing out the quotation. Be careful not to make an omissions that describe the original.

— Use brackets ( ... ) to make explanatory words added within a quotation.

8. Your summary includes enough support and detail.

9. You maintain the flow of your summary by using transitions.

— The author goes on to say that ...

— The article further states that ...

— The author also argues/assumed /believes ...

— The author concludes that ...

— In the second half of the paper the author presents ...

— Additionally

- In addition to Besides
- Also
- Further to Furthermore
- Moreover

## **Text 17. About History of Drug Legalization**

The cultivation, use and trade of psychoactive and other drugs are known from the moment when civilization appeared. So drug laws have been a common feature of human law for several hundreds of years and today's fight against drug abuse bears many similarities to earlier drug laws. During the last century the problem of illegal usage, production and selling drugs has become wide-spread and different specialists on international and local level seek possible ways out. The legalization is considered to be one of them.

Various proponents of drug liberalization wish to repeal drug laws for reasons ranging from individual rights-based defenses of liberty, to serious arguments against the economic and social outcomes of drug prohibition. So, starting from the 20th century, large organized movements try to overturn existing drug laws formed around the world. The most vocal of these groups exist in countries with liberal democracy, and typically attract liberal supporters. They seek the repeal or softening of drug prohibition laws, most commonly marijuana but also including other controlled substances such as alcohol, tobacco, opiates, stimulants, and others.

Drug liberalization proponents hold differing reasons to support liberalization, and have differing policy proposals. The two most common positions are drug legalization and drug decriminalization.

### **Drug legalization**

Drug legalization calls for the elimination of government control of specified (or all) drugs. Proponents of drug legalization typically either view drug prohibition as being inherently immoral, or alternatively may agree that some restrictions on drug availability can be justified but feel that drug prohibition does not work in practice.

Proposed schemes range from full legalization which would completely remove all forms of government control, to intermediate versions such as regulated legalization, where drugs would be legalized, but under a system of government control. This scheme might mean for instance that users would have to acquire a "dangerous drugs license" in order to purchase particular drugs, and might restrict the amount that could be purchased at one time, or the form that certain drugs would be supplied in. The regulated legalization system would probably have a range of restrictions for different drugs, depending on their perceived risk, so while some less dangerous drugs would be sold over the counter in pharmacies, drugs with greater risks

of harm might only be available for sale in licensed premises where use could be monitored and emergency medical care is available.

### **Drug decriminalization**

Drug decriminalization calls for reduced control and penalties compared to existing laws. Proponents of drug decriminalization generally support the use of fines or other punishment to replace prison terms, and often propose systems whereby illegal drug users who are caught would be fined, but would not receive a permanent criminal record as a result. A central feature of drug decriminalization is the notion of harm reduction.

Drug decriminalization is in some ways an intermediate between prohibition and legalization, and has been criticized as being “the worst of both worlds”. According to it, drug sales would still be illegal, but some criminal penalties for using and production of some kinds of drugs would be removed and this might cause some people to choose not to use drugs.



## Appendix III

### GRAMMAR

*to* + a verb (*forget to learn*) and a verb + *-ing* (*recommend learning*) after a verb

#### 1. Circle the correct alternatives below.

*Example:* I *hope to hear / hearing* from you soon.

1. We spent the whole day *to prepare / preparing* for the party.
2. I'm looking forward *to meet / to meeting* you at the airport.

We use *to* + verb after some verbs but a verb + *-ing* after others. You have to learn which form follows each verb. Here are some verbs which intermediate learners often make mistakes with:

- Use *to* + a verb after: ask (somebody), decide, forget, help (somebody), hope, invite, learn, need, plan, wait, want, would like
- Use a verb + *-ing* after: enjoy, fancy, finish, look forward to\*, recommend, spend, suggest, think about/of\*

\* **Note:** verbs with prepositions (*to, of, about* etc.) are always followed by verb + *-ing*. (In Exercise 1, Question 2 (*I'm looking forward to meeting you at the airport*), *to* is part of the verb.)

#### 2. Five of the sentences below contain mistakes. Two sentences are correct (✓). Find and correct the mistakes.

*to ask*

*Example:* I forgot *asking* you about your family. How are they?

1. I suggest meeting you at seven o'clock in front of the theatre.
2. I'm thinking of to buy a new desk and lamp.
3. I've already decided to buy something new for my bedroom.
4. If you want to coming, please let me know as soon as you can.
5. Last week I invited her going to the cinema.
6. We really enjoyed to be together.
7. I would like to learn dancing.

#### 3. Complete the sentences below by putting the verb in brackets into the correct form (*to* + verb or a verb + *-ing*) in each gap.

*Example:* What things do you help your family ...*to do*... (do) in the house?

1. What do you fancy ..... (do) next weekend?
2. How are you planning ..... (spend) your next holiday?
3. What programmes do you enjoy ..... (watch) on television?
4. What are you looking forward to ..... (do) in the future?

**4. Decide whether the verbs in bold can be changed into the Passive. Does the sentence sound better in the Passive or in the Active? Why?**

- a. Criminals **carry out** most bank robberies not with a gun and a mask, but with a computer and a keyboard,
- b. Security concerns **didn't worry** our parents' generation as much as they do us.
- c. They **will** use more and more sophisticated technology to counter ID theft.
- d. In fifty years' time **we'll be using** computer systems that are completely secure.
- e. Always make certain that you **back up** computer files on a separate and removable computer drive.
- f. In recent years travelling by air **has become** more dangerous.
- g. Governments and others **have used** concerns over security to increase their control over the public.
- h. Over the last few years governments **have been introducing** more and more serious security measures.

### Easily confused words

#### Phrasal verbs

There are several reasons why words can be easily confused in English. Work in pairs. Can you think of words in these four categories that you have difficulty with?

- words which are the same or similar in your language, but which have a different meaning in English (e.g. agenda)
- words with slightly different meanings (e.g. opportunity/possibility)
- words with the same sound but a different spelling and meaning (e.g. saw/sore)
- phrasal verbs (e.g. put up)
- spelling mistakes (e.g. misspell misspell)

**1. Choose the correct word in these sentences.**

- a. I'm always very *excited/nervous* when I get on a plane, because I'm worried that something might happen.
- b. There were long queues at the check-in desk, but the officials *checked/controlled/inspected* things very well.
- c. The police monitored the *actions/activities* of the suspects twenty-four hours a day.

d. Cities rely on *surveillance/surveys* to maintain security, but at the same time try to *avoid/prevent* limiting people's *personal/personnel* freedom.

e. The IT department have tried to stop *hackers/hijackers* on a number of *events/occasions*, but actually I currently there is no 100% *effective/efficient* system available - although maybe there will be in the future.

**2. Read the story *False alarm leads to tube shutdown*.**

— What was the misunderstanding that led to the emergency?

**False Alarm Leads to Tube Shutdown**

Public-spirited pensioner George Wilkes set off a major security alert yesterday on the London Underground. George was suspicious when two men with rucksacks got on at Piccadilly Circus and sat next to him, talking in hushed tones.

At one point he heard one of them say, 'But I don't want to be a terrorist'. The other replied, 'Nor do I, so the only answer is to hijack.' This was enough for an increasingly nervous George. He got off at the next station and reported what he had heard to the station attendant.

In a very efficient operation, the two men were picked up on a video surveillance camera as they got off the train a few stops down the line and were immediately arrested. The whole area was closed off. The men were told to take off their rucksacks and turn out the contents. When the police inspected them, they found only jumpers, bottles of water, and personal stereos.

It turned out that the two students were about to set off on a trip around Europe and had actually been discussing how they didn't want to be tourists, but travellers, and as they had very little money they would need to hitch-hike.

An embarrassed George later apologized for his over-zealous actions. 'I'm getting on a bit nowadays, and my hearing isn't as good as it used to be. My wife gave me a good telling-off, I can tell you!' But officials said that events like this, though inconvenient, showed that the public were being vigilant.

**3. Choose the correct nouns in these sentences.**

- Several *bystanders/standersby* were hurt when the bomb **exploded**.
- This new anti-virus software represents a *breakthrough/throughbreak* in IT security and will **reduce** online corporate fraud.
- The airport had to increase security whilst also trying to **manage with** government *backcuts/cutbacks*.
- He **blamed** his life of crime on his *bringingup/upbringing*.

**4. Change these sentences using a noun derived from the phrasal verb in italics. You may need to make other changes to the sentence.**

- There have been a number of houses which *have been broken into* in our street in recent weeks, but the police have refused to **investigate** them.

b. I'm sorry we **arrived** so late. The traffic *was held up* because of a security alert.

c. Several people who were *passing by* just ignored the victim's cries for help and **continued** as if nothing was happening.

d. The crime was very well-planned and the gang thought they had escaped **capture for** it, but after the police *had been tipped off*, they were arrested in a series of dawn raids.

5. **While reading the story pay attention to all the characters, events and time. This will help you to solve the case.**

### Tense Revision

#### Part I

1. **Read this Part. Choose the correct form of the verb.**



TREVOR STERN was not a popular man, in spite of his wealth. He (1) *lived* (live) in a large house about a mile outside the village of Prenton. When he (2) *was found*, (find) dead in his study, no one (3) *cried* (cry), not even his only daughter. It was soon clear that he (4) ..... (murder).

Detective Inspector Blackledge took statements from his widow, Dorothy, his seventeen-year-old daughter, Lucy, his business partner, Gerald Brook, and his doctor.



I (5) ..... (not/love) my husband, he was a cold and selfish man. But I (6) ..... (not/murder) him, either. After dinner last night he said he (7) ..... (want) to check some business papers in his study. He (8) ..... (have) a meeting with Gerald, his business partner, the next morning. He (9) ..... (ask) for some tea. That was about 9 o'clock. I (10) ..... (watch) a rather exciting film on television, so I (11) ..... (tell) Lucy to take it to him. At quarter past nine Doctor Emerson (12) ..... (call). I (13) ..... (notice) the time because we (14) ..... (expect) him to come earlier. I (15) ..... (answer) the front door bell. Trevor (16) ..... (still/shout) in his study. He and Lucy (17) ..... (obviously/have) a serious row. So I (18) ..... (take) the doctor into the sitting-room for a moment. Then Trevor stopped (19) ..... (shout). I guessed Lucy (20) ..... (go) out by the back door. Doctor Emerson went to the study. I think he wanted to persuade Trevor (21) ..... (go) to the hospital for some tests, but Trevor (22) ..... (not/want) to go. I (23) ..... (hear) him shouting again several times over the next twenty minutes. He called him an ignorant country doctor, and later he said something like 'There's nothing you can do!' I think Lucy (24) ..... (come) into the house while the doctor (25) ..... (still/talk) to Trevor. (26) ..... (hear) the front door bang during a quiet few seconds when Trevor (27) ..... (not/shout). I was tired and fed up and went to my bedroom soon after that. My sister (28) ..... (phone) and we (29) ..... (talk) for ages. I (30) ..... (tell) her I (31) ..... (decide) to leave Trevor.

## Part II

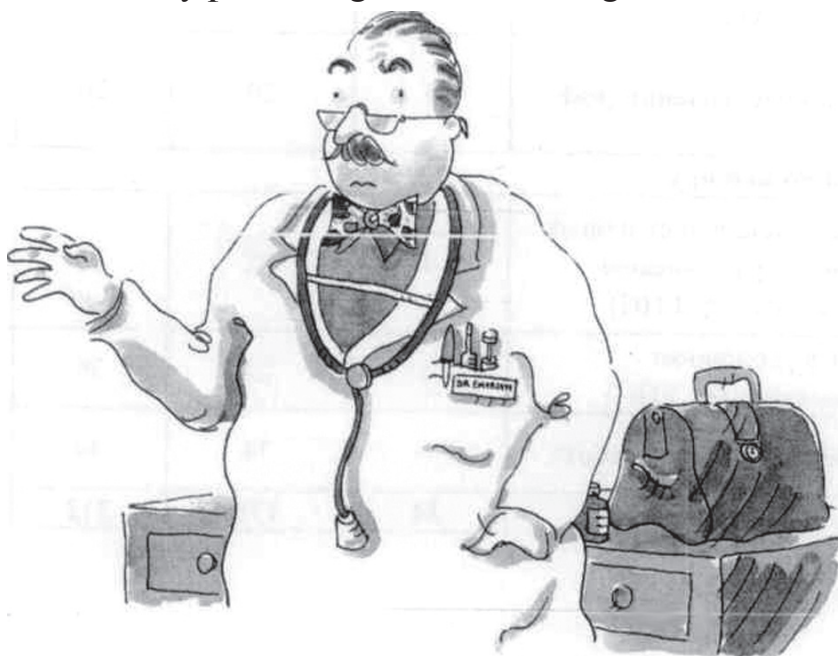
2. Fill in the gaps with appropriate tense forms and explain your choice.
3. Write down the sequence of the events.



Mum (32) ..... (watch) some stupid film after dinner, so she made me (33) .....(take) Dad's tea into his study. It was about nine o'clock. He was in a really mean mood. He shouted at me because I (34) ..... (spill) a few drops of tea on his desk while I (35) ..... (pour) it. I (36) ..... (not/want) to watch the film so I (37) ..... (creep) out by the back door. I (38)

..... (decide) to go down to the village and use the public phone to call Alan. He's my boyfriend. I (39) ..... (never/like) Mum or Dad to be around when I (40) ..... (talk) to him. Especially yesterday, because Dad and I (41) ..... (have) a stupid argument about Alan the day before. It (42) ..... (normally/take) quarter of an hour to walk to the village. Perhaps it (43) ..... (take) less time last night. I can't prove I (44) ..... (go) to the village. No one (45) ..... (see) me when I (46) ..... (walk) into the village. I (47) ..... (see) Gerald, that's Dad's business partner. He (48) ..... (stand) near the window in his sitting-room. He (49) ..... (not/see) me, though, because it was dark outside. He (50) ..... (talk) on the phone, I think.

Alan (51) ..... (not/answer) the phone. Then I (52) ..... (remember) he (53) ..... (tell) me he (54) ..... (play) in a concert that evening. So I (55) ..... (walk) home again. I (56) ..... (meet) Gerald just before I (57) ..... (reach) our house. He (58) ..... (look) for his dog. That was about twenty to ten. I came in by the back door as quietly as possible and went to bed. I didn't want to see my parents again that evening.



I (59) ..... (call) at the Sterns' house at nine-fifteen. I (60) ..... (be) rather later than I (61) ..... (plan) to be because I (62) ..... (visit) another patient. When Mrs Stern (63) ..... (let) me into the house she (64) ..... (seem) rather embarrassed and (65) ..... (show) me into the sitting-room. I could hear Trevor Stern (66) ..... (shout) at someone in his study. Mrs Stern said something about teenage girls and that they (67) ..... (have) problems with Lucy. Well, the shouting (68) ..... (stop) almost immediately, so (69) ..... (go) to his study. Lucy (70) ..... (already/leave) the room before I (71) ..... (get) there. I tried (72) ..... (explain) to Trevor why he needed (73) ..... (have) these hospital tests, but he (74) ..... (not/let) me. He said I (75) ..... (be) an ignorant country doctor who (76) ..... (not/know) what he (77) ..... (talk) about. I (78) ..... (realise)

it was no use (79) ..... (argue) with him so I (80) ..... (leave) after only a few minutes. I was quite angry actually. I let myself out of the house without (81) ..... (see) Lucy or Mrs Stern.

### Part III

4. Choose the correct tense forms for the verbs in the parenthesis (to fit each situation).
5. What key words and collocations can help you to solve the case?



Yes, Trevor was my business partner. We (82) ..... (not/be) really friends. Yes, my house (83) ..... (be) just round the corner from the Sterns'. I (84) ..... (live) here for two years now. I (85) ..... (have) a little cottage in the village. But I (86) ..... (buy) this house when I started (87) ..... (earn) a lot of money.

I can't really tell you very much about the night Trevor died. I took my dog for a long walk that evening. I (88) ..... (go) up on the hills, away from the village. Then the stupid dog (89) ..... (go) after a rabbit or something and I (90) ..... (lose) him in the dark. I (91) ..... (look) for him when I (92) ..... (meet) Lucy, as a matter of fact. She (93) ..... (walk) up the road towards their house. She (94) ..... (seem) rather upset. I asked her if she (95) ..... (see) the dog, but she said she (96) ..... (not/had). She (97) ..... into her house and I (98) ..... (find) him a few minutes afterwards. I was back home by just after quarter to ten.

Detective Inspector Blackledge showed the statements to her colleague, Sergeant Ross.

blackledge: Well, Ross. What do you think? Who killed Stern?

ross: I don't know. It (99) ..... (not/be) his wife. She (100) ..... (not/even/go) into the study.

blackledge: But she admits she didn't love him. Do you think she's in love with the doctor?

ross: It's possible. And perhaps Trevor Stern (101) ..... (find out). But we know the doctor was at the hospital by ten o'clock that night. And that's at least half an hour from the Sterns' house.

blackledge: But that (102) ..... (mean) he (103) ..... (leave) the Sterns' house before half past nine.

ross: Exactly!

blackledge: Anyway, Dorothy Stern told her sister she (104) ..... (leave) her husband. She didn't need (105) ..... (murder) him.

ross: But what about Lucy?

blackledge: Yes, there's something about Lucy's story which doesn't quite fit. Let's see, what did Gerald Brook say?

ross: That's it! Lucy (106) ..... (not/walk) to the village and back, if he (107) ..... (meet) her at twenty to ten. She (108) ..... (still/shout at) by her father at nine-fifteen.

blackledge: But look at all the statements. The times don't fit.

ross: Neither do the facts. Someone (109) ..... (tell) lies.

blackledge: I think it's time we (110) ..... (make) an arrest.

Who did they arrest?

### Prepositional phrases

Prepositions are often used in common phrases where little variation is possible. Some prepositions go with groups of similar words:

**at** — *at breakfast, at lunch, at dinner, at supper*

**for** — *for example, for instance*

**in** — *in a dress, in a pair of jeans, in a skirt, in uniform*

**on** — *on e-mail, on the phone*

Prepositions can combine to make compound phrases:

out of *date, out of fashion*

*Words with related meanings often go with different prepositions:*

**in** cash / dollars — **by** credit card

**on** earth — **in** the world

**by** accident — **on** purpose

**at** the bottom — **in** the bottom left-hand corner

**at** the door — **on** the phone

**by** car — **on** foot

**on** holiday — **at** work

**in** a loud voice — **at** the top of his voice



Here are more common phrases with prepositions:

<i>at</i>	<i>by</i>	<i>for</i>	<i>in</i>	<i>on</i>	<i>out</i>
<i>at all times</i>	<i>by accent</i>	<i>for a change</i>	<i>in conclusion</i>	<i>on behalf of</i>	<i>out of order</i>
<i>at first sight</i>	<i>by heart</i>	<i>for ages</i>	<i>in the west</i>	<i>on condition that</i>	<i>out of practice</i>
<i>at the moment</i>	<i>by chance</i>	<i>for breakfast</i>	<i>in control</i>	<i>on no account</i>	<i>out of favor</i>
<i>at the age of</i>	<i>by mistake</i>	<i>for fear of</i>	<i>in danger</i>	<i>on my own</i>	<i>out of the wood</i>
<i>at the beginning</i>	<i>by the way</i>	<i>for fun/pleasure</i>	<i>in favor of</i>	<i>on purpose</i>	<i>out of the way</i>
<i>at breakfast</i>	<i>by bus / train</i>	<i>for good</i>	<i>in general</i>	<i>on second thoughts</i>	<i>out of touch</i>
<i>at the bottom of</i>	<i>by sea / land / air</i>	<i>for granted</i>	<i>in other words</i>	<i>on the whole</i>	<i>out of work</i>
<i>at the bus stop</i>	<i>by example</i>	<i>for ever</i>	<i>in time</i>	<i>on business</i>	<i>out of breath</i>
<i>at sea</i>	<i>by sight</i>	<i>for luck</i>	<i>in cash</i>	<i>on a diet</i>	<i>out of control</i>
<i>at the corner</i>	<i>by means of</i>	<i>for life</i>	<i>in a uniform</i>	<i>on arrival</i>	<i>out of danger</i>
<i>at dawn</i>	<i>by no means</i>	<i>for nothing</i>	<i>in a dress</i>	<i>on average</i>	<i>out of date</i>
<i>at last</i>	<i>by cheque</i>	<i>for ever</i>	<i>in haste</i>	<i>on foot</i>	<i>out of doors</i>
<i>at the door</i>	<i>day by day</i>	<i>for sale</i>	<i>in German</i>	<i>on the other hand</i>	<i>out of fashion</i>
<i>at the end</i>	<i>by Beethoven</i>	<i>for short</i>	<i>in pencil</i>	<i>on line</i>	<i>out of luck</i>
<i>at first</i>	<i>by air mail</i>	<i>for a visit</i>	<i>in a group</i>	<i>on duty</i>	<i>out of print</i>
<i>at once</i>	<i>by e-mail</i>	<i>for a walk</i>	<i>in addition (to)</i>	<i>on fire</i>	<i>out of sight</i>
<i>at home</i>	<i>by fax/phone</i>	<i>for a while</i>	<i>in answer (to)</i>	<i>on horseback</i>	<i>out of tune</i>
<i>at arm's length</i>	<i>by far</i>	<i>for now</i>	<i>in future</i>	<i>on the left/right</i>	<i>out of reach</i>
<i>at least</i>	<i>by the rules</i>	<i>for your birthday</i>	<i>in general</i>	<i>on the floor</i>	<i>out of earshot</i>
<i>at the same time</i>	<i>by the arm</i>	<i>for better or worse</i>	<i>in the news</i>	<i>on the phone</i>	<i>out of money</i>
<i>at daybreak</i>	<i>by telepathy</i>	<i>for my sake</i>	<i>in pairs</i>	<i>on the screen</i>	<i>out of time</i>
<i>at work</i>	<i>by hand</i>	<i>for the moment</i>	<i>in a loud voice</i>	<i>on holiday</i>	<i>out of pocket</i>

<i>to</i>	<i>up</i>	<i>from</i>
<i>to some extent</i>	<i>up to date</i>	<i>from A to B</i>
<i>to the point</i>	<i>up to you</i>	<i>from bad to worse</i>
<i>to my surprise</i>	<i>up and down</i>	<i>from place to place</i>
<i>to your advantage</i>	<i>up till/until</i>	<i>from time to time</i>
<i>to our amazement</i>	<i>up the hill</i>	<i>from morning to night</i>
<i>to your health</i>	<i>up the spout</i>	<i>from now on</i>
<i>to some degree</i>	<i>up to no good</i>	<i>from my point of view</i>
<i>to you</i>	<i>up as far as</i>	<i>from flour / wood/plastic</i>

### ***in the beginning or at the beginning?***

— *In the beginning* (not usually with *of*) means ‘near the start of an event’:

In the beginning, ***the South had some success.***

— *At the beginning of* means ‘at the very start of an event’:

At the beginning of ***the Civil War, the fort was attacked.***

### ***at the end or in the end?***

— *At the end (of)* refers to the final part (of a period of time, a road, a book, a film, etc.):

***He’s leaving*** at the end of ***October.***

***Their house is*** at the end of ***the road.***

— *In the end* means ‘finally’:

***We waited and waited*** in the end, ***we decided to go back home.***

### ***by bus or on the bus?***

— *By bus* refers to using buses as a means of transport:

***I usually go to work*** by bus.

— We can use *on the bus* for specific journeys to particular destinations:

***I came home on the bus.***

If we go there on the bus, ***we’ll have more time to chat.***

### ***made of, made out of or made from?***

— We use *made of* when it is obvious what substance has been used to make something: A little doll ***made of*** wood.

— We use *made out of* when we emphasize the substance from which something is made: It’s ***made out of*** woody not plastic.

— We use *made from* to say what ingredients have been used:

Bread is ***made from*** flour, water and yeast.

## **1. Fill in each space with an appropriate preposition.**

1. The report, which will be ready ..... the beginning of next week, will be sent to you ..... e-mail.

2. I agree with you .....some extent but ..... general I would have put things differently.

3. .... the beginning, I thought the book was interesting but ..... the end of the book the hero gets killed.

4. He's been ..... of work for over six months and can't afford to go ..... holiday.

5. He thought the chair was made ..... of wood but ..... his surprise it was all plastic.

6. .... the top left corner of the picture I can see a hill; ..... the bottom of the hill there is a bicycle.

7. He was driving ..... the middle of the road and seemed to be completely ..... of control.

8. .... my opinion, you can't go to the party ..... a dress like that.

9. .... dessert, we had a lovely cake made ..... chocolate and almonds.

10. There's a shop ..... the corner of the street that sells vegetables ..... morning till night.

## 2. Choose the correct word in each of the following sentences.

1. From my point of *opinion/view*, there's little advantage in buying shares now.

2. His health is going from bad to *worse/ill*.

3. The kids were really in a silly *mood/behavior* after the party.

4. I don't know whether it's true but that's what it said on the *radio/newspaper*.

5. I can get the information to you more quickly if you're on *phone/e-mail*.

6. You don't think he would have broken the window on *accident/purpose*, do you?

7. He is the officer in *charge/power* of the investigation.

8. When Romeo met Juliet, it was love at first *sight/look*.

9. Why don't you send the message by *e-mail/phone*?

10. After the accident, she was rushed to hospital and is now out of *danger/risk*.


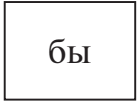
## 3. Read the text below and add the word which best fits each space. The first (0) is given as an example.

### Living a long time

It is often said that Japanese people, on ... (0) average, live much longer than Europeans. .... (1) a large extent this must be due to the food most Japanese people eat since ..... (2) the point of view of lifestyle, life ..... (3) modern Japan is no less stressful than ours ..... (4) the West. The Japanese

live ..... (5) a diet largely made up ..... (6) fish and rice ..... (7) lunch time a typical Japanese family will consume ..... (8) least twice as many vegetables as we do in Europe. .... (9) comparison with Europeans, the Japanese eat far less meat and fewer potatoes; ..... (10) the same time, they eat seven times more fresh fish than we do which makes their diet much healthier ..... far (11). It would be fair to say that, ..... (12) general, the Japanese consume far less sugar than Europeans, though the modern Japanese - frequent visitors ..... (13) Europe ..... (14) business or ..... (15) pleasure — are discovering the pleasures and dangers of western-style eating habits.

**Subjunctive mood**  
**Conditional mood**

Condition		Subordinate Clause	Principal Clause	Translation
Real		If it looks like rain, If I have more time, If he is working on Friday Present Ind./Cont.	We'll stay at home I'll come over. he won't be able to go with us Will + Infinitive	
Unreal	Present/ Future	If I were you, If I had more time, If you knew him better, If it were not raining, Past Ind./Cont.	I would go there. I would come over. You wouldn't think so. I could go out. Would Could + Infinitive Might	
	Past	If you had gone there, If it hadn't been so hot last summer Past Perfect	you would have seen him. we could have gone to the South. Would Could + have + Parti- ciple II Might	

**1. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. It is evident that conventional international law should take any form that the contracting parties agree upon.

2. It is obligatory that agreements should not conflict with the rules of international law.

3. It is necessary that customary law and law made by international agreement should have equal authority as international law.

4. The secretary demanded that the documents should be submitted without delay.

5. I wish general principles common to systems of national law were observed.

## **2. Translate from Russian into English.**

1. Необходимо, чтобы стороны действовали в рамках Венской конвенции.

2. Важно, чтобы соблюдалась Декларация прав человека.

3. Ситуация требует, чтобы суверенные государства объединили свои усилия.

4. Необходимо, чтобы все помнили, что международный договор является главным источником международного права.

5. Жаль, что стороны не пришли к соглашению.

## **3. Translate from English into Russian.**

1. Even if the law is not able to stop the outbreak of war, it will govern the conduct of hostilities.

2. If the laws of a nation-state were applicable in regional agreements there would be no need for supranational law.

3. If the United Nations hadn't developed new advisory standards, there would be no Declaration of Human Rights.

4. Had the circumstances been more favourable the parties would have come to an agreement.

5. If the East African community becomes a political federation, it will be another example of a supranational legal framework alongside with the European Union.

## **4. Translate from Russian into English.**

1. Если бы сопротивление враждующих сторон было преодолено, мир был бы установлен.

2. Если бы не было Венской конвенции, многие международные проблемы было бы трудно разрешить.

3. Если бы не соблюдались принципы международного права, не удавалось бы избегать международных конфликтов.

4. Если мы обратимся к статье 2 Венской конвенции, то найдем там определение договора.

5. Если вы разбираетесь в вопросах международного публичного права, то сможете выступить на конференции.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

1. Английский язык для юристов: учебник для бакалавров / под ред. Н. Ю. Ильиной, Т. А. Аганиной. М.: Проспект, 2014.
2. *Артамонова Л. С.* и др. English for Professional Communication. М.: Юнити, 2011.
3. *Сидоренко Т. В., Шагиева Н. М.* Essential English for law. Английский язык для юристов. Учебное пособие. М.: Инфра-М, 2013.
4. *Слепович В. С.* Ловушки в текстах по английскому языку. 7-е изд. Минск: Тетра Системс, 2013.
5. *Залогина Т. В., Миненко О. А.* Работа с профессионально-ориентированным текстом. Право и экономика: междисциплинарные подходы в науке и образовании. М.: МГЮА, 2017. С. 104–109
6. *Ткачева Е. П., Мартыненко И. А.* Методические принципы составления учебного пособия для студентов по специальности «Правовое обеспечение национальной безопасности»// Право и экономика: междисциплинарные подходы в науке и образовании. М.: Московский государственный юридический университет имени О. Е. Кутафина (МГЮА). 2017. С. 150–154.
7. Basic facts about the United Nations. Department of Public Information. United Nations, New York, 1983.
8. *Brown G. D., Rice S.* Professional English in Use. Law. Cambridge University Press, 2007.
9. *Callanal H., Edwards L.* Absolute legal English. English for international law. London: Delta publishing, 2010.
10. *Cryer R., Friman H., Robinson D., Wilmshurst, E.* An Introduction to International Criminal Law and Procedure. Cambridge University Press, 2007.
11. *Cyganik M.* Legal English. Warszawa: Wydawnictwo C. H. Beck, 2011.
12. Frequently Asked Questions on International Law Aspects of Countering Terrorism. New York: United Nations, 2009.
13. Grammar and Vocabulary for First Certificate. Longman, 2009.
14. *Harding K., Wallwork A.* Oxford Business English, International Express. Upper-Intermediate. Student's Book. Oxford University Press, 2007.
15. *Hashemi L., Murphy R.* English Grammar in Use. Supplementary exercises. Cambridge University Press, 2004.

16. *Haigh R.* Legal English. Second edition. London and New-York: Routledge-Cavendish, Taylor&Francis Group, 2009.
17. *Kleiman M., Caulkins J., Hawken A.* Drugs and drug policy. Oxford University Press, 2011.
18. *Krois-Lindner A., Firth M.* Introduction to international legal English. Cambridge University Press, 2009.
19. *Mason C., Atkins R.* The lawyer's English language coursebook. Stamford: Global legal English ltd., 2007.
20. *Taylor L.* International Express. Intermediate. Student's Book. Oxford University Press, 2006.
21. *Thomas B. J.* Advanced Vocabulary and Idiom. Longman, 1999.
22. *Wyatt R.* Check your English vocabulary for law. Third edition. London: A & C Black Publishers Ltd., 2006.

### **DICTIONARIES**

1. *Андреанов С. Н., Берсон А. С., Никифоров А. С.* Англо-русский юридический словарь. М.: Руссо, 2000.
2. *Борисенко И. И., Саенко В. В.* Русско-английский юридический словарь. М.: Руссо, 2000.
3. *Мамулян А. С., Кашкин С. Ю.* Англо-русский юридический словарь. М.: Советникъ, 1993.
4. Dictionary of Law. Fifth Edition. Ed. by Elizabeth A. Martin, Oxford University Press, 2002.
5. Dictionary of Law. Seventh Edition. Ed. by Jonathan Law, Elizabeth A. Martin. Oxford University Press, 2009.
6. Macmillan English Dictionary for Advanced learners. Second edition. Oxford: Macmillan, 2008.

### **ELECTRONIC RESOURCES AND WEBSITES**

1. [http:// englex.ru/](http://englex.ru/)
2. <http://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/pre-empt>
3. <https://en.oxforddictionaries.com>
4. <http://nssarchive.us>
5. <http://russiancouncil.ru>
6. <http://svr.gov.ru>
7. <http://wikipedia.com>
8. <http://wikipedia.ru>
9. [http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/recent/sept\\_11/changing\\_faces](http://www.bbc.co.uk/history/recent/sept_11/changing_faces)
10. <http://www.businessdictionary.com/definition/drug.html>
11. <http://www.dictionary.com>
12. <http://www.fsb.ru>
13. <http://www.globalization101.org/uploads/File/Inter/interall.pdf>

14. <http://www.ibtimes.com/pros-cons-drug-legalization-us-246712>
15. <http://www.learnersdictionary.com/definition/>
16. <http://www.lectlaw.com/inll/80.htm>
17. <http://www.loc.gov/law/help/russia.php>
18. <http://www.russianlawonline.com>
19. <http://www.stanleyfoundation.org/>
20. <http://www.tass.com/economy/945846>
21. <http://www.un.org/en/counterterrorism/legal-instruments.shtml>
22. <http://www.un.org/en/index.html>
23. <https://cyberleninka.ru/article/n/organizovannaya-prestupnost-kak-ugroza-natsionalnoy-bezopasnosti-rossiyskoy-federatsii>
24. <https://medlineplus.gov/drugabuse.html>
25. <https://prizivaut.ru/sluzhba/gru-gsh-vs-rf.html>
26. <https://searchsecurity.techtarget.com>
27. <https://www.britannica.com/topic/international-law>
28. <https://www.cia.gov/index.html>
29. <https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/products/security/what-is-cybersecurity.html>
30. <https://www.eda.europa.eu>
31. <https://www.europa.eu>
32. <https://www.fatf-gafi.org>
33. <https://www.fbi.gov>
34. <https://www.justia.com>
35. <https://www.lawguru.com>
36. <https://www.mi5.gov.uk>
37. <https://www.nsa.gov>
38. <https://www.sis.gov.uk>
39. <https://www.slideserve.com>
40. <https://www.whitehouse.gov/nsc/>
41. [www.gov.uk/government/publications](http://www.gov.uk/government/publications)
42. [www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/preemption](http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/preemption)
43. [www.thoughtco.com/the-history-of-terrorism-3209374](http://www.thoughtco.com/the-history-of-terrorism-3209374)
44. <https://www.theguardian.com/international>
45. <https://www.thetimes.co.uk>
46. <https://www.thesun.co.uk>
47. <https://www.newyorker.com>
48. <https://www.nytimes.com>
49. <https://www.wsj.com/europe>
50. <https://www.wisegeek.com/what-is-an-mp3.htm>



## CONTENT

<b>Предисловие</b> .....	5
<b>Chapter I. INTERNATIONAL LAW</b> .....	7
Unit 1. International Law .....	7
Unit 2. Subjects of International Law .....	10
Unit 3. Public International Law .....	14
Unit 4. Private International Law .....	18
Unit 5. Supranational Law .....	21
<b>Chapter II. THE UNITED NATIONS ORGANIZATION</b> .....	27
Unit 1. History of the UN Lead-in .....	27
Unit 2. The UN General Assembly .....	31
Unit 3. The UN Security Council and Specialized Agencies .....	34
Unit 4. What the UN Does for Peace .....	39
Unit 5. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights .....	43
<b>Chapter III. NATIONAL SECURITY STRATEGY OF THE RUSSIAN FEDERATION</b> .....	51
Unit 1. Major Points of Russia's National Security Strategy .....	51
Unit 2. Threats to Russia's National Security .....	57
Unit 3. Threats to Russia's National Security in the Cultural Sphere .....	62
Unit 4. Threats to Russia's National Security in the Sphere of Health Care and National Health .....	65
Unit 5. Nuclear Deterrence .....	68
<b>Chapter IV. NATIONAL SECURITY AGENCIES OF RUSSIA</b> .....	73
Unit 1. Federal Security Service (FSB) .....	73
Unit 2. The Foreign Intelligence Service of the Russian Federation (SVR) .....	78
Unit 3. The Main Intelligence Directorate (GRU) .....	83

---

<b>Chapter V. National Security Strategy of the UK</b> .....	88
Unit 1. Major Points of the UK National Security Strategy.....	88
Unit 2. The UK Priorities in the National Security.....	91
Unit 3. Growing Threats to the UK Security.....	95
Unit 4. Authorities Providing National Security in the UK Lead-in.....	98
Unit 5. British Foreign and Domestic Intelligence Agencies MI6, MI5 .....	100
<b>Chapter VI. NATIONAL SECURITY STRATEGY OF THE USA</b> .....	106
Unit 1. Major Points of the US National Security Strategy.....	106
Unit 2. National Security Council (NSC).....	111
Unit 3. Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) .....	117
Unit 4. Central Intelligence Agency (CIA).....	121
Unit 5. National Security Agency (NSA) .....	126
<b>Chapter VII. INTERNATIONAL POLICE ORGANIZATION</b> .....	133
Unit 1. International Cooperation.....	133
Unit 2. History of Interpol.....	139
Unit 3. Interpol Partnership .....	142
Unit 4. Extradition .....	146
Unit 5. Universal Jurisdiction.....	150
<b>Chapter VIII. INTERNATIONAL CRIMES AND CRIMES                     OF INTERNATIONAL CONCERN</b> .....	154
Unit 1. Introduction to International Criminal Law .....	154
Unit 2. Types of International Crimes .....	159
Unit 3. War Crimes .....	165
Unit 4. Transnational Crimes.....	168
Unit 5. Piracy.....	173
Unit 6. Corruption .....	179
Unit 7. Human Trafficking .....	183
Unit 8. Sex Trafficking .....	187
Unit 9. International Organ Trafficking.....	190
<b>Chapter IX. TERRORISM AS A GLOBAL PROBLEM</b> .....	194
Unit 1. Classification of Terrorism.....	194
Unit 2. What is Terrorism?.....	199

Unit 3. The Financing of Terrorism: Sources, Methods, Channels, Organizations, Sponsorship .....	203
Unit 4. Funds for Terrorism.....	207
Unit 5. Global Action Against Terrorism.....	211
<b>Chapter X. Combating Drug Abuse .....</b>	<b>217</b>
Unit 1. Drugs: the Overwhelming Concern .....	217
Unit 2. What Is a Drug? .....	223
Unit 3. Smoking Is a Drug Addiction.....	227
Unit 4. Drug Trafficking.....	232
Unit 5. Russia in Combating Drug Abuse.....	236
<b>Chapter XI. CYBER AND INFORMATION SECURITY .....</b>	<b>243</b>
Unit 1. Information Technology .....	243
Unit 2. Cybercrime .....	249
Unit 3. Information Security.....	254
Unit 4. Cyber Security Law.....	259
Unit 5. Personal Information Protection.....	264
<b>Chapter XII. ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION .....</b>	<b>269</b>
Unit 1. Environmental Security Strategy of the Russian Federation .....	269
Unit 2. Environmental Security Strategy of the UK.....	272
Unit 3. Environmental Security Strategy of the USA .....	277
<b>Appendix I. GLOSSARY .....</b>	<b>283</b>
International law.....	283
The United Nations Organization.....	284
National security strategy .....	285
International police organization.....	288
Extradition and Universal jurisdiction.....	289
International crime.....	290
Terrorism.....	293
Combating drug abuse .....	295
Cyber and informational security.....	296
Environmental protection .....	299

---

<b>Appendix II. READER</b> .....	301
Text 1. The Universal Declaration of Human Rights .....	301
Text 2. President’s speech at a meeting of the Federal Security Service board .....	310
Text 3. Shaun Walker .....	313
Text 4. The UK Armed Forces .....	315
Text 5. David Cameron’s statement on the Strategic Defense and Security Review .....	316
Text 6. The US National security strategy .....	317
Text 7. International Criminal Court (ICC) .....	318
Text 8. Terrorism .....	319
Text 9. Terms for Describing Terrorism .....	320
Text 10. G20 Leaders Strengthen Their Efforts to Tackle Terrorist Financing Together .....	323
Text 11. Federal Law No 35-Fz Of 6 March 2006 On Counteraction Against Terrorism “On Counteraction to Terrorism” adopted by the State Duma on February 26, 2006 .....	324
Text 12. Directive (Eu) 2017/541 Of The European Parliament And Of The Council of 15 March 2017 on combating terrorism and replacing Council Framework Decision 2002/475/JHA and amending Council Decision 2005/671/JHA .....	325
Text 13. International crime .....	326
Text 14. Cybernetics .....	327
Text 15. How to Find the Main Idea .....	328
Text 16. Writing a summary .....	329
Text 17. About History of Drug Legalization .....	331
<b>Appendix III. GRAMMAR</b> .....	333
<b>Bibliography</b> .....	346